

तमसो मा ज्योतिर्गमय

VISVA BHARATI
LIBRARY
SANTINIKETAN

513

K12

3634

MODERN GEOMETRY
BOOKS I—IV

*(Approved by the Government of Bengal
Vide Calcutta Gazette, the 9th November, 1933.)*

MODERN GEOMETRY

(MATRICULATION GEOMETRY)

BOOKS I—IV

BY
KALIPADA BASU, M.A.
LATE PROFESSOR OF MATHEMATICS, DACCA COLLEGE : FELLOW
AND EXAMINER, CALCUTTA UNIVERSITY :
AUTHOR OF "MATRICULATION ALGEBRA", "INTERMEDIATE ALGEBRA"
"INTERMEDIATE SOLID GEOMETRY," ETC., ETC.

REVISED EDITION

THE K. P. BASU LIBRARY,
11, MOHENDRA GOSSAIN LANE,
CALCUTTA.

1933

Revised by

NRIPENDRA NATH SEN, D.Sc., P.R.S.

POST GRADUATE LECTURER IN MATHEMATICS, CALCUTTA UNIVERSITY :

SECRETARY, CALCUTTA MATHEMATICAL SOCIETY : MEMBER,

BOARD OF MATHEMATICS, CALCUTTA UNIVERSITY ;

EXAMINER IN THE UNIVERSITIES OF CALCUTTA,

DACCA, BENARES, ALLAHABAD, ETC., ETC.

AND

MANORANJAN DAS GUPTA, M.A.

PROFESSOR OF MATHEMATICS, CITY COLLEGE : MEMBER OF THE

CALCUTTA MATHEMATICAL SOCIETY : EXAMINER,

CALCUTTA UNIVERSITY.

Published by J. K. BASU, B.A. & T. BASU, B.A.

THE K. P. BASU LIBRARY,

11, Mohendra Gossain Lane, Calcutta.

Printed by TRIDIBESH BASU, B.A.

THE K. P. BASU PRINTING WORKS,

11, Mohendra Gossain Lane, Calcutta.

Drawings by Monuja Guha, Artist.

PREFACE

MODERN Geometry, Part I (Matriculation Geometry) comprises Books I to IV, which form the Matriculation Course, Part II containing Book V (Solid Geometry) only. Each Book has been treated on the lines of the syllabus prescribed under the new regulations of the Calcutta University, and I have spared no pains to keep a steady eye on simplicity and clearness at every stage of the students' progress. Books I, II, III, with the exception of Sections III and IV of Book III, may be generally taken to include the Compulsory Course for the Matriculation Examination, whilst Books I to IV may be taken to include the Optional (or Additional) Course.

The order in which Propositions are numbered is not the same in every treatise on modern Geometry. Hence, in all answers meant for the Examiner, the student, while giving a reference, should *never* quote the number of the Proposition referred to, but simply point out its application with clearness and precision. For instance, in proving Theorem 14, Book III, Theorem 10 of the same Book has to be referred to, but all that the student need do is to write out the steps, as given in this treatise, taking care to *omit* "(Th. 10)" at the end of " \therefore the $\angle ADC =$ half the $\angle AOC$ ".

Model Papers have been inserted at the end of the treatise. The student is strongly recommended to attempt to answer each Paper within the time allotted, and measure his progress by the amount of success attained in such endeavours. It is also advisable that each of these Papers should be answered oftener than once, for a gradually increasing speed and facility may be acquired only by frequent trials.

Any suggestions for the improvement of the work will be thankfully received.

PREFACE TO THE REVISED EDITION

IN this edition, the book has been revised according to the syllabus prescribed by the Government of Bengal (Ministry of Education) for secondary schools.

The sequence of propositions has, for this purpose, been changed so far as it has been found necessary in following the syllabus, and care has always been taken to present the subject-matter in a simple and attractive form, and in a logical order.

The subject has been divided into five sections, the first one dealing with the "lines and angles in rectilineal figures," the second with the "areas of rectilineal figures", the third with the properties of circles", the fourth with the "areas of rectilineal figures connected to circles and the geometrical theorems corresponding to algebraical identities", and the fifth with the "ratio and proportion". As the last one (*viz.* 'ratio and proportion') is prescribed, exclusively for Additional Course, by the Calcutta University, it has been written in a separate book, the present volume containing Books I—IV.

Numerous exercises (both theoretical and practical) have been added, at intervals, to facilitate a thorough grasp of the subject.

Every beginner in Geometry should, first of all, be familiar with the Geometrical instruments and should learn to use them in drawing and measuring geometrical figures without entering into the comparatively abstract theoretical proofs thereof; and because that part of the work is included in the syllabus of Class VI, it has been left out of the present work, which is meant for Classes VII to X.

It is hoped that this edition will be found more useful and attractive than its predecessors.

CALCUTTA : *March, 1933.*

N. N. SEN

M. DASGUPTA

*Revised syllabuses in Geometry prescribed by the Government of Bengal
(Ministry of Education) for Secondary Schools in Bengal.
[Calcutta Gazette November, 13, 1928.]*

COMPULSORY COURSE

Books I—IV

CLASS VII

PROBLEMS :	<i>Pages</i>
Bisection of angles, and straight lines ... Probs. 1-2	50-51
Construction of perpendiculars to straight lines „ 3-4	53-54
Construction of an angle equal to a given angle Prob. 5	56
Construction of parallels to a given straight line „ 6	57

THEOREMS :

Revision of the work done in Class VI, *viz* :—

If a straight line stands on another straight line, the sum of the two angles so formed is equal to two right angles ; and the converse	Ths. 1-2	16-18
If two straight lines intersect, the vertically opposite angles are equal ...	Th. 3	21
If two triangles have two sides of the one equal to two sides of the other, each to each, and also the angles contained by these two sides are equal, the triangles are congruent	„ 4	25
If two sides of a triangle are equal, the angles opposite to these sides are equal ; and the converse	Ths. 5-6	27-28
If two triangles have three sides of the one equal to three sides of the other, each to each, the triangles are congruent ...	Th. 7	30
If one side of a triangle is produced, the exterior angle is greater than either of the interior opposite angles	„ 8	32
If two sides of a triangle are unequal the greater side has the greater angle opposite to it ; and the converse ...	Ths. 9-10	34-35

Any two sides of a triangle are together greater than the third	Th.	11	36
Of all straight lines that can be drawn to a given straight line from a given point outside it, the perpendicular is the shortest	„	12	38
When a straight line cuts two other straight lines, if—			
(1) a pair of alternate angles are equal, or			
(2) a pair of corresponding angles are equal, or			
(3) a pair of interior angles on the same side of the cutting line are together equal to two right angles ;			
then the straight lines are parallel, and the converse	Ths.	13-14	41-45
Straight lines which are parallel to the same straight line are parallel to one another ...	Th.	15	47

CLASS VIII

PROBLEMS :

Division of straight lines into any number of equal parts	Prob.	12	94
Construction of triangles and quadrilaterals with sufficient data	Probs.	7-11, 13-16	{ 77-82, 97-100
Construction of a triangle equal in area to a given quadrilateral	Prob.	18	133

THEOREMS :

The sum of the angles of a triangle is equal to two right angles ; and the two corollaries thereto	Ths.	16, 17, 17a	59-65
If two triangles have two angles of the one equal to two angles of the other, each to each, and also one side of the one equal to the corresponding side of the other, the triangles are congruent	Th.	18	68
If two right-angled triangles have their hypotenuses equal and one other side of the one equal to one other side of the other, the triangles are congruent	„	19	69
The opposite sides and angles of a parallelogram are equal ; each diagonal bisects the parallelogram ; and the diagonals bisect one another	Ths.	23, 23a	87-89

		<i>Pages</i>
If there are three or more parallel straight lines and the intercepts made by them on any straight line that cuts them are equal, then the corresponding intercepts on any other straight line that cuts them are also equal	Th. 24	91
Parallelograms on the same or equal bases and of the same altitude are equal in area	„ 27	120
Triangles on the same or equal bases and of the same altitude are equal in area	„ 28	122
Equal triangles on the same or equal bases are of the same altitude	„ 30	129

CLASS IX

PROBLEMS :

The locus of a point which is equidistant from two fixed points is the perpendicular bisector of the straight line joining the fixed points	Th. 25	103
The locus of a point which is equidistant from two intersecting straight lines consists of the pair of straight lines which bisect the angles between the two given lines	„ 26	105
To bisect a given arc of a circle	Prob. 24	204
Construction of tangents to a circle and of common tangents to two circles	Probs. 32-33	215-216
Simple cases of the construction of circles from sufficient data	„ 26-31	206-212

THEOREMS :

If a straight line drawn from the centre of a circle bisects a chord which does not pass through the centre, it cuts the chord at right angles ; and the converse	Th. 33	161
There is one circle and only one which passes through three given points not in a straight line	„ 34	166
Equal chords in a circle are equidistant from the centre ; and the converse	„ 35	168
The angle at the centre of a circle is double of an angle at the circumference standing on the same arc	„ 36	171

Angles in the same segment of a circle are equal ; if the line joining two points subtends equal angles at two other points on the same side of it, the four points lie on a circle	Ths. 37-38	174-175
The opposite angles of any quadrilateral inscribed in a circle are supplementary, and the converse	„ 39-40	177-178
The angle in a semi-circle is a right angle ; the angle in a segment greater than a semi-circle is less than a right angle ; the angle in a segment less than a semi-circle is greater than a right angle	„ 41-42	180-181
In equal circles or in the same circle (1) if two arcs subtend equal angles at the centre they are equal, (2) conversely, if two arcs are equal they subtend equal angles at the centres. In equal circles or in the same circle, if two chords are equal they cut off equal arcs ; and the converse	„ 43-44	183-186
The tangent at any point of a circle and the radius through the point are perpendicular to another	Th. 45	193
The perpendicular to the tangent at the point of contact passes through the centre	„ 45, Cor. 1.	193
The two tangents to a circle drawn from an external point are equal ; they subtend equal angles at the centre	„ 46	196
If two circles touch, the point of contact lies on the straight line through the centre	„ 47	198
If a straight line touch a circle and from the point of contact a chord be drawn, the angles which the chord makes with the tangent, are equal to angles in the alternate segments	„ 48	200

CLASS X

PROBLEMS :

To bisect a triangle by a straight line drawn through a given point in one of its sides ...	Prob. 20	135
---	----------	-----

To trisect a triangle by straight lines drawn from a given point in one of its sides ... Prob.	21	<i>Pages</i> 136
Construction of a triangle equal in area to a given rectilineal figure „	19	134
On a given straight line to describe a segment of a circle which shall contain an angle equal to a given angle „	34	218

THEOREMS :

Illustrations and explanations of the geometrical theorems corresponding to the following algebraical identities :—

$k(a+b+c) = ka+kb+kc$	Th.	49	251
$(a+b)^2 = a^2+2ab+b^2$	„	50	254
$(a-b)^2 = a^2-2ab+b^2$	„	51	256
$a^2-b^2 = (a+b)(a-b)$	„	52	258

The square on one side of a triangle is greater than, equal to, or less than the sum of the squares on the other two sides according as the angle contained by those sides is obtuse, a right angle, or acute. The difference in the case of inequality is twice the rectangle contained by one of the two sides and the projection on it of the other ... Ths. 31, 53, 54 144, 262, 263

If two chords of a circle intersect either inside or outside the circle the rectangle contained by the parts of the one is equal to the rectangle contained by the parts of the other Th. 57 268

The medians of a triangle are concurrent ...
Misc. Prop. 4, p. 111

The perpendiculars from the vertices of a triangle to the opposite sides are concurrent
Misc. Prop. 3, p. 110

ADDITIONAL COURSE

(In addition to the above)

Ratio and Proportion Book V.

CONTENTS

BOOK I

Angles : Lines : Rectilineal Figures

CHAPTER I

FUNDAMENTAL IDEAS AND DEFINITIONS :

<i>Subject</i>	<i>Page</i>
Introduction	1-3
Straight line	3
Properties of straight lines	4
Curved lines	5
Plane	5
Angles	6-8
Plane figure	8
Circle	9

CHAPTER II

EXPLANATION OF TERMS ; POSTULATES AND AXIOMS :

Explanation of terms	10-11
Postulates and Hypothetical Constructions	11
Axioms	12
Symbols and Abbreviations	15

CHAPTER III

THEOREMS :

Angles at a point	16-21
Definitions of triangles	22-24
Congruence of triangles	25,30
Equalities in a triangle	27,28
Inequalities in a triangle	32-36
Shortest distance of a point from a straight line	38

CHAPTER IV

PARALLEL STRAIGHT LINES :

Definitions	40-41
Theorems on parallel straight lines	41-42
Playfair's Axiom	43-44
Theorems on Parallel straight lines (<i>continued</i>)	45-47

CHAPTER V

<i>Subject</i>	<i>Page</i>
PROBLEMS :	
Introduction : Instruments required ...	49
Bisection of angles and straight lines ...	50-51
Construction of perpendiculars ...	53-55
Construction of equal angles : of parallels ...	56-57

CHAPTER VI

THEOREMS :	
Angles of a triangle, and of a polygon ...	59-67
Congruence of two triangles (<i>continued</i>) ...	68-69
Inequalities of two triangles ...	71-75

CHAPTER VII

PROBLEMS :	
Constructions of triangles from sufficient data ...	76-82

CHAPTER VIII

PARALLELOGRAMS :	
Definitions ...	85
Theorems ...	86-93
Division of a straight line into equal parts ...	94

CHAPTER IX

PROBLEMS :	
Construction of quadrilaterals from sufficient data ...	97-100

CHAPTER X

LOCI :	
The locus of a point equidistant from two given points	103
The locus of a point equidistant from two given str. lines	105
Intersection of Loci ...	106-107

CHAPTER XI

MISCELLANEOUS PROPOSITIONS :

Concurrence of :—

Bisectors of the angles in a triangle ...	109
Perpendicular bisectors of the sides of a triangle ...	110
Perpendiculars from the vertices of a triangle to the opposite sides ...	110
Medians of a triangle ...	111
<i>Miscellaneous Exercises</i> ...	113-116

BOOK II

Areas

CHAPTER I

<i>Subject</i>		<i>Page</i>
Definitions and Illustrations	117-119

CHAPTER II

AREAS OF RECTILINEAL FIGURES :

Areas of parallelograms and triangles	120-126
The method of triangulation	127

CHAPTER III

PROBLEMS ON AREAS :

Construction of parallelograms equal to triangles	132
Construction of triangles equal to quadrilaterals	133
Construction of triangles equal to any rectilineal figure	134
Bisections and trisections of triangles by str. lines through given points on the sides	135-136
Bisection of a quadrilateral by str. lines through one of the vertices	137
Construction of a parallelogram having a given side and equal to a given parallelogram	139

CHAPTER IV

THEOREMS ON AREAS :

Pythagoras' Theorem	144
Converse of the above theorem	147
Some applications of the theorem of Pythagoras	150

CHAPTER V

Miscellaneous Propositions	153-154
<i>Miscellaneous Exercises</i>	155-157

BOOK III
Circles
CHAPTER I

<i>Subject</i>	<i>Page</i>
FUNDAMENTAL IDEAS AND DEFINITIONS :	
Definitions	158-159
Symmetry	160

CHAPTER II

THEOREMS :	
Chord properties	161-170

CHAPTER III

THEOREMS :	
Angle properties	171-181
Arcs connected to angles and chords	183-188

CHAPTER IV

THEOREMS ON TANGENCY :	
Definitions	190-192
Theorems	193-196
Contact of circles	198
Tangents connected to chords	200

CHAPTER V

PROBLEMS :	
Bisection of a given arc	204
Determination of the centre	205
Constructions of circles from sufficient data	206-212
Construction of tangents to a circle, and of common tangents to two circles	215-217
Construction of segments containing given angles	218
Construction of circles related to triangles	221-226
Construction of circles related to regular polygons	228-229

CHAPTER VI

MISCELLANEOUS PROPOSITIONS :	
On circles and triangles	232
Orthocentre : Pedal triangle	233-237
Simson's Line	238
Nine-point Circle	242-243
Loci	245-247

BOOK IV**CHAPTER I****Rectangles and Squares (*Continued*)**

<i>Subject</i>	<i>Page</i>
DEFINITIONS AND NOTATIONS	249-250

CHAPTER II**THEOREMS :**

Geometrical Theorems corresponding to algebraical identities	251-260
---	---------

CHAPTER III

Rectangles and squares in relation to triangles ...	262-263
Apollonius's Theorem	264
Pappus' Theorem	265

CHAPTER IV

Rectangles and squares in relation to circles ...	268-272
Miscellaneous exercises	274-276

CHAPTER V**PROBLEMS :**

Construction of rectangles and squares	277-279
Medial section	279-281

CHAPTER VI

Geometrical solution of quadratic equations ...	282-283
---	---------

CHAPTER VII**PROBLEMS :**

Construction of regular pentagons	285-289
--	---------

CHAPTER VIII**MISCELLANEOUS CONSTRUCTIONS :**

On circles	290-297
On triangles	298-299

CHAPTER IX**MISCELLANEOUS PROPOSITIONS :**

On rectilinear figures and circles	300-306
Orthogonal circles	306-309
Maxima-Minima	310-314
Radical-axis	315-320
<i>Miscellaneous Exercises</i>	321-326

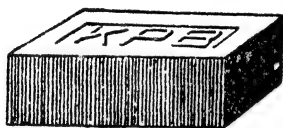
MODERN GEOMETRY

BOOK I

CHAPTER I

FUNDAMENTAL IDEAS AND DEFINITIONS

1. **Geometry** deals with the position, shape and size of the *space* occupied by bodies.
2. The *space* occupied by any body is called a **solid**.



BRICK



BALL

Consider the portion of space cut off by a brick. Clearly, it has a certain length, a certain breadth and a certain thickness ; likewise, any other solid also has length, breadth and thickness for even if it be not of the form of a brick, it may be easily conceived to be mostly made up of parts, large and small, which are all brick-shaped.

Thus, **a solid has length, breadth and thickness.**

SURFACE, LINE AND POINT

3. That which has *length* and *breadth* only, but *no thickness*, is called a **surface**.

Obs. A solid is bounded by a *surface* or *surfaces*.

For instance, consider a brick-shaped piece of wood. It may be said to have six boundaries, every one of which separates the space occupied by the wood from the rest of space. Each boundary evidently possesses length and breadth, but it has *no thickness* ; for,

if it had any, it would undoubtedly include a slice of the wood or a thin layer of the surrounding air, or both, which it *does not*. Similarly, the boundary of a ball-shaped body has *no thickness*, because the boundary forms a part of neither the body nor that of the surrounding air; but it *has* length and breadth, in the sense that it may be supposed to be divided into small portions, each of which is similar in shape to one or other of the boundaries of a brick-shaped body.

The boundary between two portions of the same solid is also a *surface*.

NOTE. It is evident therefore that a surface occupies *no space*.

4. That which has *length* only, but *neither breadth nor thickness*, is called a **line**.



A line is traced out by moving the sharp end of a pencil on a sheet of paper. But such a trace also has some breadth and some thickness, however small these may be, and will not, therefore, be a line according to our definition. The finer therefore the mark is, the more nearly does it resemble a line.

Example. The boundary between two portions of a surface is a *line*.

For, such a boundary can have length only but neither breadth nor thickness. It cannot have thickness, as it lies on the surface; nor can it have breadth, as in that case it would form a portion of the surface and would not be its boundary.

Likewise, any given surface may be seen to be bounded by a line or lines.

Also, surfaces meet in lines. Thus, the edges of a brick or a box are lines.

5. That which has *position* only, but *neither length nor breadth, nor thickness*, is called a **point**.

Thus, a point has *position* only but no size, either as to length, breadth or thickness.

The picture of a point is a dot (.); but it has still some size and is therefore *not* a point according to our definition. The smaller, however, the dot is, the more nearly does it *resemble* a point.

Example. The boundary between two parts of a given line is a point; because, if this boundary had any length, the two parts would be two distinct lines instead of being parts of the same given line.

It is also clear that the extremities of a line are points.

6. Thus, *points, lines, surfaces* and *solids* are related to each other as follows :

- (i) Boundaries of solids are surfaces.
- (ii) Boundaries of surfaces are lines ; two surfaces intersect in lines.
- (iii) Boundaries (*i.e.* extremities) of lines are points : two lines intersect in points.

Also, if a point moves from one position to another, a line is generated, of which the two positions of the point are the extremities. For example, (see § 4) a line is traced by moving a sharp pencil point on a sheet of paper. Similarly, a *moving line* traces a *surface* and a *moving surface* traces a solid.

7. Of the three things—*viz.* length, breadth and thickness, each is called a **dimension**. That which possesses one or more of these dimensions is called a **magnitude**.

Hence, (i) a ***solid*** is a magnitude of **three dimensions** ; (ii) a ***surface*** is a magnitude of **two dimensions** ; (iii) a ***line*** is a magnitude of **one dimension** ; (iv) a ***point*** is **not a magnitude, and it has no dimension**.

STRAIGHT LINES

8. If two lines be such that in whatever manner they coincide in two points they invariably become indistinguishable from one another, each of them is called a **straight line** or a **right line**.

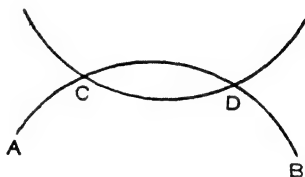
Example. Let AB, CD be two lines, as in the following diagram.



Suppose the line CD to be taken up* and placed in such a way that the points C and D fall upon the line AB ; on whatever points on the line AB and in whatever manner, the points C and D may fall, if in every case the two lines become indistinguishable one from the other, then *each* of the lines AB and CD is a straight line.

In the following diagram the two lines AB and CD are quite distinguishable from one another, even though they coincide in two points.

In this case, therefore, the lines AB and CD are *not* straight lines.



PROPERTIES OF STRAIGHT LINES

From the above definition the following conclusions are evident :—

(1) *Two straight lines cannot have more than one point common.*

For, if they had two points common, they would completely become one and the same straight line. This is otherwise expressed by saying that *two straight lines cannot intersect each other in more points than one.*

(2) *Two straight lines cannot have a common segment (a part of a line is called its segment).*

For, if they coincide partly, they certainly coincide in two points, and therefore they must be indistinguishable throughout.

(3) Through one given point an unlimited number of straight lines may pass ; but *only one straight line can pass through two given points.*

9. A straight line whose extremities are given is called a **finite** or **limited** straight line, whilst one which may be supposed to be extended to any length either-way, is called an **unlimited** straight line.

10. The **mid-point** of a given straight line is the point which divides it into two equal parts.

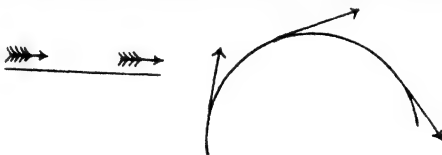
11. One finite straight line is *equal* to another when either of them may be made to coincide with the other.

12. A line which is neither straight, nor made up of straight lines, is called a **curved line**, or, more simply, a **curve**.

The accompanying diagram is the picture of a curved line.



When a point moves along a straight line its direction of motion remains unchanged, whilst if a point is moving along a curve its direction of motion constantly changes. In the accompanying pictures the arrow-heads shew the directions of motion.



13. The **distance** between two points is the length of the straight line joining them.

PLANE

14. If a surface be such that the straight line passing through *any* two points in it lies wholly in that surface, it is called a **plane surface**, or, more simply, a **plane**.

If the surface be unlimited all round, the straight line passing through the two points should also be considered as unlimited in both the directions. This unlimited straight line then, for all position of the points, will be *completely* in contact with the surface, *if it is a plane*.

If two points be taken on the surface of a ball-shaped body, the straight line passing through them does not at all lie in that surface. Clearly therefore such a surface is *not* a plane surface.

N. B. Henceforth, unless the contrary is stated, *all points and lines shall be supposed to be existing in one and the same plane.*

ANGLES

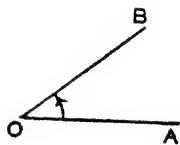
15. Two straight lines drawn from a point are said to form an **angle** at that point.

The straight lines are called the **arms** of the angle and the point at which they meet is called the **vertex** of the angle.

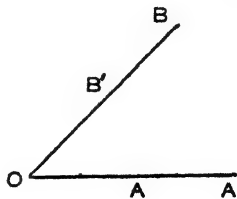
The angle contained by the straight lines OA and OB is briefly expressed as "*the angle AOB* ", or "*the angle BOA* ", the letter O being always put in the middle.

The size of the angle may be thus explained :

If two straight lines OA and OB be drawn from O , the straight line OB may be supposed to have originally coincided in direction with OA , and then to have moved from that position into its present one by *rotation* about the point O ; it is this *amount of rotation* which is called the **angle** contained by the straight lines OA and OB .



NOTE. Clearly, the size of an angle does not at all depend upon the *lengths* of its arms. Thus, in the accompanying diagram, the angle AOB is the same as the angle $A'OB'$.

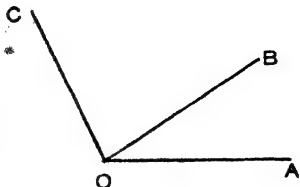


16. Two *angles* are said to be equal when the arms of the one may be made to coincide with those of the other, each to each.

17. The **bisector of an angle** is the straight line which divides the angle into two equal parts.

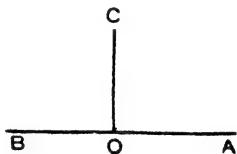
18. Two angles are said to be **adjacent** when they have a common vertex and lie on opposite sides of a common arm.

Thus, the angles AOB and BOC which are on opposite sides of the common arm OB are *adjacent*.



RIGHT ANGLE

19. If a straight line OC standing upon another straight line AOB make the adjacent angles AOC, COB equal to one another, each of these angles is called a **right angle**; and either of the two straight lines is said to be **perpendicular** to the other, or, at **right angles** to the other.



If a right angle be supposed to be divided into 90 equal parts, each part is called a **degree**; a sixtieth part of a degree is called a **minute**, and a sixtieth part of a minute is called a **second**; i.e.,

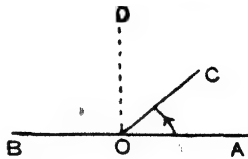
$$1 \text{ right angle} = 90 \text{ degrees } (90^\circ)$$

$$1 \text{ degree} = 60 \text{ minutes } (60')$$

$$1 \text{ minute} = 60 \text{ seconds } (60'')$$

20. At any given point in a straight line there can be only one perpendicular to it.

For, let AOB be any straight line, and OC another which starting from the position OA rotates about O in the direction of the arrow-head, as shewn in the accompanying diagram.



As OC goes on rotating, it is evident that the angle AOC gradually increases whilst the angle COB gradually decreases. Clearly therefore there is one position of OC, and one only, for

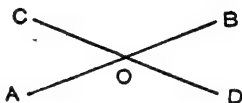
which the angle AOC is equal to the right angle COB ; and it is in this position that OC is perpendicular to AB .

NOTE. As OC rotates about the point O from the position OA into the position OB , it turns through two right angles. Hence, when the straight lines OA and OB are in the same straight line but in opposite directions, the angle AOB is equal to *two right angles*.

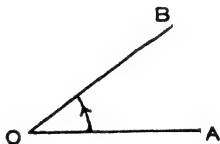
21. When OA and OB are in the same straight line but in opposite directions, the angle AOB is called a **straight angle**. Therefore, a *straight angle* = 2 right angles = 180° .

22. When two straight lines cross each other, the two pairs of opposite angles are called **vertically opposite**.

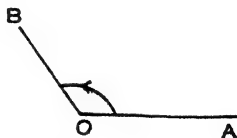
Thus, the angles AOC and BOD are vertically opposite; and so are the angles COB and DOA .



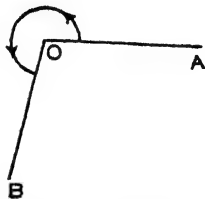
23. An angle which is less than a right angle is called an **acute angle**.



An angle which is greater than one right angle but less than two right angles, is called an **obtuse angle**.



An angle which is greater than two right angles but less than four right angles, is called a **reflex or re-entrant angle**.

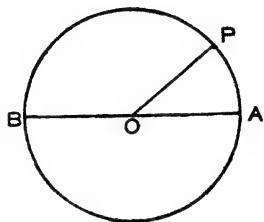


24. Any portion of a plane surface bounded by one or more lines, is called a **plane figure**.

The amount of surface enclosed by the boundaries of a plane figure is called its **area**.

NOTE. In a more extended sense, any combination of points and lines is called a *figure*. The picture of a figure is called a *diagram*. Real points and lines can never be constructed; so whatever is drawn on paper is only a *picture* of the real thing. From this it is clear that when a figure is drawn on paper it is the diagram that is really drawn, and the finer the diagram the more nearly does it represent the figure intended.

25. A **circle** is a plane figure bounded by one line which is such that all straight lines drawn to it from a certain point within the figure are equal to one another.



The bounding line of a circle is called its **circumference**.

The point within a circle from which all straight lines drawn to the circumference are equal, is called the **centre** of the circle.

Any straight line drawn from the centre of a circle to the circumference is called a **radius** of the circle.

Hence, all radii of the same circle are equal to one another.

Any straight line drawn through the centre of a circle and terminated both ways by the circumference is called a **diameter** of the circle.

Thus, in the above figure, O is the *centre*, AOB is a *diameter*, each of OP, OA, OB is a *radius*. Evidently, a diameter = $2 \times$ radius.

26. A **semi-circle** is the figure bounded by a diameter of a circle and the part of the circumference which it cuts off.



Every diameter divides a circle into two semi-circles.

CHAPTER II

EXPLANATIONS OF TERMS : POSTULATES AND AXIOMS

27. **Plane geometry** deals with the properties of lines, angles and figures drawn on a plane surface.

28. A complete discussion of a geometrical truth, or of a geometrical construction, is called a **Proposition**.

29. Propositions are of two kinds :—*Theorems* and *Problems*.

30. A proposition in which a geometrical truth is stated and proved is called a **Theorem**.

31. A proposition in which a geometrical construction is proposed and effected is called a **Problem**.

32. A proposition consists of four parts :—(i) the *General Enunciation* ; (ii) the *Particular Enunciation* ; (iii) the *Construction* and (iv) the *Proof*.

(i) The **General Enunciation** is the statement in general terms of what is to be proved, or of what is to be done.

It consists of two parts :—

(1) What is *assumed to be true*—called **Hypothesis**,
and (2) what is *required to be proved*—called **Conclusion**.

(ii) The **Particular Enunciation** is the statement of what is to be proved, or of what is to be done, *with special reference to a particular diagram*.

(iii) The **Construction** directs the drawing of such straight lines and circles as may be required to prove the truth of a theorem, or to accomplish the object of a problem.

(iv) The **Proof** shows that the truth of a theorem has been established or the object of a problem has been attained.

NOTE. In the case of a theorem, the construction may be regarded as forming a part of the **Proof**.

33. A geometrical truth which can be easily deduced from a theorem is called a **corollary** to the theorem.

POSTULATES AND HYPOTHETICAL CONSTRUCTIONS

34. For the purpose of effecting geometrical constructions certain constructions that may be easily admitted as possible are made the foundation of others which are not so obvious. These simple and easily admissible constructions are called **postulates**. They are three in number :—

(1) *A straight line may be drawn from any one point to any other point.*

(2) *A finite (or terminated) straight line may be produced to any length along that straight line.*

(3) *A circle may be drawn with any point as centre and with a radius equal to any finite straight line.*

NOTE. The first two constructions may be practically carried out with the help of a flat ruler, whilst the third requires the use of a pair of compasses which may be so adjusted as to transfer a distance from one position to another.

35. Some constructions which are not so obvious as the postulates, and which, in fact, may have to be performed with the help of one or more of them, may as well be *taken for granted* for the purpose of establishing a geometrical truth. A construction, which is thus assumed before it is shewn *how* it can be performed, is called a **hypothetical construction**. It is clear therefore that a construction which is hypothetical in one place is not necessarily so in another. The following constructions will be assumed before they are formally proved :—

(1) *A perpendicular may be drawn to a given straight line from any given point in that straight line.*

(2) *A straight line may be drawn to bisect any given angle.*

(3) *A finite straight line may be bisected at a point.*

N.B. For another such hypothetical construction see Art. 60.

AXIOMS

36. An **axiom** is a self-evident truth. The following axioms are useful in geometrical proofs.

1. Things which are equal to the same thing are equal to one another.

2. If equals be added to equals the sums are equal.

3. If equals be taken from equals the remainders are equal.

4. If equals be added to unequals the sums are unequal.

5. If equals be taken from unequals the remainders are unequal.

6. Things which are doubles of the same thing, or of equal things, are equal to one another.

7. Things which are halves of the same thing, or of equal things, are equal to one another.

8. Magnitudes (lines, angles or figures) which can be made to coincide with one another are equal.

NOTE. The process of taking up one magnitude from its position and placing it upon another is called **superposition**; and the former magnitude is said to be **applied** to the latter.

9. The whole is greater than its part.

N.B. It is also obvious that the whole is equal to the sum of its parts.

10. Two straight lines which coincide in their extremities coincide completely.

N.B. This is equivalent to saying that "two straight lines cannot enclose a surface".

This follows from Art. 8.

11. All right angles are equal.

This follows from Art. 19.

N.B. For Axiom 12, see Art. 59.

EXERCISE 1

1. Define a *point*, a *line*, a *surface* and a *solid*. How are they related to one another? What are their dimensions?

2. Is a very small ink-spot on paper a point? If not, why?

3. Is a straight line drawn on paper really a *geometrical straight line*? If not, why?

4. If a finite straight line be supposed to be divided into a very large number of equal parts, has any of these parts any *dimension*? If so, what?

5. What kind of magnitude is the *boundary* between the calm water of a tank and the air above? and why?

6. Define a straight line. Show that two straight lines cannot meet in more points than one.

7. Define a *plane*. On a plane surface how many straight lines can be drawn through (i) one point; (ii) through two points?

8. If two plane surfaces have two points A and B in common, prove that the straight line drawn from A to B is also common to the two planes.

9. If the extremities of one finite straight line fall upon those of another, two lines are equal. Why?

10. If the paper on which a straight line AB is drawn be so folded that the point A comes upon the point B, and if C be the point on AB through which the *crease* passes, then C is the middle point of AB. Why?

11. Define an angle. Does the size of an angle depend on the length of its arms?

When does one angle coincide with another?

12. Define a *right angle*, a *reflex angle* and *adjacent angles*.

If the paper on which a straight line AB is drawn be so folded that one portion of the line falls upon another, and if O be the point on AB through which the crease passes, and if C be any other point on the crease, prove that OC is perpendicular to AB.

13. Define a straight angle. Show that a straight angle is equal to 180° .

14. If a straight line starting from the position OA continually rotates about O in the same direction until it comes back to its old position, it turns through four right angles. How ?

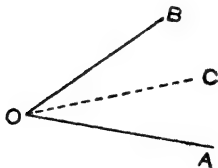
15. AB and CD are two finite straight lines of which AB is greater than CD . Show how the third postulate can be applied in cutting off from AB a part equal to CD .

16. Show how the postulates can be applied in drawing from a given point A a straight line equal to a given straight line BC .

17. Two finite straight lines AB and CD are equal to one another. If E be a point on AB and F be a point on CD such that AE is equal to CF , then EB is also equal to FD . Quote the axiom by which this is proved.

18. If one angle ABC be applied to another angle PQR so that B coincides with Q and BC falls upon QR , it is found that BA occupies an intermediate position between QR and QP . Quote the axiom by which it is proved that the angle ABC is less than the angle PQR .

19. AOB is an angle. If the paper be folded so that OA falls on OB and if the straight line OC marks the crease, then OC is the bisector of the angle AOB . How ?



20. What are the four parts of a proposition ? Explain the object of each part.

21. Define *Hypothesis*, *Conclusion*, *Corollary*, *Postulates* and *Axioms*.

22. Distinguish between a *theorem* and a *problem*.

SYMBOLS AND ABBREVIATIONS USED
IN GEOMETRY

37. The following symbols and abbreviations may be used in writing out propositions :—

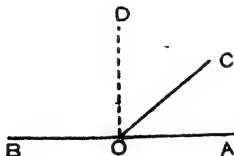
\therefore	<i>for</i>	therefore.	Rectil	<i>for</i>	Rectilineal.
\because	„	because.	Diff.	„	Different.
$=$	„	{ equal to ; is, or are, equal to.	Opp.	„	Opposite.
$/$	„	angle.	Adj.	„	Adjacent.
Rt. \angle	„	right angle.	Diag.	„	Diagonal.
Δ	„	triangle.	Def.	„	Definition.
Par' (or \parallel)	„	parallel.	Post.	„	Postulate.
Perp. or, \perp	„	perpendicular.	Ax.	„	Axiom.
\odot	„	circle.	Cons.	„	Construction.
\bigcirc	„	circumference	Hyp.	„	Hypothesis.
$>$	„	{ greater than ; is, or are. greater than.	Equilat.	„	Equilateral.
$<$	„	{ less than ; is, or are, less than.	Isos.	„	Isosceles.
Pt.	„	Point.	Quadr.	„	Quadrilateral.
Str.	„	Straight line.	Reqd.	„	Required.
Par ^m .	„	Parallelogram.	Int.	„	Interior.
Sq.	„	Square.	Ext.	„	Exterior.
Rect.	„	Rectangle.	Prop.	„	Proposition.
			Th.	„	Theorem.
			Cor.	„	Corollary.
			Join AB	„	Draw the straight line from A to B.

CHAPTER III

THEOREMS ON ANGLES AT A POINT

THEOREM 1.

If a straight line stands on another straight line, the sum of the two adjacent angles, so formed, is equal to two right angles.



Let the straight line OC stand on the straight line AB and form the adjacent angles AOC, COB.

It is required to prove that

$$\angle AOC + \angle COB = 2 \text{ right angles.}$$

Construction. Suppose OD is drawn perpendicular to the straight line AB.

Proof. $\angle AOC + \angle COB = \angle AOC + \angle COD + \angle DOB.$

Also, $\angle AOD + \angle DOB = \angle AOC + \angle COD + \angle DOB,$

$$\therefore \angle AOC + \angle COB = \angle AOD + \angle DOB.$$

But, by construction, $\angle AOD$ and $\angle DOB$ are right angles.

$$\therefore \angle AOC + \angle COB = 2 \text{ right angles.} \quad \text{Q. E. D.*}$$

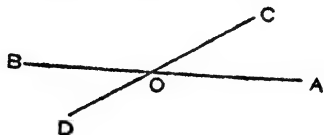
Another Proof.

$$\begin{aligned} \angle AOC + \angle COB &= \text{the straight angle AOB} \\ &= 2 \text{ right angles.} \end{aligned} \quad (\S 21)$$

Q. E. D.

*The letters Q. E. D. which are found at the end of a theorem stand for the Latin words **Quod Erat Demonstrandum**, meaning "*which was to be proved*".

COROLLARY 1. *If two straight lines cut one another, the four angles thus formed are together equal to four right angles.*

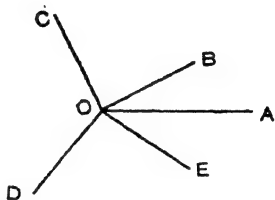


Thus, $\angle AOC + \angle COB + \angle BOD + \angle DOA = 4$ right angles.

COR. 2. *If any number of straight lines diverge from a given point, the sum of the consecutive angles so formed is equal to four right angles.*

In this case, $\angle AOB + \angle BOC + \angle COD + \angle DOE + \angle EOA = 4$ right angles.

For, if any one of the lines be produced, the sum of the angles on each side of this line = two rt. \angle s; and $\therefore \angle AOB + \angle BOC + \angle COD + \angle DOE + \angle EOA =$ the sum of the \angle s on both sides = four right angles.



38. When two angles are together equal to two right angles, each of them is called the **supplement** of the other, and the two angles are said to be **supplementary** to each other.

Thus, in the diagram of Theorem 1, each of the angles AOC and COB is the *supplement* of the other. Likewise, 50° is supplementary to 130° , because $50^\circ + 130^\circ = 180^\circ$.

39. When two angles are together equal to one right angle, each of them is called the **complement** of the other, and the two angles are said to be **complementary** to each other.

Thus, in the diagram of Theorem 1, each of the angles AOC and COD is the *complement* of the other. In like manner, 30° is complementary to 60° .

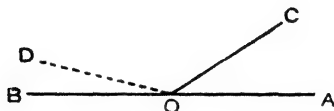
COR. 3. (i) *Supplements of the same angle or of equal angles are equal.*

(ii) *Complements of the same angle or of equal angles are equal.*

Ex. Show that supplement of an acute angle is obtuse and that of an obtuse angle is acute.

THEOREM 2.

If two adjacent angles are supplementary, their exterior arms are in the same straight line.



Let the adjacent angles AOC and COB be supplementary.

It is required to prove that OB is in the same straight line with AO.

Proof. Now, OB may be either in the same str. line with AO , or not so.

Suppose OB is *not* in the same str. line with AO , and that OD , which is different from OB , is the produced part of AO .

Now, since OA and OD are in the same str. line,

$$\therefore \angle \text{AOC} + \angle \text{COD} = \text{two right angles.}$$

But, by hypothesis, $\angle \text{AOC} + \angle \text{COB} = \text{two right angles,}$

$$\therefore \angle \text{AOC} + \angle \text{COD} = \angle \text{AOC} + \angle \text{COB.}$$

From these equals, take away the common $\angle \text{AOC}$;

$$\therefore \angle \text{COD} = \angle \text{COB} ;$$

i.e., a part is equal to the whole, which is impossible.

Thus, it is *absurd* to suppose that OB is *not* in the same straight line with AO ,

$\therefore \text{OB}$ is in the same str. line with AO .

Q. E. D.

If two theorems be so related that *the hypothesis of each is the conclusion of the other*, then either of them is said to be the **converse** of the other.

40. Now, in Theorem 1, the *hypothesis* is that the arms, OA and OB of the adjacent angles AOC and COB are in the same straight line and the *conclusion* is that the angles AOC and COB are supplementary.

But, in Theorem 2, the *hypothesis* is that the angles AOC and COB are *supplementary*; and the *conclusion* is that the arms, OA and OB , are in the same straight line. Clearly therefore the hypothesis and conclusion of Theorem 2 are respectively the conclusion and hypothesis of Theorem 1. Hence, Theorem 2 is the converse of Theorem 1.

41. The method of proof used in this proposition is called the **Indirect Method** or **reductio ad absurdum**.

It is quite clear that the straight line OB must *either be* in the same straight line with AO , *or not*; hence when the second supposition is proved to be *absurd*, the inevitable conclusion is that the first is correct. Thus, the **indirect method** consists in proving the truth of a theorem *by proving the absurdity of the supposition that the theorem is not true*. It is generally employed in proving the converse of an established theorem.

EXERCISE 2

1. Write down the supplements of (i) 30° ; (ii) 45° ; (iii) 67° ; (iv) 120° ; (v) $\frac{2}{3}$ of a rt. angle; (vi) $115^\circ 23'$; (vii) $25^\circ 50' 35''$; (viii) $135^\circ 31' 47''$; (ix) $\frac{3}{4}$ of a str. angle.

2. Write down the complements of (i) 30° ; (ii) 45° ; (iii) 60° ; (iv) $\frac{1}{4}$ of a rt. angle; (v) $\frac{2}{3}$ of a rt. angle; (vi) $\frac{1}{10}$ of a str. angle; (vii) $35^\circ 50'$; (viii) $61^\circ 32' 15''$; (ix) $81^\circ 17' 47''$.

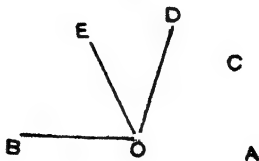
3. If, in the figure of Theorem 1, $\angle \text{AOC}$ be (i) 45° , (ii) 60° , or (iii) $85^\circ 35'$, find $\angle \text{BOC}$ in each case.

4. If, in the figure of Theorem 1, $\angle \text{COD}$ is (i) 30° , (ii) 15° , or (iii) 45° , find $\angle \text{AOC}$ in each case.

5. If, in the figure of Theorem 1, $\angle \text{BOC}$ is (i) 120° , (ii) 135° , or (iii) 150° , find $\angle \text{COD}$ in each case.

6. If each of the straight lines OC , OD , OE meet the straight line AB , on the same side of it, at O , find the sum of the angles AOC , COD , DOE and EOB .

If $\angle \text{AOC} = 25^\circ$, $\angle \text{DOE} = 35^\circ$
and $\angle \text{EOB} = 30^\circ$, find $\angle \text{COD}$.

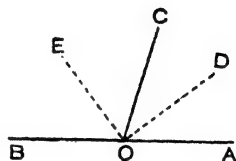


7. If two straight lines cut one another and if one of the four angles so formed be a right angle prove that each of the other three angles is also a right angle.

8. Prove that the internal and external bisectors of an angle are at right angles to each other.

NOTE. The bisector of an angle and that of its supplement obtained by producing one of its arms are called the **internal** and **external bisectors** of the angle.

Thus, in the figure, OD and OE are the internal and external bisectors of the $\angle AOC$.



9. Show that in the above diagram (i) $\angle AOD$ and $\angle BOE$ are complementary ; (ii) $\angle AOE$ and $\angle COE$ are supplementary ; (iii) $\angle BOD$ and $\angle COD$ are supplementary.

10. In the diagram of Cor. 2 (Th. 1), if $\angle AOB = 30^\circ$, $\angle BOC = 60^\circ$, $\angle DOE = 135^\circ$ and $\angle EOA = 75^\circ$, find $\angle COD$.

11. If four straight lines OA, OB, OC, OD diverge in order, from a point O, so that each of the \angle s AOB, BOC, COD, DOA is a right angle, prove that AO, OC are in the same straight line, and so are BO, OD.

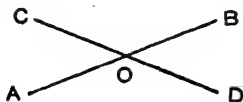
12. Prove that the bisectors of the four angles made by two intersecting straight lines form two perpendicular straight lines.

13. If two straight lines OC, OD diverge on opposite sides of the straight line AOB, so that the $\angle AOC =$ the $\angle BOD$, prove that OD is in the same straight line with CO.

14. If four straight lines OA, OB, OC, OD diverge from a point O, so that the $\angle AOB =$ the $\angle COD$ and the $\angle BOC =$ the $\angle DOA$, prove that AO, OC are in the same straight line, and so are BO, OD.

THEOREM 3.

If two straight lines intersect, the vertically opposite angles are equal.



Let the straight lines **AB**, **CD** intersect at the point **O**.

It is required to prove that

$$\begin{aligned} & (1) \quad \angle AOC = \angle BOD \\ \text{and} \quad & (2) \quad \angle COB = \angle DOA. \end{aligned}$$

Proof. Because **OC** stands on the straight line **AB**

$$\therefore \angle AOC + \angle COB = \text{two rt. angles};$$

and because **OB** stands on the straight line **CD**

$$\therefore \angle COB + \angle BOD = \text{two rt. angles.}$$

$$\therefore \angle AOC + \angle COB = \angle COB + \angle BOD.$$

From these equals, take away the common $\angle COB$.

$$\therefore \angle AOC = \angle BOD.$$

$$\text{Similarly,} \quad \angle COB = \angle DOA. \quad \text{Q. E. D.}$$

EXERCISE 3

(In the diagram of Theorem 3.)

1. If $\angle AOC = 30^\circ$, find each of the remaining angles by calculation.
2. If $\angle COB = 120^\circ$, write down the values of each of the remaining angles.
3. If $\angle AOC + \angle BOD = 90^\circ$, find all the angles by calculation.
4. If $\angle AOC + \angle BOC + \angle AOD = 270^\circ$, find $\angle BOC$ and $\angle BOD$.
5. Two straight lines **AB**, **CD** cut one another at **O**. Prove that the bisector of the $\angle AOC$, when produced through **O**, also bisects the $\angle BOD$.
6. Prove that the bisectors of two vertically opposite angles are in one and the same straight line.

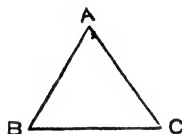
ON TRIANGLES

42. A plane figure which is bounded by straight lines only is called a **plane rectilineal figure**.

The bounding straight lines are called the **sides** of the figure.

The sum of the sides of a plane rectilineal figure is called its **perimeter**; and the portion of the surface enclosed by the sides is called its **area**.

43. A plane figure, bounded by *three* straight lines is called a **triangle**.



Any angular point of a triangle is called a **vertex** of the triangle, so that a triangle has *three vertices*.

But when a particular side is spoken of as the **base** of the triangle, *it is then the opposite angular point alone that is called the vertex*. Thus, in the above diagram, when the side BC is regarded as the base of the triangle, the angular point A is called the vertex.

In any triangle the straight line drawn from a vertex to the middle point of the opposite side is called a **median**.

44. A triangle whose three sides are equal is called an **equilateral triangle**.



45. A triangle which has two sides equal is called an **isosceles triangle**.

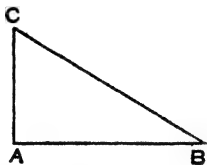


In an isosceles triangle the point of intersection of the equal sides is generally spoken of as its **vertex** and the opposite side as the **base**. The angle contained by the equal sides is called the **vertical angle** of the triangle.

46. A triangle, which has three unequal sides is called a **scalene triangle**.



47. A triangle one of whose angles is a right angle, is called a **right-angled triangle**.



In a right-angled triangle, the side opposite to the right angle is called the **hypotenuse**.

Thus, in the above diagram, the side BC is the hypotenuse of the triangle ABC which is right-angled at A .

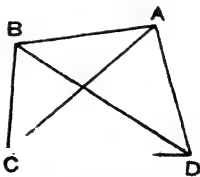
48. A triangle one of whose angles is an obtuse angle, is called an **obtuse-angled triangle**.



49. A triangle of which all the angles are acute is called an **acute-angled triangle**.



50. A plane figure bounded by four straight lines is called a **quadrilateral**.

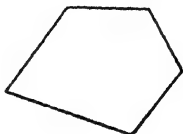


A straight line joining two opposite angular points of a quadrilateral is called a **diagonal** of the quadrilateral.

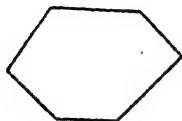
Thus, in the above diagram, the straight lines AC and BD are diagonals.

51. A plane figure bounded by *more than four* straight lines is called a **polygon**.

52. A polygon of five sides is called a **pentagon**.



A polygon of six sides is called a **hexagon**.



53. A rectilineal figure is called **equiangular**, when all its angles are equal, and **equilateral**, when all its sides are equal; and **regular**, when it is both equilateral and equiangular.

ON THE CONGRUENCE OF TRIANGLES

54. Every triangle has *six parts*, namely the three sides and the three angles. Each triangle has an area also.

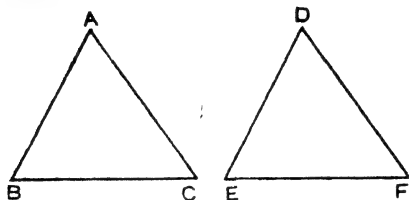
Two triangles are said to be *equal in all respects* when all the *six parts* of the one are respectively equal to all the six parts of the other.

If a triangle can be so placed on another as to exactly coincide with it, clearly they are equal in all respects and their areas are also equal. Two such triangles are said to be **identically equal** or **congruent**.

In congruent triangles, sides opposite to equal angles are called **corresponding sides** and angles opposite to equal sides are called **corresponding angles**.

THEOREM 4.

If two triangles be such that two sides and the included angle of one are respectively equal to two sides and the included angle of the other, then these two triangles are equal in all respects.



Let ABC , DEF be two triangles such that

$$AB = DE,$$

$$AC = DF,$$

and the included $\angle BAC =$ the included $\angle EDF$.

It is required to prove that the $\triangle ACB =$ the $\triangle DEF$, in all respects.

Proof. Apply the $\triangle ABC$ to the $\triangle DEF$, so that A falls on D and AB on DE . Then, because the $\angle BAC =$ the $\angle EDF$, *Hyp.*
 $\therefore AC$ must fall upon DF .

Now, since AB falls on DE , and $AB = DE$,

$\therefore B$ falls on E ;

and, since AC falls on DF , and $AC = DF$,

$\therefore C$ falls on F .

$\therefore BC$ coincides with EF .

Thus, the sides AB , AC , BC coincide respectively with DE , DF , EF ;

and \therefore the $\triangle ABC$ coincides with the $\triangle DEF$.

Hence the $\triangle ABC =$ the $\triangle DEF$, in all respects.

Q. E. D.

NOTE. When we say that the triangles are equal in all respects, this certainly includes the three equalities which form the hypothesis $AB = DE$, $AC = DF$, $\angle A = \angle D$. Hence, to make a clear

distinction between hypothesis and conclusion, we should say that the *conclusion* is that $BC=EF$, $\angle B=\angle E$, $\angle C=\angle F$, and the area of $\triangle ABC$ =the area of $\triangle DEF$. That is, of the seven equalities possible, if the above three hold good, the other four *necessarily* follow.

N. B. Notice that in two congruent triangles, *angles opposite to equal sides (i. e., corresponding angles) are equal*, as is evident from the above diagram.

EXERCISE 4

1. Prove that the bisector of the vertical angle of an isosceles triangle bisects the base and is also perpendicular to it.

2. AB is a given straight line. Another straight line CD passes through the middle point of AB and is also perpendicular to it. If P be any point on CD prove that $PA=PB$.

3. Two lines AB, CD bisect each other at O . Prove that the triangles BOD and AOC are equal in all respects ; and the triangles BOC, AOD are equal in all respects.

4. Through D , the middle point of the side BC of the triangle ABC , AD is drawn and produced to E such that $DE=AD$. Prove that

- (i) the triangles BDE and ADC are congruent ;
- (ii) the triangles CDE and ADB are congruent.

5. The diagonals AB, CD of the quadrilateral $ACBD$ bisect each other at right angles. Prove that the sides of the quadrilateral are equal.

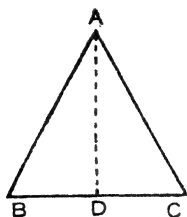
6. In the triangle ABC , the sides AB, AC are bisected at D and E . If DO and EO are drawn perpendiculars to AB, AC respectively, meeting each other at O , prove that $OA=OB=OC$.

7. In the quadrilateral $ABCD$, the sides AB, CD are equal and $\angle ABC=\angle BCD$. Prove that its diagonals are equal.

8. If $ABCDE$ be a regular pentagon, prove that the triangle ACD is isosceles.

THEOREM 5.

If two sides of a triangle are equal, the angles opposite to these two sides are equal.



Let ABC be a Δ , having the side $AC =$ the side AB .

It is required to prove that the $\angle ABC =$ the $\angle ACB$.

Construction. Let AD bisect the $\angle BAC$, and let it meet BC in D .

Proof.

In the $\Delta^s BAD, CAD$,

$$AB = AC$$

AD is common to both triangles,

and the included $\angle BAD =$ the included $\angle CAD$.

\therefore the Δ^s are equal in all respects, Th. 4.

so that, the $\angle ABD = \angle ACD$

i.e., the $\angle ABC = \angle ACB$. Q. E. D.

COR. *If a triangle is equilateral, it is also equiangular.*

EXERCISE 5

1. If the equal sides AB, AC of the isosceles triangle ABC be produced to D and E respectively, prove that $\angle BCE = \angle CBD$.

2. The isosceles triangles ABC, DBC stand on the same base BC , show that $\angle ABD = \angle ACD$.

3. $ABCD$ is a quadrilateral with all its sides equal. Prove that $\angle BAD = \angle BCD$ and $\angle ABC = \angle ADC$.

4. On the base BC of the isosceles triangle ABC , two points P and Q are taken such that $BP = CQ$. Prove that the triangle APQ is isosceles.

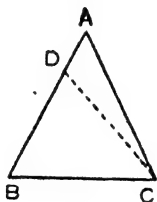
5. Prove that the triangle formed by joining the middle points of the sides of an isosceles triangle is also isosceles.

6. Prove that the triangle formed by joining middle points of the sides of an equilateral triangle is also equilateral.

THEOREM 6.

[CONVERSE OF THEOREM 5]

If two angles of a triangle are equal, the sides opposite to these two angles are equal,



Let $\triangle ABC$ be a \triangle , having the $\angle ABC = \text{the } \angle ACB$.

It is required to prove that the side $AC = \text{the side } AB$.

Proof. Suppose, AC is not equal to AB . Then one of them must be greater; let $AB > AC$, and from BA cut off $BD = AC$.

Join DC .

Then in the $\triangle DBC, ACB$,

because $DB = AC$,

BC is common to both,

and the included $\angle DBC = \text{the included } \angle ACB$; *Hyp.*

\therefore the $\triangle DBC = \text{the } \triangle ACB$; *Th. 4.*

i.e., a part is equal to the whole, which is impossible.

Thus it is *absurd* to suppose that AC is *not* equal to AB .

$\therefore AC = AB$.

Q. E. D.

COR. *If a triangle is equiangular, it is also equilateral.*

EXERCISE 5A

1. The base BC of a triangle ABC is produced both ways. If the exterior angles at B and C are equal, prove that the triangle is isosceles.

2. Prove that the angles opposite to unequal sides of a triangle are also unequal.

3. Bisectors of the base angles $\angle ABC$, $\angle ACB$ of an isosceles triangle meet at O . Prove that $OB=OC$, and AO bisects BC at right angles.

4. In Ex. 1, of Exercise 5, if the bisectors of the angles BCE and CBD meet at O , prove that the triangle BOC is isosceles and that AO bisects BC at right angles.

5. $ABCD$ is a quadrilateral such that the sides AB, AD are equal and the angles ABC and ADC are equal. Prove that the triangle BCD is isosceles.

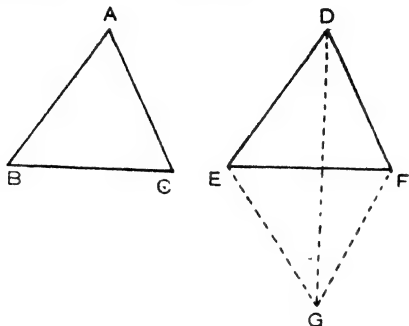
6. The bisectors of the angles ABC, ACB of a triangle ABC meet at O . If BO and CO are equal, prove that the triangle ABC is isosceles.

7. In Ex. 6, if the external bisectors of the angles ABC, ACB meet at O such that BO and CO are equal, prove that the triangle ABC is isosceles.

8. The equal sides AB, AC of an isosceles triangle are produced to D and E respectively, such that $BD=CE$; if the bisectors of the angles CBD, BCE meet at O , prove that $OD=OE$.

THEOREM 7.

If two triangles be such that the three sides of one are respectively equal to the three sides of the other, the two triangles are equal in all respects.



Let $\triangle ABC$ and $\triangle DEF$ be two Δ^s , having

$$AB = DE,$$

$$AC = DF,$$

$$\text{and } BC = EF.$$

It is required to prove that the two Δ^s are equal in all respects.

Proof. Of the sides of the $\triangle DEF$, let EF be that which is *not less* than either of the other two.

Apply the $\triangle ABC$ to the $\triangle DEF$, so that BC , which $= EF$, may coincide with EF , and so that A may fall on that side of EF which is remote from D .

Let the $\triangle GEF$ be the new position of the $\triangle ABC$.

Join DG .

Then since, $EG = ED$,

\therefore the $\angle EDG =$ the $\angle EGD$;

and since $FG = FD$,

\therefore the $\angle FDG =$ the $\angle FGD$.

Hence, the whole $\angle EDF =$ the whole $\angle EGF$;

i.e. the $\angle EDF =$ the $\angle BAC$.

Now in the Δ^s ABC , DEF , we have

$$AB = DE,$$

$$AC = DF,$$

and the included $\angle BAC =$ the included $\angle EDF$;

\therefore the $\triangle ABC =$ the $\triangle DEF$ in all respects.

Q. E. D.

Hyp.

Th. 5.

Hyp.

Th. 5.

Ax. 2.

NOTE. In Theorem 7, it is proved that in the two Δ s ABC and DEF , if it be *given* that $AB=DE$, $AC=DF$, and $BC=EF$, then it *necessarily* follows that $\angle A=\angle D$, $\angle B=\angle E$, $\angle C=\angle F$, and the area of the ΔABC =the area of the ΔDEF .

N. B. It must be remembered that *those angles are equal which are opposite to equal sides.*

EXERCISE 6

1. Prove that the straight line drawn from the vertex of an isosceles triangle to the mid-point of the base bisects the vertical angle and is also perpendicular to the base.

2. If P be a point equidistant from the ends of a straight line AB , and O , the middle point of AB , prove that PO is at right angles to AB .

3. ABC and DBC are two isos. Δ s on the same base BC and on the same side of it. Prove that if AD be joined, and produced to meet the base, it will bisect the vertical angles of the Δ s and be also perpendicular to the base.

4. ABC is an isos. Δ on the base BC ; if the bisectors of the base angles meet at D , and if AD be joined, prove that AD bisects the $\angle BAC$.

5. In the quadrilateral $ABCD$, $AB=CD$ and $AD=BC$. Prove that $\angle ABC=\angle ADC$ and $\angle BAD=\angle BCD$.

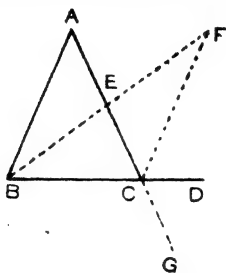
6. The sides of a quadrilateral $ABCD$ are equal. Prove that the diagonal AC bisects the angles at A and C and the diagonal BD bisects the angles at B and D .

7. On the circumference of a circle, points A , B , C are taken such that AB and BC are equal. If O be the centre of the circle, prove that OB bisects the $\angle AOC$.

8. Two circles with centres A and B meet at the points C and D . Prove that AB bisects CD at right angles.

THEOREM 8.

If one side of a triangle be produced, then the exterior angle is greater than either of the interior opposite angles.



Let one side BC of the $\triangle ABC$ be produced to D .

It is required to prove that the exterior $\angle ACD$ is greater than either of the interior opposite \angle^s BAC , ABC .

Let E be the middle point of AC .

Join BE ; and produce it to F , making $EF = BE$.

Join CF .

Proof. In the \triangle^s AEB , CEF , we have

$$AE = CE,$$

$$EB = EF,$$

and the $\angle AEB =$ the vertically opp. $\angle CEF$.

\therefore the two \triangle^s are congruent.

Hence, the $\angle BAE =$ the $\angle ECF$, being opp. to the equal sides BE , EF .

But the $\angle ECD$ is greater than the $\angle ECF$;

\therefore the $\angle ECD$ is greater than the $\angle BAE$;

i.e., the $\angle ACD$ is $>$ the $\angle BAC$.

In the same way, producing AC to G and joining A to the middle point of BC , it may be proved that the $\angle BCG$ is greater than the $\angle ABC$.

But the $\angle BCG =$ the vertically opp. $\angle ACD$;

\therefore the $\angle ACD$ is $>$ the $\angle ABC$. Q. E. D.

COR. 1. *Any two angles of a triangle are together less than two right angles.*

For, in the above diagram, the $\angle ABC$ is less than the $\angle ACD$; \therefore the $\angle ABC +$ the $\angle ACB$ is less than the $\angle ACD +$ the $\angle ACB$, and is $\therefore <$ two rt. \angle s. *

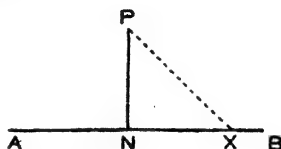
COR. 2. *Only one perpendicular can be drawn to a given straight line from a given point outside it.*

For, if PN, PX be two perpendiculars from P upon AB , each of the \angle^s PXB, PNX is a rt. \angle .

But the ext. $\angle PXB$ of the $\triangle PNX$

$$> \angle PNX$$

i.e. a rt. $\angle >$ a rt. \angle , which is impossible.



COR. 3. *In every triangle, there must be at least two acute angles.*

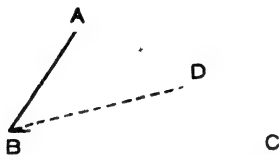
This easily follows from Cor. 1.

EXERCISE 7

1. The two \angle s of any \triangle are together less than two right angles. Prove this by joining any point of a side to the opposite vertex.
2. Prove that in a triangle one angle of which is either right or obtuse, each of the other two angles is acute.
3. If in a $\triangle ABC$, the $\angle BAC$ be greater than the $\angle ABC$, prove that the angle ABC is acute.
4. D is any point within a $\triangle ABC$; if BD and CD are joined, prove that the angle BDC is greater than the angle BAC .
5. Prove that from a given point outside a given straight line there can be drawn to it two and *only two* straight lines that are equal to one another.
6. The $\angle BAC$ of the $\triangle ABC$ is bisected by AD meeting BC at D . Prove that $\angle ADC > \angle DAC$ and $\angle ADB > \angle DAB$.
7. Prove that the sum of any two exterior angles of a triangle is greater than two right angles.
8. Prove that the base angles of an isosceles triangle must be acute.

THEOREM 9.

If one side of a triangle be greater than another, then the angle opposite to the greater side is greater than the angle opposite to the less.



Let ABC be a Δ , having the side $AC >$ the side AB .

It is required to prove that the $\angle ABC$ is $>$ the $\angle ACB$.

From AC cut off $AD = AB$.

Join BD .

Proof.

Because $AB = AD$,

\therefore the $\angle ADB =$ the $\angle ABD$.

But the ext. $\angle ADB$ of the ΔBDC is greater than the int. opp. $\angle DCB$, i.e., greater than the $\angle ACB$.

\therefore the $\angle ABD$ is $>$ the $\angle ACB$.

Much more, then, is the $\angle ABC$ greater than the $\angle ACB$.

Q. E. D.

EXERCISE 8

1. If $ABCD$ is a quadrilateral such that AB is the greatest and CD is the least of its sides, prove that $\angle BCD > \angle BAD$ and $\angle ADC > \angle ABC$.

2. If the sides of a triangle are unequal, so are its angles.

3. The angles at the extremities of the greatest side of a triangle are acute.

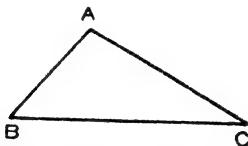
4. In a triangle, the angle opposite to the greatest side is the greatest.

5. AB, AD are the equal sides of an isosceles triangle ABD . The side AD is produced to any point C and BC is joined. Prove that $\angle ABC > \angle ACB$.

THEOREM 10.

[CONVERSE OF THEOREM 9]

If one angle of a triangle be greater than another, then the side opposite to the greater angle is greater than the side opposite to the less



Let ABC be a Δ , having the $\angle ABC$ greater than the $\angle ACB$.

It is required to prove that the side $AC > \text{the side } AB$.

Proof. If AC is not greater than AB , then it must be either $= AB$, or less than AB ,

(1) If $AC = AB$,

then the $\angle ABC = \text{the } \angle ACB$;

which is impossible, by hypothesis.

(2) If $AC < AB$,

then the $\angle ABC$ is less than the $\angle ACB$,

which is also impossible, by hypothesis.

Thus, AC is neither equal to, nor less than AB ;

$\therefore AC > AB$.

Q. E. D.

EXERCISE 8A

1. ABC is a Δ , AD bisects the $\angle BAC$ and meets BC at D . Prove that $AB > BD$, and $CA > CD$. Hence show that $AB + AC > BC$.

2. Prove that in a right-angled triangle the hypotenuse is the greatest side.

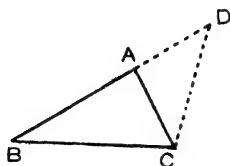
3. Prove that in a triangle, the side opposite to the greatest angle is the greatest.

4. If the angles of a triangle are unequal, so are the sides.

5. AB, AD are two equal sides of a ΔABD ; if AD is produced to any point C and BC is joined, prove that $DC < BC$. Hence deduce a construction for proving that the difference of any two sides of a triangle is less than the third side.

THEOREM 11.

Any two sides of a triangle are together greater than the third side.



Let $\triangle ABC$ be a triangle.

It is required to prove that any two of its sides, AB and AC, are together greater than the third side BC.

Produce BA to D, making $AD = AC$.

Join DC.

Proof. Because $AD = AC$.

\therefore the $\angle ACD =$ the $\angle ADC$.

But the $\angle BCD$ is $>$ the $\angle ADC$;

\therefore the $\angle BCD$ is also $>$ the $\angle ADC$,

that is, the $\angle BCD$ is $>$ the $\angle BDC$.

Hence, from the $\triangle BDC$, we have

BD greater than BC.

But BA and AC are together $=$ BD;

\therefore BA and AC are together $>$ BC.

Q. E. D.

COR. *The difference of any two sides of a triangle is less than the third side.*

For, $AB - AC$ is $<$ BC, if $AB < AC + BC$, and this latter is true.

[For a direct proof of the Corollary, see Ex. 1 of Exercise (9).]

NOTE. A straight line may be regarded as *the shortest distance between its extreme points*. From this point of view, the above theorem is self-evident.

EXERCISE 9

1. *The difference of any two sides of a triangle is less than the third side.*

[It can be proved directly as follows.]

Make a construction as in the figure of Th. 9; and prove $DC < BC$, i.e., $AC - AB < BC$.]

2. D is any point within a $\triangle ABC$; if BD and CD are joined, prove that $AB + AC > BD + DC$.

3. If O is any point within a $\triangle ABC$, prove that the sum of the lines OA, OB, OC is less than the sum, but greater than half the sum, of the sides of the triangle.

4. P is any point within the equilateral triangle ABC. Prove that the sum of any two of the straight lines PA, PB, PC is greater than the third.

5. If A is the greatest angle of the $\triangle ABC$, show that $AB + AC$ is $> BC$ but $< 2BC$, and deduce that it is not possible to construct a triangle with sides equal to $2BC$, CA and AB.

6. If D is the middle point of the side BC of the $\triangle ABC$, prove that $AB + AC > 2AD$.

[Hint. Produce AD to E such that $AD = DE$ and join EC. Then $EC = AB$. But $EC + AC > AE$, i.e. $AB + AC > 2AD$.]

Deduce that *in any triangle the sum of the medians is less than the perimeter.*

7. Show that any three sides of a quadrilateral are together greater than the fourth side.

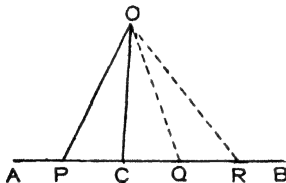
8. Prove that the sum of the diagonals of any quadrilateral is less than the sum, but greater than half the sum, of the sides of the quadrilateral.

9. If any point be taken within a quadrilateral, prove that the sum of its distances from the vertices is greater than half the sum of the sides of the quadrilateral.

10. Find the point within a quadrilateral such that the sum of its distances from the vertices is the least. [The pt. of intersection of the diagonals is the reqd. pt.]

THEOREM 12.

Of all the straight lines that can be drawn to a given straight line from a given point outside it, the perpendicular is the shortest.



Let OC be the perpendicular from the given point O to the given str. line AB .

Let OP be *any other* str. line from O meeting the given str. line at P .

It is required to prove that $OC < OP$.

Proof. Because the side PC of the $\triangle OCP$ is produced to B ,
 \therefore the int. opp. $\angle OPC <$ the ext. $\angle OCB$.

But the $\angle OCB =$ the $\angle OCP$, each being a right angle.

\therefore the $\angle OPC <$ the $\angle OCP$.

Hence $OC < OP$.

Q. E. D.

COR. 1. *Two straight lines OP , OQ which meet AB at equal distances from the foot of the perpendicular are equal.*

For, let OP , OQ meet AB at P and Q such that $CQ = CP$.

Now, in the $\triangle OCP$ and OQ ,

$CP = CQ$,

CO common,

and the $\angle OCP =$ the $\angle OCQ$;

\therefore the two triangles are congruent.

Hence $OQ = OP$.

COR. 2. *Of the two straight lines OQ, OR, if OR cuts AB at a greater distance from the foot of the perpendicular, then OR is greater than OQ.*

For, let $CR > CQ$.

Then, in the $\triangle OCQ$, the ext. $\angle OQR$ is $>$ the int. opp. $\angle OCQ$;

\therefore the $\angle OQR$ is *obtuse*.

Also in the $\triangle OCR$, the ext. $\angle OQC$ is $>$ the int. opp. $\angle ORC$;

\therefore the $\angle ORC$ is *acute*.

Hence the $\angle OQR$ is $>$ the $\angle ORQ$;

$\therefore OR < OQ$.

Q. E. D.

The slanting lines OP, OQ, OR are called *obliques* from O to AB.

DEFINITION

55. The length of the perpendicular from a given point upon a given straight line is called the **distance** of the point from that line.

EXERCISE 10

1. Of all straight lines drawn from a given point O to a given straight line AB, the straight line OC is the shortest. Prove that OC is perpendicular to AB.

2. AC is the hypotenuse of the right-angled triangle ABC. If points D and E be taken on BC and BC produced respectively, prove that $AC > AD$ but $< AE$.

3. Prove that the median is the shortest of all lines that can be drawn from the vertex to the base of an isosceles triangle.

4. ABC is an equilateral triangle. Show that the shortest line that can be drawn from A to BC bisects the $\angle BAC$.

5. In a triangle ABC, the $\angle ACB$ is the greatest. If N be the foot of the perpendicular from A on BC, prove that $BN > CN$.

6. BC is the greatest side of the $\triangle ABC$. If AN is drawn perpendicular on BC prove that $AB > BN$ and $AC > CN$.

Hence deduce Theorem 11.

CHAPTER IV

PARALLEL LINES

56. Straight lines which are in the same plane and which do not meet, however far they may be produced either way, are called **parallel straight lines**.

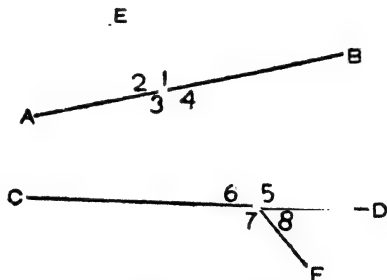
NOTE. It should be noted that parallel lines *must lie in the same plane and must not meet even when produced both ways*. Two straight lines which do not meet are not necessarily parallel. For example, a horizontal line and a vertical line at some distance from it would never meet; but since they cannot be made to lie in the same plane, they are not parallel.

Two straight lines which cannot be made to lie in the same plane are called **skew lines**.

57. Any straight line which cuts two or more given lines is called a **transversal**.

Thus, EF is a transversal.

When a transversal meets two straight lines, altogether *eight* angles are formed. Of these



(i) the angles 1, 2, 7, 8 are called **exterior angles**;

(ii) the angles 3, 4, 5, 6 are called **interior angles**;

(iii) angles 3 and 5 are called **alternate angles**. Also 4 and 6 are *alternate angles*;

(iv) angles 4 and 5 are called **interior angles on the same side of the transversal EF**. So also angles 3 and 6 are *interior angles on the same side of EF*;

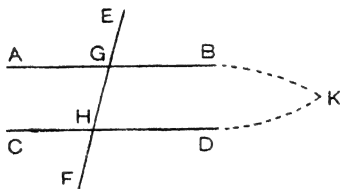
(v) angles 1 and 5 are said to be **corresponding angles**. Of these 1 is called the **exterior angle** and 5, the **interior opposite angle on the same side of EF**.

So also 2 and 6, 7 and 3, 8 and 4 are pairs of *corresponding angles*.

THEOREM 13.

If a straight line, cutting two other straight lines makes,

- (i) the alternate angles equal ;*
or *(ii) an exterior angle equal to the interior opposite angle on the same side of it ;*
or *(iii) the interior angles on the same side equal to two right angles ;*
then those two straight lines are parallel.



Let the str. line EF cut the two str. lines AB , CD at G and H .

- (i) Let the alternate $\angle^s AGH$, GHD be equal to one another.

It is required to prove that AB and CD are parallel.

Proof. If AB and CD are *not* parallel, they will meet when produced either towards B and D , or towards A and C .

Suppose, when produced towards B and D , they meet at the point K .

Then KGH is a Δ , of which the side KG has been produced to A ;

\therefore the ext. $\angle AGH$ is $>$ the int. opp. $\angle GHK$.

But this is contrary to the hypothesis ;

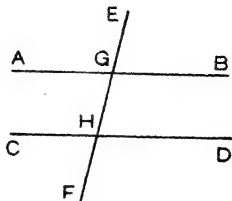
\therefore AB and CD cannot meet when produced towards B and D .

Similarly they can neither meet towards A and C .

Hence AB and CD are parallel.

(ii) Let the ext. $\angle EGB$ be = the int. opp. $\angle GHD$.

It is required to prove that AB and CD are parallel.



Proof. Because the $\angle EGB$ = the $\angle GHD$,
and the $\angle EGB$ = the vertically opp. $\angle AGH$;

\therefore the $\angle AGH$ = the $\angle GHD$;

and these are alternate angles.

\therefore AB and CD are parallel.

(iii) Let the two int. \angle^s BGH, GHD, on the same side of EF, be together = two rt. \angle^s .

It is required to prove that AB and CD are parallel.

Proof. Because the $\angle BGH$ + the $\angle GHD$
= two rt. \angle^s ,

and also the $\angle BGH$ + the $\angle AGH$
= two rt. \angle^s ;

\therefore the $\angle BGH$ + the $\angle GHD$
= the $\angle BGH$ + the $\angle AGH$.

Hence, the $\angle GHD$ = the $\angle AGH$;

and these are alternate angles.

\therefore AB and CD are parallel.

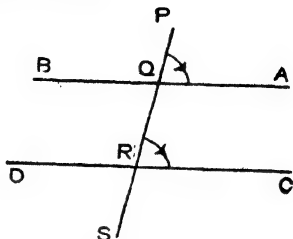
Q. E. D.

COR. *If two straight lines are perpendicular to the same straight line, they are parallel to one another.*

NOTE. There are three different hypothesis, and in each case the conclusion is one and the same. Hence the proposition might very well be split up into three separate propositions.

58. Parallel lines have same direction.

If any fixed and unlimited str. line PQRS cuts any two str. lines AB, CD at Q and R, AB is \parallel to CD when the \angle AQP and CRP are *equal*. Hence if AB and CD be both supposed to be initially on the fixed line PS, and then to turn in the *watch-hand* way, AB about the point Q and CD about the point R, they will become parallel when they have undergone the *same amount of turning*. Hence, two str. lines are parallel when they have the *same direction*.

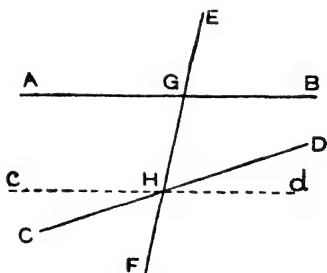


NOTE. In ordinary language we would say that the lines AB and BA have opposite directions; but in Geometry they are said to have the same direction but opposite **senses** in that direction.

Since, CD is parallel to AB as well as to BA, it follows that two parallel lines must have the same direction; but some or opposite *sense*.

59. Playfair's Axiom.

Let a str. line EF cut a str. line AB at G. Let another str. line OD rotate about the pt. H on EF, in the direction of the arrow-head, starting from a position of coincidence with EF. Then it is evident that the \angle EHD gradually increases, whilst the \angle DHF gradually decreases. Hence there is one position of CD *viz.*, *cd*, and *one only* in which the \angle EHD = the \angle EGB, and in this position CD is parallel to AB.



Consequently, through a point H one and *only one* straight line *viz.*, *cd* can be parallel to AB *i. e.*,

Through a given point one and only one straight line can be drawn parallel to a given straight line.

Hence, follows the **Playfair's Axiom** *viz.*,

Two intersecting straight lines cannot both be parallel to the same straight line.

For, if two intersecting lines, CD and cd say be parallel to the same straight line AB , then through the point H we shall have two straight lines parallel to AB which is impossible.

60. Hypothetical Construction.

From the above, it follows that the following geometrical construction also may be assumed for establishing a geometrical truth, *viz.*

Through any given point a straight line may be drawn parallel to a given straight line.

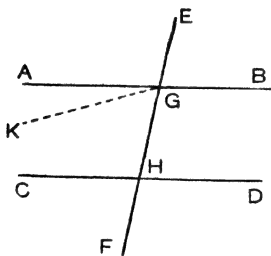
See Art. 35.

THEOREM 14.

[CONVERSE OF THEOREM 13]

If a straight line cuts two parallel str. lines, it makes,

- (i) *the alternate angles equal to one another ;*
 - (ii) *the exterior angle equal to the interior opposite angle on the same side of it ;*
- and (iii) *the two interior angles on the same side together equal to two right angles.*



Let the str. line EF cut the \parallel str. lines AB, CD at the pts. G and H.

(i) *It is required to prove that the $\angle AGH =$ the alternate $\angle GHD$.*

Proof. If the $\angle AGH$ be not equal to the $\angle GHD$, let the $\angle KGH$ be equal to it.

Now since the \angle^s KGH and GHD are alt. \angle^s , and equal to one another.

\therefore KG is parallel to CD.

But, by hypothesis, AB is parallel to CD ;

\therefore the two intersecting str. lines AG, KG, are both \parallel to CD, which is impossible.

Playfair's Axiom.

Thus, the $\angle AGH$ cannot be unequal to the $\angle GHD$;

$\therefore \angle AGH = \text{the } \angle GHD$.

- (ii) It is required to prove that
the ext. $\angle EGB =$ the int. opp. $\angle GHD$.

Proof. Because the $\angle AGH =$ the $\angle GHD$, *already proved.*

and also the $\angle AGH =$ the vertically opp. $\angle EGB$;
 \therefore the $\angle EGB =$ the $\angle GHD$.

- (iii) It is required to prove that the two interior \angle^s BGH , GHD are together $=$ two rt. \angle^s .

Proof. Because the $\angle EGB =$ the $\angle GHD$, *proved above.*

\therefore the $\angle EGB +$ the $\angle BGH =$ the $\angle GHD +$ the $\angle BGH$.

But the \angle^s EGB , BGH are together $=$ two rt. \angle^s .

\therefore the \angle^s BGH , GHD are together $=$ two rt. \angle^s .
Q. E. D.

COR. Two angles having parallel arms are either equal or supplementary.

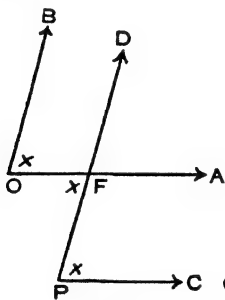


Fig. 1.

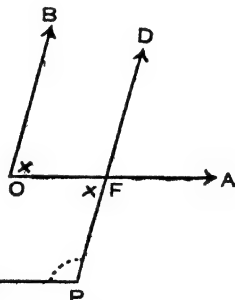


Fig. 2.

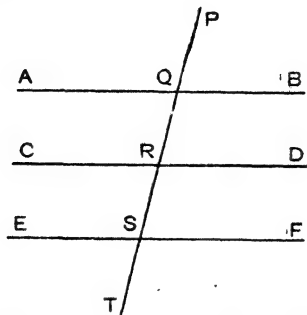
The arms OA , OB of the $\angle AOB$ are parallel respectively to the arms PC , PD of the angle $\angle CPD$.

It is easy to prove that in fig. 1, the $\angle AOB =$ the $\angle CPD$; whilst in fig. 2, the $\angle AOB$ is supplementary to the $\angle CPD$.

NOTE. Notice that in fig. 1, arms OA and PC have the same sense, but in fig. 2, their senses are opposite.

THEOREM 15.

Straight lines which are parallel to the same straight line are parallel to one another.



Let the straight lines AB , CD be each parallel to EF .

It is required to prove that AB is parallel to CD .

First Method : Draw any straight line PT cutting AB , CD and EF in the points Q , R and S respectively.

Proof. Since AB is \parallel to EF , and PT cuts them,

\therefore the $\angle AQS =$ the alt. $\angle QSF$.

Again, since CD is \parallel to EF , and PT cuts them,

\therefore the ext. $\angle QRD =$ the int. opp. $\angle QSF$.

Hence the $\angle AQR =$ the $\angle QRD$.

But these are alternate \angle^s ;

$\therefore AB$ is \parallel to CD .

Q. E. D.

Second Method : If AB is not \parallel to CD , they will meet when produced; and then we have two intersecting str. lines both parallel to a third straight line, which is impossible.

Playfair's Axiom.

Hence AB and CD cannot meet, and \therefore they are parallel.

Q. E. D.

NOTE. If EF lies between AB and CD , the truth of the theorem becomes obvious. For, if AB and CD were to meet, one of them would cut EF , which is impossible. Hence AB and CD cannot meet, and \therefore they are parallel.

EXERCISE 11

(On Theorems 13-15)

1. If a straight line intersecting two other straight lines make two exterior angles on the same side of the line together equal to two right angles, prove that the two straight lines are parallel.
2. Two straight lines which are perpendicular to a third straight line are parallel to each other.
3. In the triangle ABC , $AB=AC$. A straight line DE meets AB and AC at D and E such that $\angle ADE = \angle ACB$. Prove that DE is parallel to BC .
4. If a quadrilateral $ABCD$ be such that the diagonals AC , BD bisect each other, prove that the opposite sides of the quadrilaterals are parallel.
5. If in the diagram of Th. 15, $\angle AQP = 120^\circ$, find the remaining eleven angles.
6. If a str. line cuts two parallel str. lines, prove that the bisectors of any pair of alt. angles are parallel.
7. ABC is an isosceles triangle. DE is drawn parallel to the base BC cutting the sides AB , AC at D and E . Prove that the $\triangle ADE$ is also isosceles.
8. DE is drawn parallel to the side BC of any $\triangle ABC$ and meets the sides AB , AC at D and E . Prove that the \triangle s ABC , ADE are equiangular.
9. Through each angular point of a triangle a str. line is drawn parallel to the opposite side; prove that the triangle formed by these three str. lines is equiangular to the given triangle.
10. If through the vertex of an isosceles triangle a straight line be drawn parallel to the base, prove that it bisects the exterior vertical angle.
11. If the side BC of a triangle ABC be produced to D , show that the bisectors of the angles BAC , ACD cannot be parallel.
12. If two straight lines be such that one of them is perpendicular to a given straight line while the other is not, prove that they must intersect each other.
13. If a straight line is perpendicular to one of two parallel str. lines it is also perpendicular to the other.
14. If any two straight lines be drawn perpendicular to two given intersecting straight lines, prove that they must intersect.
15. The opposite sides of a quadrilateral are parallel. Prove that
 - (i) if one of its angles be a right angle, the other three angles also are right angles;
 - (ii) its opposite angles are equal;
 - (iii) the sum of its angles $= 360^\circ$.

CHAPTER V

PROBLEMS

The preceding theorems can be applied to solve some easy problems, to which we shall now pass on.

61. A problem is a proposition in which certain geometrical construction is proposed and performed. The construction is to be *actually traced out* in each case by the student and *the only geometrical instruments to be used for the purpose are* (i) *a flat ruler* and (ii) *a pair of compasses*.

Figures drawn must be strictly accurate and all lines necessary for the construction must be shewn clearly.

A formal proof is appended to every problem to indicate that the proposed construction has been correctly effected. But the accuracy of the drawing should also be tested by *actual measurement*.

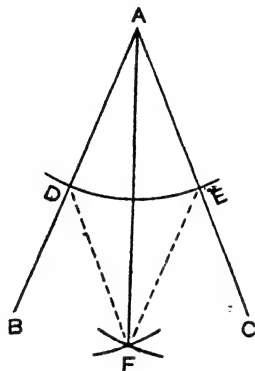
Any additional lines, which may be necessary for supplying the proof, *should be dotted* to distinguish them from the lines required for the construction.

For numerical applications of the problems and also for verifying the constructions mentioned above, the student should, however, provide himself with the following instruments :

- (1) *Dividers.*
- (2) *Pencil Compasses.*
- (3) *Two Set-Squares* ; one with angles of 45° and the other with angles of 60° and 30° .
- (4) *A Graduated Flat Ruler* ; shewing inches and tenths of an inch on one side, and centimetres and tenths of a centimetre on the other.
- (5) *A semi-circular protractor.*

PROBLEM 1.

To bisect a given angle.



Let $\angle BAC$ be the given angle.

It is required to divide it into two equal parts.

Construction. With centre A , and any radius, describe an arc of a circle cutting AB , AC at D and E respectively.

With centre D , and radius DE , describe an arc of a circle, on the side of DE remote from A ; also with centre E , and radius ED , describe another arc cutting the former at F .

Join AF .

Then AF is the bisector of the $\angle BAC$.

Proof.

Join DF , EF .

In the $\triangle DAF$, EAF , we have

$AD = AE$, (radii of the same circle)

$DF = EF$, (each being $= DE$).

and AF common ;

\therefore the two \triangle 's are equal in all respects.

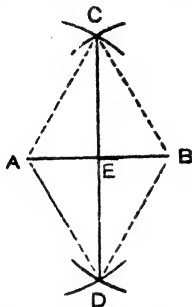
Hence the $\angle DAF =$ the $\angle EAF$;

that is, the $\angle BAC$ is bisected by AF . Q. E. F.*

*The letter Q. E. F. at the end of a problem stand for the Latin words *Quod Erat Faciendum*, that is, *which was to be done*.

PROBLEM 2.

To bisect a given finite straight line.



Let AB be the given finite str. line.

It is required to divide it into two equal parts.

Construction. With centre A , and radius AB , describe two arcs, one on each side of AB .

With centre B , and radius BA , describe two other arcs cutting the former at C and D .

Join CD , cutting AB at E .

Then E is the middle point of AB .

Proof. Join AC , BC , AD , BD .

In the Δ^s ACD , BCD , we have

$AC = BC$, (each being = AB)

CD common,

and $AD = BD$, (each being = AB)

\therefore the two Δ^s are equal in all respects.

Hence the $\angle ACD = \text{the } \angle BCD$.

Again, in the Δ^s ACE , BCE , we have

$AC = BC$,

CE common,

and the $\angle ACE = \text{the } \angle BCE$; *proved above.*

\therefore the two Δ^s are equal in all respects.

Hence $AE = EB$;

i.e., AB is bisected at E .

Q. E. F.

NOTE. This proposition furnishes a method of drawing a straight line bisecting a given straight line at right angles. Thus, in the above figure the straight line CD is the perpendicular bisector of AB .

EXERCISE 12

1. Draw angles on a sheet of paper and bisect them. Test the accuracy of the constructions with a protractor.

2. Divide an angle into four equal parts. Hence, divide an angle into two parts one of which is three times the other. Check your result with a protractor.

3. Divide an angle into two parts one of which is seven times the other. Verify the result by measurement.

4. Draw an acute angle and construct its internal and external bisectors. Find the angle between the two bisectors with a protractor.

5. Draw a triangle on a sheet of paper and bisect its angles. Do these bisectors meet ?

6. Draw straight lines and bisect them. Check the result in each case by measurement.

7. Divide a straight line into 4 equal parts. Hence divide a straight line into two parts one of which is 3 times the other. Verify the result with the dividers.

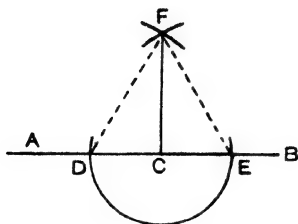
8. Divide a straight line into 2 parts such that one is 7 times the other.

9. Draw a triangle. Trace the perpendicular bisector of its sides. Do they meet ?

10. Trace the medians of a triangle. Do you find them concurrent ?

PROBLEM 3.

To draw a straight line perpendicular to a given straight line from a given point in it.



Let AB be the given str. line, and C the given point in it.

It is required to draw through C a str. line \perp to AB .

Construction. With centre C , and any convenient radius, describe a circle cutting AB at D and E .

With centres D and E , and radius DE , describe two arcs cutting each other at F .

Join CF .

Then CF is perpendicular to AB .

Proof. Join FD , FE ,

In the $\Delta^s FDC$, FEC , we have

$FD = FE$, (each being $= DE$)

$DC = EC$,

and FC common ;

Cons.

\therefore the two Δ^s are equal in all respects.

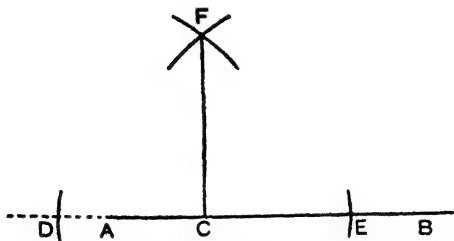
Hence the $\angle FCD = \angle FCE$.

But these are adjacent angles ; hence each of them is a right angle.

$\therefore CF$ is \perp to AB .

Q. E. F.

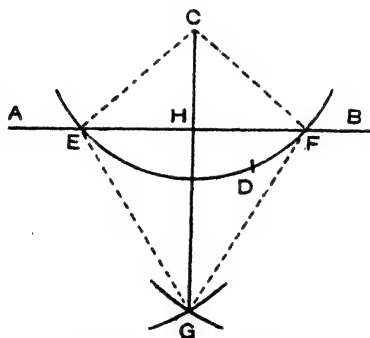
NOTE. If C is close to an extremity of AB , the line AB may be produced as in the figure below.



N. B. For other methods of construction, see Ex. 14 and 15 of Exercise (14).

PROBLEM 4.

To draw a straight line perpendicular to a given straight line from a given point outside it.



Let AB be the given str. line and C the given pt. outside it.

It is required to draw from C a straight line \perp to AB .

Construction. Take any point D on the side of AB remote from C .

With centre C , and radius CD , describe a circle cutting AB at E and F .

With centres E and F , and radius EF , describe two arcs, on the side of AB remote from C , cutting each other at G .

Join CG cutting AB at H .

Then CH is \perp to AB .

Proof. Join CE , CF , GE , GF .

In the Δ^s CEG , CFG , we have

$CE = CF$,

$EG = FG$, (each being $= EF$)

and CG common ;

\therefore the two Δ^s are equal in all respects.

Hence the $\angle ECG =$ the $\angle FCG$.

Again in the Δ^s CEH , CFH , we have

$CE = CF$,

CH is common,

and the $\angle ECH =$ the $\angle FCH$;

\therefore the two Δ^s are equal in all respects.

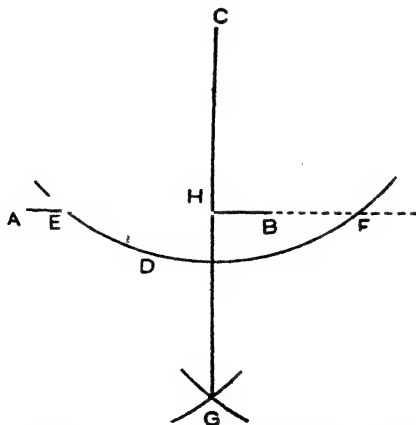
Hence the $\angle CHE =$ the $\angle CHF$; and these are adjacent angles.

\therefore each of them is a rt. angle.

$\therefore CH$ is \perp to AB .

Q. E. F.

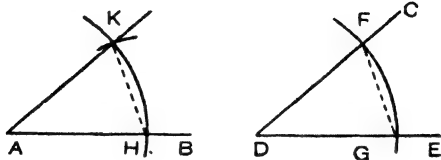
NOTE. If the point C is nearly opposite to one end of AB , the line AB may be produced as in the diagram below.



N. B. For another method, see Ex. 16 of Exercise (14).

PROBLEM 5.

At a given point in a given straight line to make an angle equal to a given angle.



Let **A** be the given pt. in the given str. line **AB**, and **CDE** the given angle.

*It is required to make at the pt. **A** in the str. line **AB** an angle equal to the \angle **CDE**.*

Construction. With centre **D**, and any radius, describe a circle cutting **DC** and **DE** at **F** and **G** respectively.

With centre **A**, and radius **DG**, describe an arc cutting **AB** at **H**; with centre **H**, and radius **GF**, describe an arc cutting the former at **K**.

Join **AK**.

Then **KAH** will be the reqd. angle.

Proof.

Join **FG**, **KH**.

In the Δ^s **KAH**, **FDG**, we have

$$AH = DG,$$

Cons.

$$AK = DF,$$

Cons.

$$\text{and } HK = GF;$$

Cons.

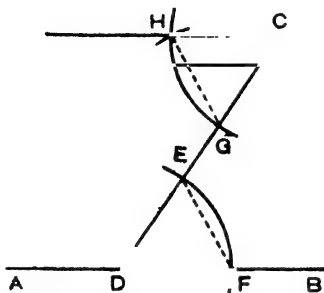
\therefore the two Δ^s are equal in all respects.

Hence the \angle **KAH** = the \angle **FDG**.

Q. E. F.

PROBLEM 6.

Through a given point to draw a straight line parallel to a given straight line.



Let C be the given point, and AB the given straight line.

It is required to draw through C a straight line parallel to AB .

Construction. Take any point D in AB , and join CD .

With centre D , and any radius, describe a circle cutting CD at E and DB at F .

With centre C , and radius DE , describe an arc, on the side of CD remote from B , cutting CD at G .

With centre G , and radius FE , describe an arc cutting the former at H .

Join CH .

Then CH is parallel to AB .

Proof.

Join EF , HG .

In the Δ^s CHG , DFE , we have

$$CH = DF,$$

Cons.

$$CG = DE,$$

Cons.

$$\text{and } GH = FE;$$

Cons.

\therefore the two Δ^s are equal in all respects.

Hence, the $\angle GCH = \text{the } \angle EDF$ and these are alternate angles;

$\therefore CH$ is parallel to AB .

Q. E. F.

EXERCISE 13

1. Take any point on a sheet of paper and at it construct an angle of (i) 90° , (ii) 45° and (iii) 135° without using a protractor. Check the results with a protractor.

2. Draw a right-angled isosceles triangle, one of the equal sides being 2 inches. Find the angles of the triangle by measurement.

3. Bisect an angle AOB by OC and draw OD at right angles to OC . Show by measurement that OD bisects the angle AOB externally.

4. Construct a triangle whose base is 3 cms. long and whose base angles are each 45° . Measure its vertical angle with a protractor.

5. Draw a circle and take two points A and B on it. Construct the perpendicular from the centre on AB and show by measurement that AB is bisected by this perpendicular.

6. Construct any triangle and draw perpendiculars from the vertices to the opposite sides. Do they meet in a point?

7. From any two points P and Q outside a given a straight line AB , draw lines equally inclined to AB .

8. The angle ABC is a rt. angle. Through any point D within the angle draw a str. line parallel to AB and BC . Show by measurement that opposite sides of the quadrilateral thus constructed are equal.

(On Problems 5 and 6)

9. Construct angles equal to given angles and check your result by measurement.

10. Construct the supplement of the angle AOB (i) at O and (ii) at some other point P .

11. Given an acute angle AOB . Construct its complement (i) at O and (ii) at another point P .

12. Find the two angles whose sum and difference are the two given angles ABC and PQR .

13. Draw a triangle whose base is 5 cms. and angles at the base equal to two given angles.

14. Through given points draw lines parallel to a given line.

15. From a given point outside a given straight line, draw a line making an angle with the given line equal to a given angle.

16. Construct a triangle of which the base angles shall be equal to two given angles and the perpendicular from the vertex to the base equal to a given straight line.

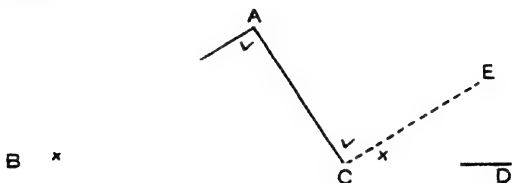
CHAPTER VI

THEOREMS

1. Angles in a rectilineal figure

THEOREM 16.

The sum of the angles of a triangle is equal to two right angles.



Let ABC be a triangle.

It is required to prove that $\angle BCA + \angle CAB + \angle ABC = 2$ right angles.

Produce BC to any point D and suppose CE is drawn parallel to BA .

Proof. Because CE is par^l to BA

and AC meets them ;

\therefore the $\angle ACE =$ the alternate $\angle CAB$.

Again, because CE and BA are par^l and BD meets them ;

\therefore the ext. $\angle ECD =$ the int. opp. $\angle BAC$

\therefore the whole $\angle ACD = \angle CAB + \angle ABC \dots \dots \dots (a)$

To each of these equals add the $\angle BCA$

$\therefore \angle BCA + \angle ACD = \angle BCA + \angle CAB + \angle ABC$.

But since BCD is a str. line.

$\angle BCA + \angle ACD = 2$ rt. angles.

$\therefore \angle BCA + \angle CAB + \angle ABC = 2$ rt. angles.

COR. 1. *If any side of a triangle is produced, the exterior angle is equal to the sum of the two interior opposite angles.*

This important property has been directly deduced in the course of the above proof.

Thus, from (a), the exterior $\angle ACD = \angle CAB + \angle ABC$.

COR. 2. *If two angles of one triangle are respectively equal to two angles of another, the third angle of the one is equal to the third angle of the other.*

COR. 3. *The sum of any two angles of a triangle is less than two right angles.*

COR. 4. *If one angle of a triangle is equal to the sum of the other two, the triangle is right-angled.*

COR. 5. *In any right-angled triangle the two acute angles are complementary.*

NOTE. If A, B, C be the angles of a triangle in degrees,
 $A + B + C = 180^\circ$.

Ex. 1. Each angle of an equilateral triangle $= 60^\circ$.

For, the angles of an equilateral triangles are equal to one another.

\therefore If A denote any angle, we have

$$A + A + A = 180^\circ$$

$$\text{or, } 3A = 180^\circ$$

$$\text{i.e., } A = 60^\circ.$$

Ex. 2. Each of the acute angles of a right-angled isosceles triangle is 45° .

The triangle being isosceles, the two acute angles are equal; also, their sum $= 90^\circ$, *Th. 16, Cor. 5.*

\therefore Each of them $= 45^\circ$.

Ex. 3. Two angles of a triangle are 55° and 102° . Find the third angle.

If A = the third angle, we have $A + 55^\circ + 102^\circ = 180^\circ$.

or, $A + 157^\circ = 180^\circ$; $\therefore A = 180^\circ - 157^\circ = 23^\circ$.

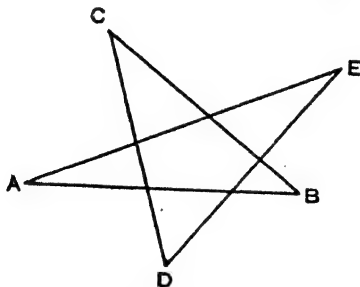
EXERCISE 14

1. In an isosceles triangle, the vertical angle is 72° . Find the base angles.

2. Find the magnitude of the vertical angle of an isosceles triangle each of the base angles of which is double of the vertical angle.

3. Two angles of a triangle are 50° and 70° . Find the third angle.
4. If one angle of a triangle is double the sum of the other two, find it.
5. Of the three angles A, B, C of a triangle, B is the double of A and C is three times B. Find each.
6. In the figure of Th. 16,
 - (i) if $\angle CAB = 45^\circ$ and $\angle ABC = 50^\circ$, find $\angle ACD$;
 - (ii) if $\angle ACD = 125^\circ$ and $\angle ABC = 48^\circ$, find $\angle CAB$;
 - (iii) if $\angle ACD = 130^\circ$ and $\angle CAB = 81^\circ$, find $\angle ABC$.
7. Prove that the sum of the angles of a quadrilateral is equal to four right angles.
8. If one angle of a triangle be greater than the sum of the other two, prove that the triangle is obtuse-angled.
9. If the exterior angles formed by producing one side of a triangle both ways be 106° and 125° , find all the angles of the triangle.
10. The three exterior angles formed by producing the sides of a triangle in order are together equal to four right angles.
11. Prove that the sum of the angles at A, B, C, D and E in the figure formed by the str. lines AB, BC, CD, DE and EA is two right angles.

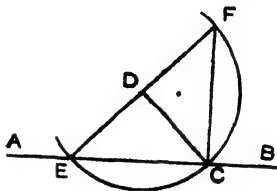
Apply Cor. 1 of Th. 16.



12. Prove that the straight line bisecting any of the angles exterior to the vertical angle of an isosceles triangle is parallel to the base.
13. If A is the vertex of an isosceles triangle ABC and BA is produced to D, so that $AD = AB$ and if DC is joined, prove that BCD is a right angle.

14. Explain the following method of constructing a perpendicular to a given straight line AB from any point C in it.

Construction. Take any point D outside AB . With centre D , and radius DC , describe a circle cutting AB at E . Join ED , and produce it to meet the circle at F . Join CF .



Then CF is \perp to AB .

[**Proof.** Join DC .

Since $DE=DC$, \therefore the $\angle DCE =$ the $\angle DEC$.

Also $\because DF=DC$, \therefore the $\angle DCF =$ the $\angle DFC$.

\therefore the whole $\angle ECF =$ the $\angle FEC +$ the $\angle EFC$
 $=$ the ext. $\angle BCF$.

Th. 16, Cor. 1.

But \angle s ECF , BCF are adjacent angles, \therefore each of them $=$ a rt. \angle .
i.e., CF is \perp to AB .]

N. B. This method is applicable when C is near or at one end of AB .

15. Explain the following method of constructing a perpendicular to a given straight line AB from any pt. C on it.

Construction. With centre C and any radius, draw an arc of a circle cutting CB in D . With centre D and the *same* radius draw an arc cutting the first arc at E . With centre E and the same radius draw an arc cutting the first arc at F . With centre F and the same radius, describe an arc cutting the preceding arc at G . Join CF .

Then CG is \perp to AB .

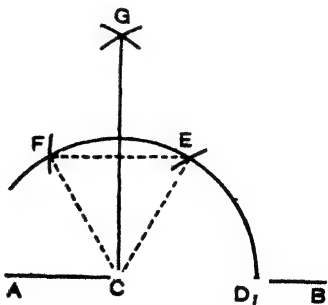
[**Proof.** It is easy to see that \angle s DCE , ECF are angles of equilateral triangles DCE , ECF .

$\therefore \angle DCE = \angle ECF = 60^\circ$.

Also, CG bisects the $\angle ECF$,
Prob. 1.

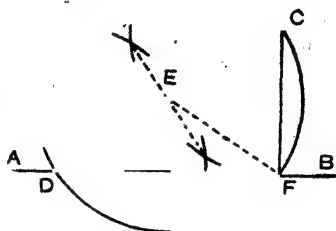
$\therefore \angle ECG = 30^\circ$.

$\therefore \angle DCG = \angle DCE + \angle ECG = 90^\circ$.
i.e. $CG \perp AB$.]



16. Explain the following method of constructing a perpendicular to a given line AB from any external point C .

Construction. Take any point D in AB . Join DC and bisect it at E . With centre E , and radius EC , describe a circle cutting AB at D and F .



Join CF .

Then CF is \perp to AB .

[**Proof.** Join EF .

Since $ED = EF$, \therefore the $\angle EFD =$ the $\angle EDF$.

Also since $EC = EF$, \therefore the $\angle EFC =$ the $\angle ECF$,

\therefore the whole $\angle DFC =$ the $\angle CDF +$ the $\angle DCF$
 $=$ the ext. $\angle BCF$. *Th. 16, Cor. 1.*

But the \angle s DFC , BFC are adjacent \angle s, and \therefore each of them is a right angle. Hence CF is \perp to AB .]

17. ABC , ABD , ACE are equilateral triangles. Prove that the points D , A , E are in the same straight line.

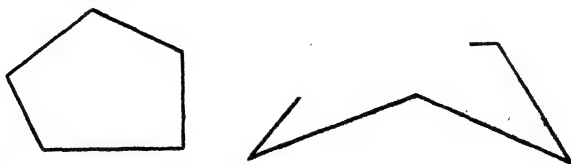
18. BC is the hypotenuse of a right-angled triangle ABC . If AD be drawn to meet BC , so that the $\angle BAD$ is equal to the $\angle ABD$. Prove that D is the middle point of BC and that AD is half of BC .

19. If two straight lines are perpendicular to two other straight lines, each to each, the acute angle between the first pair is equal to the acute angle between the second pair.

20. The angles ABC , ACB of $\triangle ABC$ are bisected by BO and CO . Prove that $\angle BOC = 90^\circ + \frac{1}{2} \angle CAB$.

21. The sides AB , AC of the $\triangle ABC$ are produced and the ext. \angle s at B and C are bisected by BO and CO . Prove that $\angle BOC = 90^\circ - \frac{1}{2} \angle CAB$.

62. A rectilineal figure is said to be **convex** when it has no re-entrant angle.

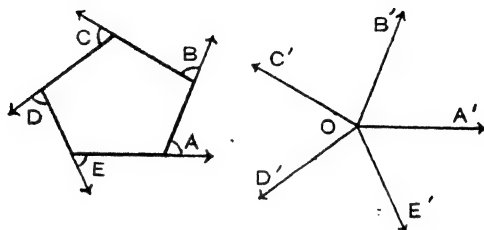


The first is a convex polygon but not the second.

63. A **regular** polygon is one with all its sides equal and all its angles equal.

THEOREM 17.

If the sides of a convex rectilinear figure are produced in order, then the sum of the exterior angles so formed is equal to four right angles.



Let the sides of the rectilinear figure $ABCDE$ be respectively produced in the directions shown by the arrow-heads.

It is required to prove that the exterior $\angle^s A, B, C, D, E$ are together = four right \angle^s .

Take any point O , and suppose the str. lines OA', OB', OC', OD', OE' are drawn par' respectively to the sides EA, AB, BC, CD, DE ; each being drawn in the sense in which the corresponding side is produced.

Proof. Since OA' is par' to EA produced, and OB' is par' to AB ,

\therefore the ext. $\angle A =$ the $\angle A'OB'$.

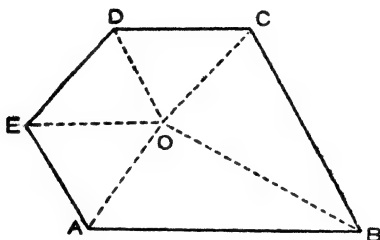
Similarly, $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{the ext. } \angle B = \text{the } \angle B'OC', \\ \text{the ext. } \angle C = \text{the } \angle C'OD', \\ \text{the ext. } \angle D = \text{the } \angle D'OE', \\ \text{the ext. } \angle E = \text{the } \angle E'OA'. \end{array} \right.$

Hence, the sum of the ext. $\angle^s A, B, C, D, E$
 $=$ the sum of the \angle^s at O
 $=$ four right angles.

Q. E. D.

THEOREM 17A.

The sum of the interior angles of any rectilineal figure, together with four right angles is equal to twice as many right angles as the figure has sides.



Let $ABCDE$ be a rectilineal figure of n sides.

It is required to prove that

the angles of the figure + 4 rt. \angle^s = 2n rt. \angle^s .

Take any point O within the figure and join O to each of its vertices.

Proof. The figure has been divided into n triangles, and the sum of the three angles of each triangle = 2 rt. \angle^s .

\therefore the sum of all the angles of the n triangles = 2n rt. \angle^s .

But the sum of all the angles of the n triangles = the angles of the figure + the angles at O ;

and the angles at O = 4 rt. \angle^s .

\therefore the angles of the figure + 4 rt. \angle^s = 2n rt. \angle^s .

Q. E. D.

64. Inferences from Theorems 17 and 17A.

1. Whatever be the number of sides of a convex rectilineal figure, the sum of its ext. \angle^s is always = 4 rt. \angle^s , i.e. 360° .

2. If n be the number of sides of a regular rectilineal figure, each of its ext. $\angle = \frac{4}{n}$ rt. $\angle^s = \frac{360^\circ}{n}$.

3. The sum of the interior angles of any rectilineal figure of n sides $= (2n - 4)$ rt. \angle^s .

4. An interior angle of a regular rectilineal figure of n sides $= \frac{2n - 4}{n}$ rt. $\angle^s = \frac{2n - 4}{n} \cdot 90^\circ$.

Ex. 1. Find the sum of the interior angles of a heptagon (a rect. figure of 7 sides).

The sum of the int. \angle^s of a fig. of n sides $= (2n - 4)$ rt. \angle^s .

\therefore Putting, $n = 7$, the sum of the int. \angle^s of a heptagon $= (2 \times 7 - 4)$ rt. $\angle^s = 10$ rt. $\angle^s = 900^\circ$.

Ex. 2. If the sum of the angles of a rect. figure $= 8$ rt. \angle^s , find the number of its sides.

Let $n =$ no. of sides reqd.

\therefore The sum of the int. $\angle^s = (2n - 4)$ rt. $\angle^s = 8$ rt. \angle^s

or,

$$2n - 4 = 8$$

or,

$$2n = 8 + 4 = 12,$$

\therefore

$$n = 6.$$

Ex. 3. Find, in degrees, an interior angle of a regular pentagon.

A regular pentagon has got five equal int. \angle^s .

\therefore All the five ext. $\angle^s = 4$ rt. $\angle^s = 360^\circ$,

$$\therefore \text{each ext. } \angle = \frac{360^\circ}{5} = 72^\circ.$$

Hence, each int. $\angle =$ supplement of the ext. $\angle = 180^\circ - 72^\circ = 108^\circ$.

Otherwise thus :

An int. \angle of a regular polygon of n sides $= \frac{2n - 4}{n} \cdot 90^\circ$.

\therefore Putting $n = 5$, we have an int. \angle of a regular pentagon

$$= \frac{2 \times 5 - 4}{5} \cdot 90^\circ = \frac{6 \times 90}{5} = 108^\circ.$$

Ex. 4. An exterior angle of a regular polygon is 30° . Find the number of its sides.

If n = number of sides reqd. each ext. $\angle = \frac{360^\circ}{n} = 30^\circ$.

\therefore The number of sides reqd. = $n = \frac{360}{30} = 12$.

Ex. 5. An interior \angle of a regular polygon is 120° , find the number of its sides.

Evidently, an ext. \angle of the fig. = $180^\circ - 120^\circ = 60^\circ$.

If n = no. of sides reqd., an ext. $\angle = \frac{360^\circ}{n} = 60^\circ$

$\therefore n = \frac{360}{60} = 6$.

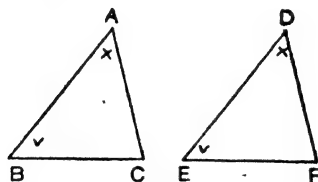
EXERCISE 15

- Find the sum of the interior angles of a polygon of (i) 5 sides ; (ii) 9 sides ; (iii) 8 sides ; (iv) 11 sides ; (v) 15 sides.
- Given the sum of the interior angles of a rect. figure to be (i) 180° ; (ii) 360° ; (iii) 540° ; (iv) 720° ; (v) 20 rt. \angle s, find the number of the sides of the figure in each case.
- Find an ext. \angle of a regular polygon of (i) 9 sides ; (ii) 12 sides ; (iii) 15 sides ; (iv) 14 sides.
- Given an ext. \angle of a regular rect. figure to be (i) 20° ; (ii) 36° ; (iii) 40° ; (iv) 90° ; (v) 120° , find the number of its sides.
- Given an int. \angle of a regular rect. figure to be (i) 60° ; (ii) 90° ; (iii) 108° ; (iv) 144° ; (v) 150° , find the number of its sides.
- Four angles of a pentagon are equal and are each double of the fifth angle. Find the angles.
- An ext. \angle of a regular rect. figure is double of an int. \angle . Find the number of its sides.
- The sum of the interior angles of a rect. figure is equal to the sum of its ext. \angle s. Find the number of its sides.

II. Congruence of Triangles—(Contd.)

THEOREM 18.

If two angles and a side of one triangle are respectively equal to two angles and the corresponding side of another, then these two triangles are congruent.



Let $\triangle ABC$, $\triangle DEF$ be two triangles in which

$$\angle A = \angle D$$

$$\angle B = \angle E$$

and the side BC = the corresponding side EF .

It is required to prove that the two \triangle 's are congruent.

Proof. Because the sum of the angles of a $\triangle = 2$ rt. \angle 's,

$$\therefore \angle A + \angle B + \angle C = \angle D + \angle E + \angle F.$$

$$\text{But } \angle A = \angle D \text{ and } \angle B = \angle E,$$

$$\therefore \angle C = \angle F.$$

Apply the $\triangle ABC$ to the $\triangle DEF$ so that B may be on E and BC on EF .

Then, because $BC = EF$,

$$\therefore C \text{ must coincide with } F.$$

Now, since the $\angle B =$ the $\angle E$,

$$\therefore BA \text{ must fall on } ED;$$

and since the $\angle C =$ the $\angle F$,

$$\therefore CA \text{ must fall on } FD.$$

Thus the point A falls both on ED and FD ;

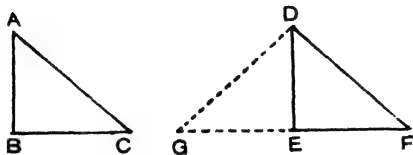
$\therefore A$ falls on D which is the point in which ED and FD intersect.

Hence the two \triangle 's coincide, and are \therefore congruent.

Q. E. D.

THEOREM 19.

Two right-angled triangles which have their hypotenuses equal, and one side of the one equal to one side of the other, are equal in all respects.



Let $\triangle ABC$ and $\triangle DEF$ be two right-angled Δ^s , in which the hypotenuse $AC =$ the hypotenuse DF , and the side $AB =$ the side DE .

It is required to prove that the two Δ^s are equal in all respects.

Proof. Apply the $\triangle ABC$ to the $\triangle DEF$ so that AB may coincide with DE to which it is equal, and C may fall on that side of DE which is remote from F .

Thus, let $\triangle DEG$ be the new position of the $\triangle ABC$.

Now, since each of the \angle^s DEF, DEG , is a rt. \angle ,
 $\therefore EG$ is in the same str. line with FE .

Hence, DGF is a Δ , and since $DF = DG$.

Hyp.

\therefore the $\angle DGF =$ the $\angle DFG$.

Hence, in the Δ^s DEG, DEF , we have

the $\angle DEG =$ the $\angle DEF$, being rt. \angle^s ;

the $\angle DGE =$ the $\angle DFE$, *proved above.*
 and DE common;

\therefore these two Δ^s are equal in all respects.

That is, the Δ^s ABC, DEF are equal in all respects.

Q. E. D.

EXERCISE 16*(On Theorem 18)*

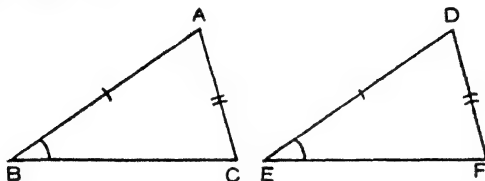
1. If the bisector of the vertical angle of a triangle is also perpendicular to the base, prove that the triangle is isosceles.
2. Prove that any point on the bisector of an angle is equidistant from the arms of the angle.
3. If a straight line AB is bisected at O , prove that the perpendiculars from A and B upon any other straight line through O are equal.
4. Prove that perpendiculars drawn from the extremities of the base of an isosceles triangle upon the opposite sides are equal.
5. $ABCD$ is a quadrilateral such that the diagonal AC bisects each of the angles BAD , BCD . Prove that AC bisects BD at right angles.

(On Theorem 19)

6. Prove that the perpendicular from the vertex to the base of an isosceles triangle bisects the vertical angle and the base.
7. The distance of any point P from two lines AB , AC are equal. Prove that the str. line AP bisects the $\angle BAC$.
8. If the perpendiculars from the vertices B and C of the $\triangle ABC$ upon opposite sides are equal, prove that the triangle is isosceles.
9. If A and B be two points taken on a circle, prove that the perpendicular from the centre on AB bisects AB .
10. If A , B , C , D be four points on a circle such that the perpendiculars from the centre on the str. lines AB and CD are equal, prove that $AB=CD$.
11. The bisectors of the angles at B and C of the $\triangle ABC$ meet at O . Prove that AO bisects the $\angle BAC$.

THEOREM 20.*

If two triangles have two sides of the one respectively equal to two sides of the other, and have also the angles opposite to one pair of equal sides equal, then the angles opposite to the other pair of equal sides are either equal or supplementary.



Let the Δ^s ABC , DEF be such that $AB=DE$, $AC=DF$, and the $\angle ABC = \angle DEF$.

It is required to prove that the \angle^s ACB , DFE are either equal or supplementary.

Proof. The angle BAC must be either equal to the $\angle EDF$ or not.

Case I. When the $\angle BAC = \angle EDF$.

In the Δ^s ABC , DEF , we have,

$$AB=DE,$$

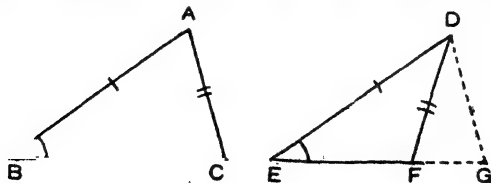
$$AC=DF,$$

and the $\angle BAC = \angle EDF$;

\therefore the two Δ^s are congruent.

Hence the $\angle ACB = \angle DFE$,

Case II. When the $\angle BAC$ is not equal to the $\angle EDF$.



On the same side of DE as F , suppose the $\angle EDG$ is made equal to the $\angle BAC$. and let EF , produced if necessary, meet DG in G .

Then in the $\Delta^s ABC, DEG$, we have

the $\angle ABC = \text{the } \angle DEG$,

the $\angle BAC = \text{the } \angle EDG$,

and $AB = DE$;

Cons.

\therefore the two Δ^s are congruent.

Hence, $DG = AC = DF$;

and also the $\angle DGE = \text{the } \angle ACB$,

\therefore the $\angle DFG = \text{the } \angle DGE$ [$\because DG = DF$
 $= \text{the } \angle ACB$].

But the $\angle DFG$ is supplementary to the $\angle DFE$;

\therefore the $\angle ACB$ is supplementary to the $\angle DFE$.

Q. E. D.

NOTE 1. It is possible for the angle ACB and DFE to be supplementary *only when one of them is acute and the other obtuse*.

NOTE 2. Clearly, the two triangles ABC, DEF are equal in all respects if $\angle s ACB$ and DFE are equal but they are not so when $\angle s ACB$ and DFE are supplementary. In the construction of triangles this is called the **Ambiguous Case**. The ambiguity disappears if $\angle ABC$ or $\angle DEF$ is a rt. \angle (See Th. 19) or an obtuse \angle , in which cases the triangles are clearly congruent.

EXERCISE 16A

1. If the perpendiculars from the middle point of the base of a triangle to the other two sides be equal, the triangle is isosceles.

2. ABC is a triangle and D is the middle point of the base BC ; if DE and DF are perpendiculars drawn from D to the sides AB and AC respectively and if $BE = CF$, prove that the triangle is isosceles.

3. The straight line drawn from the centre of a circle at right angles to a chord bisects that chord.

4. Any two equal chords of a circle are equidistant from its centre.

5. In a quadrilateral, $ABCD$, if the angles ABC, BCD be two equal obtuse angles and the diagonals AC, BD equal, prove that $AB = CD$.

6. Perpendiculars drawn from a point to the arms of an angle are equal. Show that the point is on the bisector of the angle.

NOTE ON THE CONGRUENCE OF TRIANGLES

65. Every triangle has six parts *viz.*, three sides and three angles.

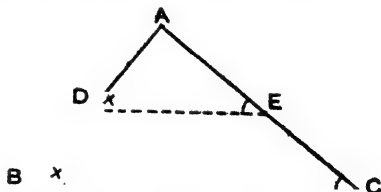
It has been shewn that triangles are equal in all respects if the following three parts of the one are equal to the corresponding three parts of the other.

1. Two sides and the included angle. (Theorem 4).
2. Three sides. (Theorem 7).
3. Two angles and a corresponding side. (Theorem 18).
4. Two sides and an angle not included and not acute. (Theorems 19 and 20).

[We have noticed in Th. 20 that if the angle is acute, the triangles *may or may not be congruent*—which is the ambiguous case.]

Two triangles are *not necessarily congruent* when three angles of the one are equal to the three angles of the other.

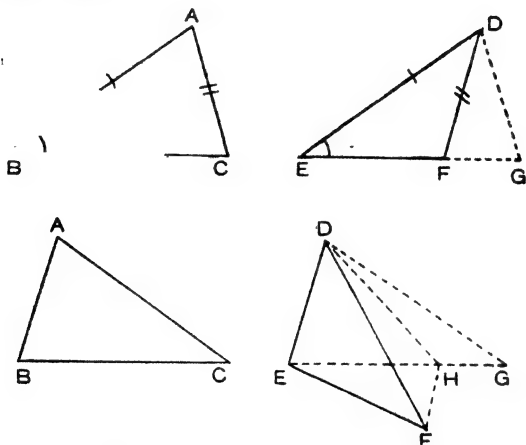
As for instance, if DE is *par'* to BC , the \triangle^s ADE , ABC are equiangular but *not congruent*.



For the congruence of two triangles, we must have three parts of the one equal to the three parts of the other, and these must be chosen in one of the four ways mentioned above.

THEOREM 21.*

If two triangles be such that two sides of the one are respectively equal to two sides of the other, but the angle contained by the two sides of the one is greater than the angle contained by the two sides of the other ; then the base of that which has the greater angle is greater than the base of the other.



Let ABC, DEF be two Δ^s such that

$$AB = DE,$$

$$AC = DF,$$

but the $\angle BAC$ is greater than the $\angle EDF$.

It is required to prove that the base BC is greater than the base EF .

Proof. Apply the ΔABC to the ΔDEF so that A may fall on D and AB on DE .

Then since $AB = DE$, $\therefore B$ coincides with E .

Let DG, EG be the new positions of AC, BC .

Since, $\angle BAC > \angle EDF$, DF must be within the $\angle EDG$.

Case I. If EG passes through F as in fig. (1), then EG is $> EF$; i.e., BC is $> EF$.

Case II. If EG does not pass through F , as in fig. (2), suppose the $\angle FDG$ is bisected by DH which meets EG at E .

Join FH .

Then in the $\Delta^s FDH, GDH$, we have

$FD = GD$,

DH common,

and the $\angle FDH = \text{the } \angle GDH$;

\therefore the two triangles are congruent.

Hence, $FH = GH$,

and $\therefore EG = EH + GH = EH + FH$.

But the two sides EH, HF of the ΔEHF are together $> EF$;

$\therefore EG > EF$,

that is, $BC > EF$.

Q. E. D.

COR. *If two triangles ABC, DEF be such that AB is equal to DE , AC is equal to DF , but the base BC is greater than the base EF then the angle BAC is greater than the angle EDF .*

For, the $\angle BAC$ cannot be less than the $\angle EDF$; for then BC would be less than EF , which is impossible.

Nor can the $\angle BAC$ be equal to the $\angle EDF$; for then BC would be equal to EF , which also is impossible.

\therefore the $\angle BAC$ must be $>$ the $\angle EDF$.

CHAPTER VII

PROBLEMS

CONSTRUCTION OF TRIANGLES

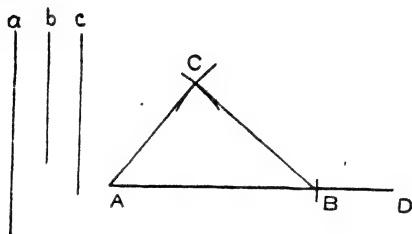
66. We have noticed that two triangles are equal in all respects (*i.e.*, exactly same in *shape* and *size*) if three parts of one triangle are equal to the corresponding three parts of the other, provided these parts are chosen as described in § 65.

Hence it follows that a triangle of a definite size and shape can be constructed with any one of the following combinations of three parts or with any three data equivalent to any one of these combinations :

- (1) *The three sides ;*
- (2) *Two sides and the contained angle ;*
- (3) *Two angles and a side ;*
- (4) *Two sides and an angle opposite one of these sides, provided that the angle is not acute.* (If the angle be acute, two triangles can be constructed with such given parts as shown in Prob. 10 ; hence, the shape and size of the triangle are not definite. This is called the **Ambiguous Case**).

PROBLEM 7.

To construct a triangle having its sides equal to three given straight lines, any two of which are together greater than the third.



Let a, b, c be three given str. lines, of which a is the greatest, and any two of which are together greater than the third.

It is required to construct a triangle having its sides equal to the straight lines a, b, c .

Construction. Take any str. line AD , and from it cut off AB equal to a .

With centre A , and radius b , describe a circle.

With centre B , and radius c describe another circle cutting the former at C .

Join AC, BC .

Then ABC is the reqd. Δ ; because, by construction,

$$AB = a,$$

$$AC = b,$$

$$\text{and } BC = c.$$

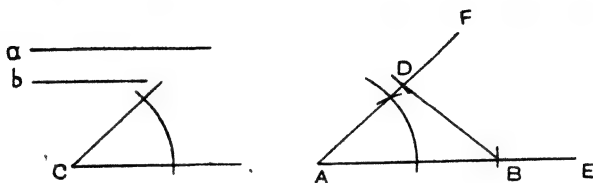
Q. E. F.

NOTE 1. If b and c were together not greater than a , then the two circles would not cut each other, and the construction would fail, which is also evident from Th. 11.

NOTE 2. The circles would also cut at a point on the other side of DF . Hence, with the given parts, *two* triangles can be constructed one on either side of DF .

PROBLEM 8.

To construct a triangle having given two sides and the included angle.



Let a, b be two given str. lines, and C a given angle.

It is required to construct a triangle having two of its sides equal to a and b , and having the angle included between these two sides equal to the $\angle C$.

Construction. Take any str. line AE .

At the point A in the str. line AE make the $\angle EAF = \text{the } \angle C$.

From AE cut off $AB = a$ and from AF cut off $AD = b$.

Join BD .

Then ABD is the Δ required,

for, $AB = a$,

$AD = b$,

and the $\angle BAD = \text{the } \angle C$.

Q. E. F.

EXERCISES (Numerical)

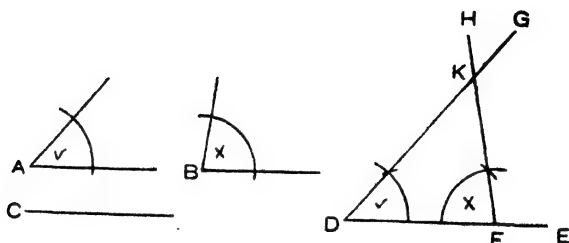
1. Construct a triangle two of whose sides are 5 cms. and 4 cms. and the included angle is 45° .

2. Construct a triangle two of whose sides are 6'' and 3'' and the included angle is 60° .

Verify that it is a rt. \angle ed triangle.

PROBLEM 9.

To construct a triangle having given two angles and the side adjacent to them.



Let A and B be two given \angle^s , and C, a given str. line.

It is required to construct a Δ having two of its \angle^s equal to the \angle^s A and B, and the side adjacent to these angles = the straight line C.

Construction. Take any str. line DE, and from it cut off $DF = C$.

At the pt. D in the str. line DF, make the $\angle FDG =$ the $\angle A$.

At the pt. F in the str. line FD, make the $\angle DFH =$ the $\angle B$.

Let FH cut DG at K.

Then evidently, KDF is the Δ reqd.

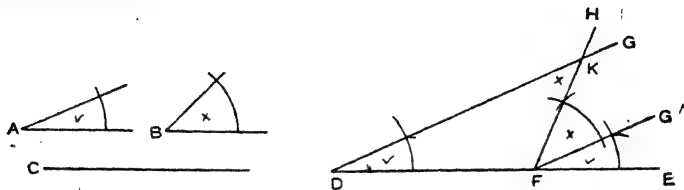
Q. E. F.

EXERCISES (Numerical)

- Construct an equiangular triangle.
- Construct a triangle ABC having given,
 - $AB = 3''$, $\angle CAB = \angle CBA = 45^\circ$;
 - $BC = 5 \text{ cms.}$, $\angle ABC = 60^\circ$, $\angle ACB = 30^\circ$.

PROBLEM 9A.

To construct a triangle having given two angles and a side opposite to one of them.



Let A and B be the two given angles and C , a given str. line.

It is required to construct a triangle having two of its angles equal to the angles A and B , and the side opposite to one of these angles, say, the angle which is equal to the given angle B , equal to the given line C .

Construction. Take any str. line DE and from it cut off $DF = C$.

At the points D, F in DE make $\angle^s EDG$ and EFG' each equal to the $\angle A$.

At F on FG' , make $\angle G'FH$ equal to the $\angle B$.

Let FH cut DG at K .

Then, KDF is the Δ reqd.

Proof. Because, the ext. $\angle EFG' =$ the int. opposite $\angle EDG$.
Cons.

$\therefore FG'$ is par^l to DG .

Hence, $\angle DKF =$ the alt. $\angle KFG' = \angle B$.
Cons.

Hence, in the ΔKDF ,

$\angle FDK = \angle A$,

$\angle DKF = \angle B$,

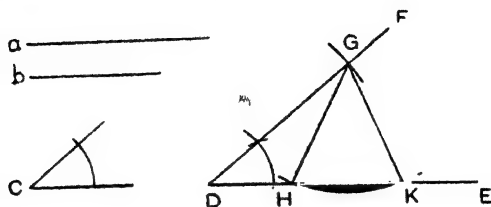
and the side $DF = C$.

$\therefore KDF$ is the Δ reqd.

Q. E. F.

PROBLEM 10.

To construct a triangle having given two sides and the angle opposite to one of them.



Let a , b be two given str. lines, and C the given angle.

It is required to construct a Δ having two of its sides equal to a and b , and having the \angle opposite to the latter side = the $\angle C$.

Construction. Take any str. line DE .

At the pt. D in the str. line DE , make the $\angle EDF =$ the $\angle C$.

From DF cut off $DG = a$.

With centre G , and radius b , describe an arc of a \odot cutting DE at H and K .

If H and K are on the same side of D , as in the above diagram, join both GH and GK .

Then, evidently each of the Δ 's GDH and GDK is the Δ reqd.
Q. E. F.

NOTE 1. There are two solutions to the problem, as above, only when b is less than a but greater than the perpendicular from G on DE . This is known as the **Ambiguous Case**.

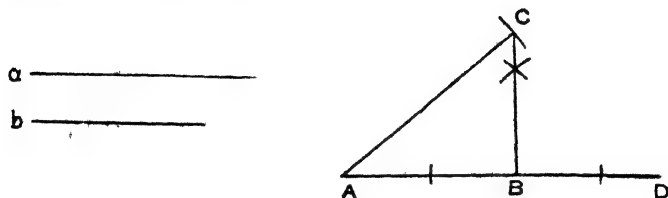
The cases when $b =$, or, $> a$ admit of one solution, each, which the student can easily verify.

NOTE 2. When b is less than p , the perpendicular from G on DE , the construction fails; or, in other words, the problem does not admit of a solution.

Again, if $b = p$, there is only one triangle satisfying the given conditions.

PROBLEM 11.

To construct a right-angled triangle having given the hypotenuse and one side.



Let a be the given hypotenuse and b the given side.

Construction. Take any str. line AD , and from it cut off $AB = b$.

At B , construct the perpendicular BC upon AD .

With centre A and radius equal to a describe a circle cutting BC at C .

Join AC .

Then, evidently ABC is the Δ reqd.

Proof. By construction, $AC = a$,

$AB = b$,

and the $\angle ABC$ is a rt. angle.

NOTE. Evidently, there is another Δ on that side of AB remote from C .

Q. E. F.

ALTERNATIVE METHOD

Construction. Take any str. line AD cut off, from it, $AB = a$ the hypotenuse. Bisect AB at O and draw a \odot with O as centre and OA or OB as radius. Again, with B as centre and b (the given side) as radius draw a \odot to cut the former at C . Then the ΔACB is the reqd. one.

EXERCISE 17

(On the Construction of Triangles)

1. Construct a triangle whose sides are
 - (i) 8 cm., 6 cm. and 4 cm.; (ii) 5 in., 2 in. and 4 in.;
 - (iii) 1.5 in.; 3 in.; 2.4 in.; (iv) 4 cm., 5.2 cm.; 3.3 cm.
2. Construct a triangle two of whose sides and the angle between them are, respectively,
 - (i) 5 cm., 2 cm.; 90° ; (ii) 4 in., 3 in.; 45° ;
 - (iii) 6 cm., 8 cm.; 135° ; (iv) 2.5 cm.; 4.1 cm.; $\frac{1}{2}$ rt. angle.
3. Construct a triangle of which two angles and the side adjacent to them are
 - (i) 50° , 65° ; 3 cm.; (ii) 90° , 30° ; 6 cm.; (iii) 75° , 60° ; 5 in.
4. Construct a triangle of which two angles and a side opposite to the first of these angles are
 - (i) 30° , 45° ; 3 cm.; (ii) 60° , 90° ; 2 in.; (iii) 75° , 62° ; 3.5 in.
5. Construct a triangle of which two sides and the angle opposite to the first of these sides are
 - (i) 6 cm., 4 cm.; 120° ; (ii) 8 cm., 7 cm.; 135° ;
 - (iii) 3 in., 3.5 cm.; 60° ; (iv) 3.2 in., 3.7 in.; 30° ;
 - (v) 7 cm., 5 cm.; 45° .
6. Construct a right-angled triangle the hypotenuse and a side of which are
 - (i) 3.5 cm., 2 cm.; (ii) 4.7 in., 3.2 in.; (iii) 9 cm., 5 cm.
7. Take a straight line one inch in length, and construct an equilateral triangle on it. Hence construct angles of 60° and 30° at a given point.
8. ABC is a right angle. Through B draw a straight line BD within the angle so that the angle ABD may be equal to one-third of the angle ABC.
9. Trisect a right angle.
10. Take a straight line one and a half inches long, and on it construct an isosceles triangle having each of the two sides $2\frac{1}{4}$ inches in length.
11. AB is a given straight line. Show how to draw a straight line AC so that the angle BAC may be equal to 30° .
12. On a given straight line as hypotenuse, construct a right-angled triangle of which the acute angles are 30° and 60° .

13. Construct an isosceles triangle having given the vertical angle and the length of the perpendicular from the vertex to the base.

14. Construct a triangle of which the base angles shall be equal to two given angles, and the perpendicular from the vertex to the base equal to a given straight line.

15. Construct a triangle of which the two sides and the perpendicular from the vertex to the base are given.

16. Construct an equilateral triangle having given the perpendicular from the vertex to the base.

17. Construct a triangle having given the base, one of the angles at the base, and the sum of the sides.

18. Two sides of a triangle are respectively 3 inches and 2 inches in length, and the angle opposite to the latter side is equal to 30° ; construct the triangle.

Also construct the triangle when the length of the latter side is $3\frac{1}{2}$ inches.

Show that in the former case there are two solutions, whilst in the latter there is only one.

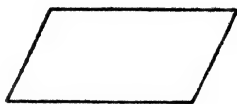
19. If the side BA of triangle ABC be produced to D so that $AD=AC$, and if DC be joined, prove that the angle BDC is half the angle BAC. Hence show how to construct an acute angled triangle having given a base angle, the vertical angle, and the sum of the sides.

20. ABC is a triangle. If D be taken on CB produced such that $BD=AB$, and if E be taken on BC produced such that $CE=AC$, and if AD and AE be joined; prove that the angle ADE is half of the angle ABC, and the angle AED is half of the angle ACB. Hence show how to construct a triangle having given the *perimeter* and the base angles.

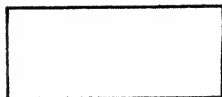
CHAPTER VIII

PARALLELOGRAMS

67. A quadrilateral whose opposite sides are parallel is called a **parallelogram**.



68. A parallelogram of which one angle is a right angle is called a **rectangle**.

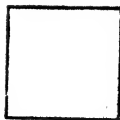


NOTE. It will be proved hereafter that if one angle of a parallelogram be a right angle *all* its angles are right angles.

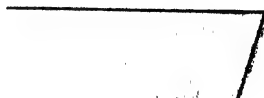
69. A quadrilateral whose sides are equal, but whose angles are not right angles is called a **rhombus**.



70. A rectangle of which two adjacent sides are equal, is called a **square**.

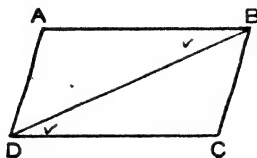


71. A quadrilateral which has one pair of opposite sides parallel, is called a **trapezium**.



THEOREM 22.

If a quadrilateral be such that two of its opposite sides are equal and parallel, then the other two sides also are equal and parallel.



Let ABCD be a quadrilateral such that two of its opposite sides AB, DC are equal and parallel.

It is required to prove that the other two sides AD, BC are also equal and parallel.

Proof.

Join BD.

Then, because AB and DC are parallel, and BD meets them,

\therefore the $\angle ABD =$ the alt. $\angle BDC$.

Now in the Δ^s ABD, CDB, we have

AB = CD,

BD common,

and the $\angle ABD =$ the $\angle CDB$; *proved above.*

\therefore the two Δ^s are congruent.

Hence AD = CB ;(i)

and the $\angle ADB =$ the $\angle CBD$.

But these two are alt. \angle^s ;

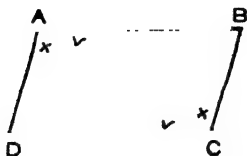
\therefore AD and BC are parallel.....(ii)

Thus, from (i) and (ii), AD and BC are both equal and parallel.

Q. E. D.

THEOREM 23.

The opposite sides and angles of a parallelogram are equal to one another, and each diagonal bisects the parallelogram.



Let ABCD be a parallelogram, of which AC is a diagonal.

It is required to prove that

- (i) $AB = DC$;
- (ii) $AD = BC$;
- (iii) *the $\angle ABC = \text{the } \angle ADC$;*
- (iv) *the $\angle BAD = \text{the } \angle BCD$;*
- (v) *the $\triangle ABC = \text{the } \triangle ADC$, in area.*

Proof. Because AB, DC are parallel, and AC meets them,
 \therefore the $\angle BAC = \text{the alt. } \angle ACD$.

Also, because AD, BC are parallel, and AC meets them,
 \therefore the $\angle DAC = \text{the alt. } \angle ACB$.

Hence, in the $\triangle ABC, ADC$, we have

$$\left. \begin{array}{l} \text{the } \angle BAC = \text{the } \angle ACD, \\ \text{the } \angle BCA = \text{the } \angle CAD, \end{array} \right\} \text{proved above.}$$

and AC common ;

\therefore the two \triangle 's are congruent.

Th. 18.

$$\left. \begin{array}{l} \text{Hence } AB = DC, \\ AD = BC, \\ \text{the } \angle ABC = \text{the } \angle ADC \end{array} \right\}$$

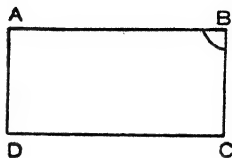
and the $\triangle ABC = \text{the } \triangle ADC$ in area.

Also, since the $\angle BAC = \text{the } \angle ACD$,
and the $\angle DAC = \text{the } \angle ACB$; } *proved above.*

\therefore the whole $\angle BAD = \text{the whole } \angle BCD$. Q. E. D.

COR. 1. *A rectangle has all its angles right angles.*

Let ABCD be a rectangle. Then by definition, (i) it is a parallelogram and (ii) it has one angle, say the $\angle B$, a right angle.



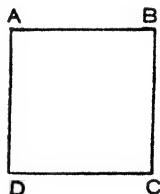
Since AB and DC are \parallel , the $\angle B + \text{the } \angle C = 2 \text{ rt. } \angle$; hence, the $\angle C$ is a rt. \angle .

Again, because ABCD is a par^m, the $\angle B = \text{the } \angle D$, and the $\angle C = \text{the } \angle A$; hence the \angle 's A and D also are rt. \angle 's.

\therefore All the angles of the rectangle are right angles.

COR. 2. *A square has all its sides equal and all its angles right angles.*

Let ABCD be a square; then by definition, (i) it is a rectangle and (ii) has two adjacent sides, say, AB and BC, equal.



Since, it is a rectangle, \therefore all its \angle 's are rt. \angle 's.

Again, since the square is also a par^m;

$\therefore AB = DC$ and $BC = AD$.

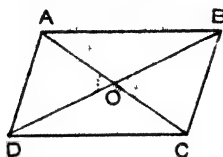
But $AB = BC$, by hypothesis.

Hence, all the sides of the square are equal.

COR. 3. *Parallel straight lines are always equidistant from one another.*

THEOREM 23A.

The diagonals of a parallelogram bisect one another.



Let the diagonals AC , BD of the par^m $ABCD$ intersect at O .

It is required to prove that $AO = OC$, and $BO = OD$.

Proof. In the Δ^s AOD , COB , we have
the $\angle OAD =$ the alt. $\angle OCB$,
the $\angle ODA =$ the alt. $\angle OBC$,
and $AD = BC$;

\therefore the two Δ^s are congruent.

Hence, $AO = OC$, and $BO = OD$.

Q. E. D.

EXERCISE 18

1. If one of the angles of a parallelogram is (i) 60° ; (ii) 135° ; (iii) 150° , write down its other angles.
2. If in the figure of Th. 33, $\angle BAC = 30^\circ$ and $\angle DAC = 45^\circ$, write down the values of all the other angles in the figure.
3. A quadrilateral is a parallelogram (i) if its opposite sides are equal; or (ii) if its opposite angles are equal or, (iii) if the diagonals of a quadrilateral bisect each other.
4. $ABCD$ is a parallelogram; if E and F are the middle points of AB and CD respectively, prove that the quadrilateral $AECF$ is a parallelogram.
5. The bisectors of two adjacent angles of a parallelogram meet at right angles.
6. $ABCD$ is a parallelogram. If CD is bisected at O and the $\angle AOB$ is a rt. \angle , prove that $AB = 2BC$.

7. If the diagonals of a parallelogram are equal, prove that it is a rectangle.

8. From any two points on a straight line, perpendiculars are drawn to a parallel straight line; prove that these perpendiculars are equal.

9. ABC and $A'B'C'$ are two triangles such that AB , AC are respectively equal and parallel to $A'B'$, $A'C'$. Prove that BC also is equal and parallel to $B'C'$.

10. Prove that the diagonals of a rhombus bisect each other at right angles.

11. If in a trapezium the non-parallel sides are equal, prove that the angles adjacent to either of the parallel sides are equal.

12. If the sum of the distances of any angular point of a quadrilateral from the other three is the same for all four, the figure is a rectangle.

13. If from any point on the diagonal of a rhombus lines are drawn parallel to the sides, show that each of the two parallelograms so formed about the diagonal of the rhombus is also a rhombus.

14. The diagonals of a quadrilateral are equal and bisect one another at right angles. Prove that the quadrilateral is a square.

15. The diagonal AC bisects the $\angle BCD$ of the par^m $ABCD$. Prove that the par^m is a rhombus.

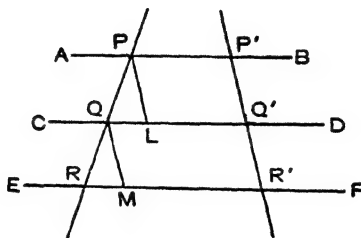
16. Any str. line drawn through the point of intersection of the diagonals of a parallelogram and terminated by a pair of opposite sides of the par^m is bisected at that point.

17. The str. lines bisecting two opposite angles of a par^m are either parallel or coincident.

18. The bisectors of the angles of a par^m whose sides are not all equal form a rectangle.

THEOREM 24.

If there are three or more parallel straight lines, and the intercepts made by them on any straight line that cuts them are equal, then the corresponding intercepts on any other straight line that cuts them are also equal.



Let AB, CD, EF be parallel str. lines. Let a str. line PR cut them in P, Q, R respectively so that the intercepts PQ, QR are equal.

Let any other str. line $P'Q'R'$ cut the par^l lines in P' , Q' , R' .

It is required to prove that $P'Q' = Q'R'$.

Suppose PL, QM are drawn par^l to $P'R'$, meeting CD in L and EF in M.

Proof. Since CD is \parallel to EF, and PR meets them.

\therefore the $\angle PQL =$ the corresponding $\angle QRM$.

Also, PL and QM are parallel, each being \parallel to $P'R'$;

\therefore the $\angle QPL =$ the corresponding $\angle RQM$.

Then, in the Δ^s PQL and QRM,

the $\angle PQL =$ the $\angle QRM$,

the $\angle QPL =$ the $\angle RQM$,

and $PQ = QR$;

\therefore the two Δ^s are congruent.

Hence $PL = QM$.

Now, the quadrilateral $PLQ'P'$ is a par^m , since its opp. sides are \parallel .

$\therefore PL = \text{the opposite side } P'Q'.$

Similarly, the quadr. $QMR'Q'$ being a par^m ,

$$QM = Q'R'.$$

But, $PL = QM,$

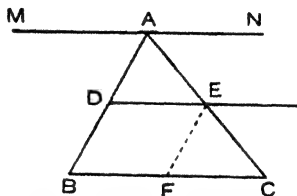
proved

$$\therefore P'Q' = Q'R'.$$

Q. E. D.

COR. 1. *If D be the middle point of the side AB of a triangle ABC, then the straight line drawn through D parallel to BC will bisect AC.*

Let the str. line through D \parallel to BC intersect AC at E.



It is required to prove that $AE = EC$. If through A a str. line MN be supposed to be drawn \parallel to BC, then the parallels MN, DE, BC are cut by the two str. lines AB, AC.

Hence, the intercepts made on AB being equal, the corresponding intercepts on AC must be equal, too.

Hence, $AE = EC$.

COR. 2. *If D and E be the middle points of the sides AB and AC of a triangle ABC, then DE is parallel to BC and is half of BC.*

For, if DE be not \parallel to BC, let DE' be \parallel to it, meeting AC in E' . Then E' is the mid-point of AC, which is impossible. Hence DE is \parallel to BC.

Again, it is required to prove that $DE = \frac{1}{2}BC$.

Draw EF par^l to AB meeting BC at F.

Since E is the mid-point of AC and EF is par^l to AB,

$$\therefore BF = FC \quad \text{Cor. 1.}$$

$$\text{i.e., } BF = \frac{1}{2} \cdot BC.$$

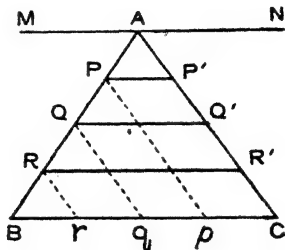
But, BAEF is a par^m, its opposite sides being par^l.

$$\therefore BF = \text{the opposite side } DE.$$

$$\text{Hence, } OE = \frac{1}{2} \cdot BC.$$

COR. 3. *If one side of a triangle be divided into any number of equal parts, and if through the points of division, straight lines be drawn parallel to the base, then the points in which these parallels meet the other side will divide that side into the same number of equal parts.*

If the points P, Q, R divide the side AB of a triangle ABC into four equal parts; and if PP', QQ', RR' drawn \parallel to BC meet AC in P', Q', R', then AC also is divided into four equal parts at these points.



Supposing MAN to be drawn \parallel to BC, we find that the five parallels make equal intercepts on the line AB which cuts them.

Hence the intercepts made by them on another line AC, which cuts them, must also be equal.

If through P, Q, R lines Pp, Qq, Rr be drawn \parallel to AC, they will also divide BC into four equal parts, each of which is equal to PP'. Further, it is evident that $QQ' = 2PP'$, $RR' = 3PP'$, i.e.

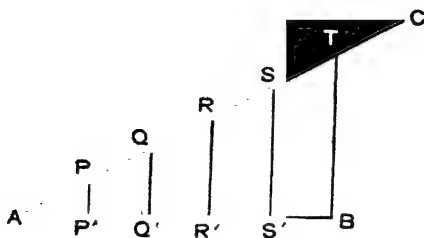
$$PP' = \frac{1}{4} \cdot BC, \quad QQ' = \frac{2}{4} \cdot BC, \quad RR' = \frac{3}{4} \cdot BC.$$

Similarly, if AB is divided into n equal parts by the par^l lines,

$$PP' = \frac{1}{n} \cdot BC, \quad QQ' = \frac{2}{n} \cdot BC; \text{ and so on.}$$

PROBLEM 12.

To divide a given straight line into any number of equal parts (say five).



Let AB be the given str. line.

It is required to divide it into five equal parts.

Construction. From A draw a str. line AC , of unlimited length, making any angle with AB .

From AC cut off successively five *equal* parts of *any* length, AP , PQ , QR , RS , ST .

Join TB ; and through P , Q , R , S draw PP' , QQ' , RR' , SS' each \parallel to TB , meeting AB in P' , Q' , R' , S' respectively.

Then AB is divided into five equal parts at the points P' , Q' , R' , S' .

Proof. Since the side AT of the $\triangle ATB$ has been divided into five equal parts at the points P , Q , R , S , and through the points of division PP' , QQ' , RR' , SS' have been drawn \parallel to the base TB ;

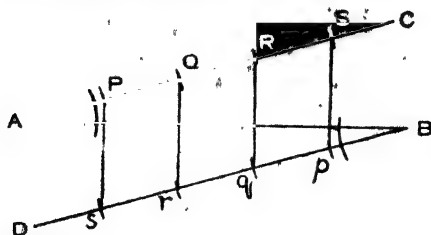
\therefore the points P' , Q' , R' , S' also divide the other side AB into five equal parts.

Q. E. F.

NOTE. In the above figure, $AP' = \frac{1}{5}AB$, $AQ' = \frac{2}{5}AB$, etc. Hence, the above construction may also be used to cut off a given fractional part from a line.

PROBLEM 12. SECOND METHOD.

To divide AB into five equal parts.



Construction. Through A, draw the str. line AC at any angle with AB. Through B, draw BD par^l to AC.

From AC, cut off equal parts AP, PQ, QR, RS.

Also, from BD cut off parts Bp, pq, qr, rs equal to the parts taken on AC.

Join Sp, Rq, Qr, Ps.

These lines divide AB into five equal parts.

Because RS and pq are equal and parallel by construction.

\therefore Rq is par^l to Sp. Th. 22.

Similarly, Qr is par^l to Rq and Ps is par^l to Qr.

\therefore Ps, Qr, Rq and Sp are par^l to one another.

Next apply Th. 24, Cor. 3, for the proof.

EXERCISE 19

1. The str. line drawn through the middle point of a side of a triangle parallel to the base bisects the remaining side. Prove this without applying Th. 24.

[In the $\triangle ABC$, if D be the middle point of AB and DE is drawn par^l to BC meeting AC in E, it is required to prove that $AE = EC$.

Through E draw EF par^l to AB meeting BC in F, and then prove that the \triangle s ADE and EFC are congruent.]

2. The str. line joining the middle points of two sides of a triangle is parallel to and half of the third side. Prove this without applying the indirect method.

[In the $\triangle ABC$, let D, E be the mid-pts. of the sides AB, AC . To prove that DE is par^l to BC and $=\frac{1}{2}BC$.

Produce DE to F such that $EF=DE$ and join CF . Then, prove that the $\triangle s$ ADE, ECF are congruent and the quadrilateral $BDFC$ is a par^o.]

3. If the middle points of the sides of a triangle be joined, prove that the triangle is divided into four congruent triangles.

4. If through the middle point of a side of a triangle a str. line be drawn parallel to the base, prove that it bisects any str. line drawn from the vertex to the base.

5. D is the mid-point of the hypotenuse BC of the right-angled triangle ABC . Prove that $BC=2AD$. [Join D with mid-point of AB .]

6. If the middle points of the adjacent sides of any quadrilateral are joined, prove that the figure thus formed is a parallelogram.

7. Straight lines joining the middle points of the opposite sides of a quadrilateral bisect each other.

8. The str. lines joining the middle points of opposite sides of a quadrilateral, and the middle points of the diagonals, meet in a point, which is the middle point of all the three lines.

9. The str. line joining the middle points of the oblique sides of a trapezium is parallel to the parallel sides and is equal to half their sum.

10. C is the middle point of the str. line AB . If Aa, Bb, Cc be drawn perpendiculars from A, B, C on the str. line acb , prove that c is the mid-point of ab .

11. Show how to construct a triangle given the three middle points of its sides.

12. Divide a str. line into (i) 9 equal parts ; (ii) 11 equal parts ; (iii) 7 equal parts.

13. From a str. line cut off a portion equal to (i) $\frac{1}{2}$ of the line ; (ii) $\frac{2}{3}$ of the line ; (iii) $\frac{1}{4}$ of the line.

14. Construct an equilateral triangle whose perimeter is given.

15. Divide a given straight line into two parts one of which is (i) $\frac{1}{2}$ of the other ; (ii) $\frac{2}{3}$ of the other ; (iii) $\frac{3}{4}$ of the other.

16. Divide a given str. line into 3 parts such that the first part is double of the second and half of the third.

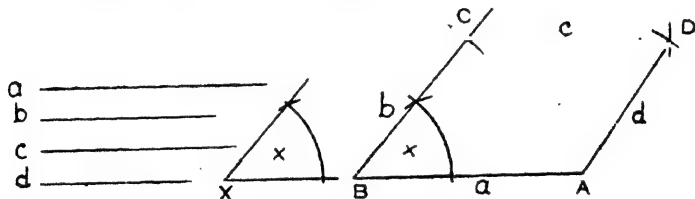
CHAPTER IX

THE CONSTRUCTION OF QUADRILATERALS

72. We have noticed that three independent data are required for the construction of a triangle; but it will be evident from the following examples that *five* independent data are necessary to construct a quadrilateral.

PROBLEM 13.

To construct a quadrilateral having given the lengths of the four sides and one angle.



Let a, b, c, d be the lengths of the four sides and x the angle between the sides, equal to a and b .

Construction. Take a str. line AB and cut off from it a portion $AB=a$.

Make the $\angle ABC=x$ and from BC cut off $BC=b$. With C and A as centres and radii equal to c and d respectively draw two arcs intersecting at the point D .

Join DC, DA .

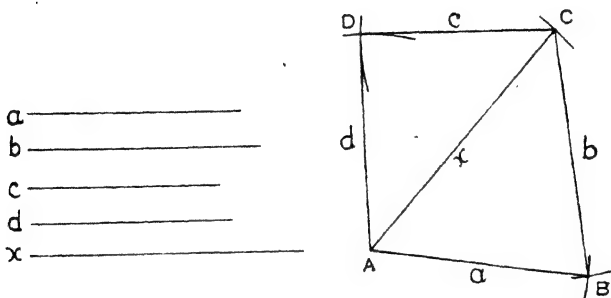
Then, $ABCD$ is the quadrilateral reqd.

Proof. By construction, the sides of $ABCD$ are equal to a, b, c, d , and the $\angle ABC=x$.

Q. E. F.

PROBLEM 14.

To construct a quadrilateral having given the four sides and a diagonal.



Let a, b, c, d be the lengths of the four sides and x the length of the diagonal.

Construction. Take a line $AC = x$.

With A and C as centres and radii equal to a and b respectively draw two arcs intersecting at B .

Again, with A and C as centres and radii equal to d and c draw two other arcs intersecting at D .

Join BA, BC and DA, DC .

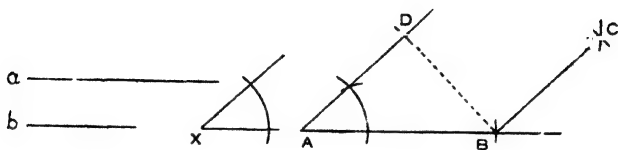
Then, $ABCD$ is the quadrilateral reqd.

Proof. By construction, the sides of the quadrilateral $ABCD$ are equal to a, b, c, d and the diagonal $AC = x$.

Q. E. F.

PROBLEM 15.

To construct a parallelogram having given two adjacent sides and the included angle.



Let a and b be the two given sides, and x the given angle.

Construction. Take a line AB and from it cut off $AB = a$.

Make the angle $BAD = x$ and from AD cut off $AD = b$.

With centres B and D , and radii equal to b , a respectively draw two arcs intersecting at C .

Join CB , CD .

Then $ABCD$ is the par^m reqd.

Proof.

Join DB .

In the $\Delta^s ABD, DBC$,

$AB = DC$

$AD = BC$

and BD is common.

\therefore the two Δ^s are congruent ;

so that, the $\angle ABD = \text{the } \angle CDB$

and the $\angle ADB = \text{the } \angle DBC$.

But these are pairs of alternate angles.

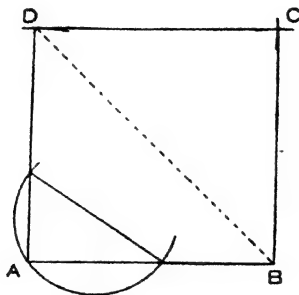
$\therefore AB$ is \parallel to CD and AD is \parallel to BC

i.e., $ABCD$ is a par^m.

Q. E. F.

PROBLEM 16.

To construct a square on a given side.



Let AB be the given side.

Construction. At A draw AD perpendicular to AB and cut off from it $AD = AB$.

With B and D as centres and with radius AB , draw two arcs cutting at C .

Join CB , CD .

Then $ABCD$ is the square required.

Proof. Join DB . As in Prob. 15, $ABCD$ may be shewn to be a par^m.

Because the $\angle BAD$ is a rt. \angle and also by construction the sides of the figure are equal.

$\therefore ABCD$ is a square.

Q. E. F.

EXERCISE 20*(On Problems 13-16).*

1. Construct a quadrilateral having given
 - (i) four sides and an angle ;
 - (ii) three sides and two diagonals ;
 - (iii) three sides and the two angles between them ;
 - (iv) the two segments of each diagonal and the angle between them ;
 - (v) two adjacent sides and three angles.
 2. Construct a parallelogram having given
 - (i) two adjacent sides and a diagonal ;
 - (ii) two adjacent sides and the angle between a diagonal and one of the two sides ;
 - (iii) a side and two diagonals ;and (iv) two diagonals and the included angle.
 3. Construct a trapezium having given the parallel sides, and the other two.

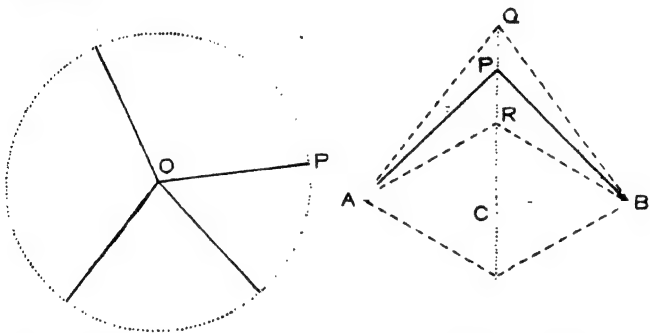
[If $ABCD$ is the trapezium with $AB \parallel$ to CD , through B draw $BE \parallel$ to AD to meet CD at E . Then, clearly the sides of the $\triangle CEB$ are known and $ABED$ is also a known par^m.]
 4. Construct a rhombus having given
 - (i) a side and an angle ;
 - (ii) a side and a diagonal ;and (iii) two diagonals.
 5. Construct a rectangle having given
 - (i) two adjacent sides ;
 - (ii) a diagonal and a side ;and (iii) a diagonal and the angle between the diagonals.
 6. Construct a square having given a diagonal.

[Diagonals of a square are equal and bisect each other at rt. angles.]
-

CHAPTER X

LOCI

73. When a point moves and its motion is restricted by some given condition, the path traced out by the point is called the **locus**.



For instance, when a point P moves so that its distance from a fixed point O , is always the same, say, 2 cms., its locus is evidently the circumference of a circle of which the fixed point O is the centre and the given distance (*viz.* 2 cms.), the radius.

When any number of points, each of which satisfies a given condition, lie on a particular line (straight or curved), that line is also called the **locus** of those *points*. From this point of view, the locus of points, each of which lies at a given distance from a given point, is the circumference of the circle which is described with the given point as centre and the given distance as radius.

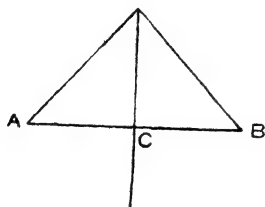
74. In order to show that the locus of a point is a certain line (straight or curved) it must be proved that (i) *every point which satisfies the given condition lies on the line;*

and (ii) *every point on the line satisfies the given condition.*

In many cases, however, when the first part is proved, the second part becomes evident, and is not, therefore, established.

THEOREM 25.

The locus of a point which is equidistant from two fixed points is the perpendicular bisector of the straight line joining the two fixed points.



Let A and B be two fixed points.

It is required to prove that the locus of a point equidistant from A and B is the perpendicular bisector of AB.

Cf. Fig. Art. 73.

i.e. to prove that (i) if any point is equidistant from A and B, it is on the perpendicular bisector of AB ;

and (ii) if any point lies on the perpendicular bisector of AB, it is equidistant from A and B.

(i) Let P be any point equidistant from A and B so that $PA = PB$.

It is required to prove that P lies on the perpendicular bisector of AB.

Proof. Let C = the mid-pt. of AB.

Join PC.

In the Δ^s PCA, PCB,

$$PA = PB$$

$$CA = CB$$

and PC is common.

\therefore The two Δ^s are congruent.

Hence, the $\angle ACP = \angle BCP$.

\therefore CP is perp. to AB,

i.e. P lies on the perpendicular bisector of AB.

(ii) Let P be any point on the perpendicular bisector PC of AB .

It is required to prove that P is equidistant from A and B .

Proof.

In the $\Delta^s PCA, PCB$,

$AC=BC$,

PC is common,

and the $\angle PCA =$ the $\angle PCB$, each being a rt. \angle .

\therefore The two Δ^s are congruent.

Hence, $PA=PB$.

i.e., P is equidistant from A and B .

\therefore From (i) and (ii), the required locus of P is the perpendicular bisector of AB .

Q. E. D.

EXERCISE 20A

1. Prove that the locus of a point which moves in such a manner that its distance from a given straight line is always the same, consists of two straight lines parallel to the given line, one on either side of it.

2. Find the locus of the vertex of an isosceles triangle on a given base AB .

3. Str. lines are drawn from the vertex A to the base BC of the ΔABC . Find the locus of their middle points.

4. The locus of the vertices of right-angled triangles described on a given hypotenuse AB , is the circle on AB as diameter.

5. A straight rod PQ of fixed length slips between two fixed rods OA, OB at rt. angles of each other. The locus of the middle point of PQ is a circle with centre O and radius $=\frac{1}{2}PQ$.

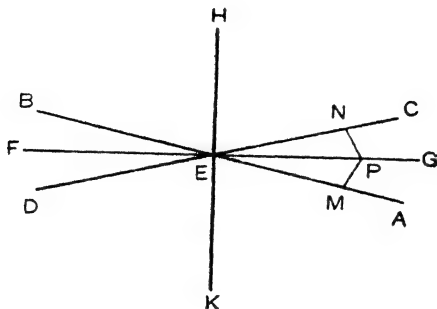
6. Find the locus of the centre of circles passing through two given points.

7. The locus of a point which is equidistant from two given par^l lines is the line par^l to each of them and lying half way between them.

8. Find a point in a given straight line at a given distance from another given straight line.

THEOREM 26.

The locus of a point which is equidistant from two intersecting straight lines consists of the pair of straight lines which bisect the angles between the two given lines.



Let AB, CD be two given str. lines which intersect at E .

It is required to prove that the locus of a point equidistant from AB and CD is the pair of lines which bisect the angles between AB and CD .

i.e., to prove that

- (i) *if any point is equidistant from AB and CD , it lies on either of the bisectors of the angles between AB and CD ;*
 and (ii) *if any point lies on any of the bisectors of the angles between AB and CD , it is equidistant from AB and CD .*

(i) Let P be any point equidistant from AB and CD so that the perp. PM on AB = the perp. PN on CD .

It is required to prove that the $\angle PEM$ = the $\angle PEN$.

Proof. In the right-angled Δ^s PEM, PEN ,
 the hypotenuse PE is common
 and $PM = PN$;

\therefore The two Δ^s are congruent.

Hence, $\angle PEM = \angle PEN$.

(ii) Next, let P be any point on the bisector of any one of the angles between AB and CD .

It is required to prove that P is equidistant from AB and CD .

Proof. From P draw PM and $PN \perp$ to AB and CD respectively.

In the Δ^s PEM , PEN , we have

the $\angle PEM =$ the $\angle PEN$,

the $\angle PME =$ the $\angle PNE$,

and the side EP common;

\therefore the two Δ^s are equal in all respects.

Hence $PM = PN$.

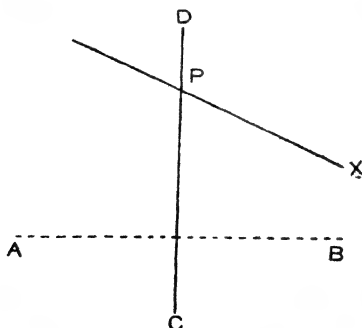
i.e. P is equidistant from AB and CD .

\therefore From (i) and (ii), the locus of a point equidistant from AB and CD is the pair of lines which bisect the angles between AB and CD . Q. E. D.

INTERSECTION OF LOCI

75. When a point satisfies more than one geometrical condition it can be found out conveniently by the method of loci, as in the following illustrations.

Ex. 1. Find the point in a given str. line X so that its distances from two given points A and B outside the line X may be equal.



Since the locus of all the points equidistant from A and B is the perpendicular bisector, CD , of the line AB ,

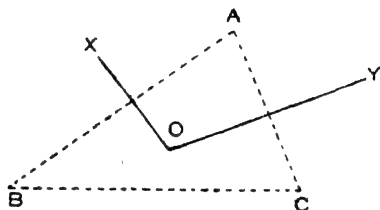
\therefore the required point must lie on CD.

But it is also on X .

Hence, the reqd. pt. is common to both CD and X i.e. the point of their intersection, viz. P.

Ex. 2. Find a point equidistant from three given points A, B, C.

Since the point required is equidistant from A and B, it must be on the perpendicular bisector, X , of the line AB.



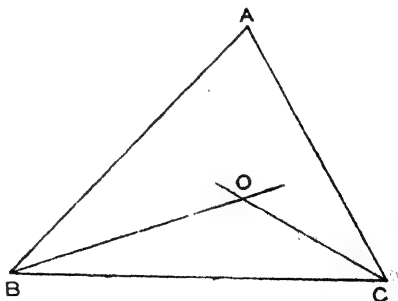
Again, since the point is also equidistant from A and C it must be on the perpendicular bisector, Y , of the line AC.

Hence, the point required must be common to both X and Y i.e. the point of intersection O of the lines X and Y .

Ex. 3. Find a point equidistant from the sides BC, CA, AB of the $\triangle ABC$.

The locus of points equidistant from BC, AB is the bisector, BO of the $\angle ABC$.

Similarly, the locus of points equidistant from BC, CA is the bisector, CO of the $\angle BCA$.



Hence, the point common to BO and CO must satisfy both these conditions, i.e. O, the point of intersection of BO and CO must be equidistant from BC, CA, AB.

EXERCISE 21

1. What is the locus of points which are equidistant from two given points? Construct an isosceles triangle on a given base AB and having its vertex on a given line.

2. What is the locus of points which are equally distant from two intersecting straight lines?

Find a point in a given straight line so that it may be equally distant from two intersecting straight lines.

3. Find a point which is equally distant from two fixed points and is also at a given distance from a third fixed point.

When is this problem impossible?

4. Find a point which is equally distant from two fixed straight lines and is also at a given distance from a fixed point.

5. Find a point which is equally distant from two fixed straight lines and from two fixed points.

6. Find a point which is at a distance of 5 cms. from two fixed intersecting lines.

7. Find the centre of a circle passing through three given points.

8. Draw a circle passing through two given points and having a given radius.

9. Find a point which is at a distance of 2 inches from one fixed point and 3 inches from another.

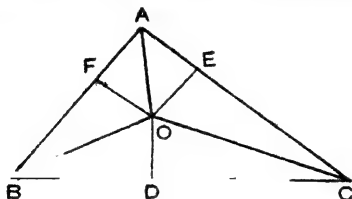
When is this problem impossible?

10. AB and AC are two fixed and unlimited straight lines. Find a point which is at a distance of 2 inches from AB and 3 inches from AC .

CHAPTER XI

MISCELLANEOUS PROPOSITIONS (I)

1. *The bisectors of the angles of a triangle meet at a point.*



Let ABC be a Δ , and let the bisectors of the \angle 's B and C meet at O .

Join AO

It is required to prove that AO is the bisector of the $\angle A$.

From O draw $OD, OE, OF \perp$ to BC, CA, AB respectively.

Proof. Because BO bisects the $\angle ABC$,

\therefore any pt. in BO is equidistant from BC and BA ;

$\therefore OD = OF$.

For a similar reason, any pt. in CO is equidistant from CB and CA ;

$\therefore OD = OE$.

Hence $OF = OE$.

$\therefore O$ is on the bisector of the $\angle BAC$;

i.e., AO is on the bisector of the $\angle BAC$.

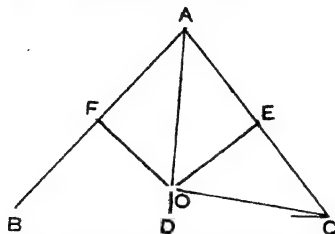
Thus, the bisectors of the \angle 's A, B, C meet at a pt. **Q. E. D.**

76. When three or more straight lines meet at a point, they are said to be **concurrent**.

So the above proposition might be stated as follows:—*The bisectors of the angles of a triangle are concurrent.*

When three or more points lie in the same straight line they are said to be **collinear**.

2. The perpendiculars drawn to the sides of a triangle from their middle points are concurrent.



Let ABC be a Δ , and D, E, F be the mid-points of BC, CA, AB respectively.

From F and E draw \perp^s to AB, AC meeting at O .

Join OD .

It is required to prove that OD is \perp to BC .

Join OA, OB, OC .

Proof. Because O is on the perpendicular bisector of AB ,

$\therefore OA = OB$.

For a similar reason, $OA = OC$.

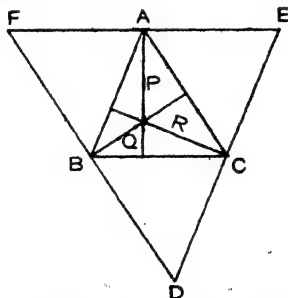
Hence $OB = OC$;

and $\therefore O$ is on the \perp bisector of BC .

Hence OD is \perp to BC .

Q. E. D.

3. The perpendiculars drawn from the vertices of a triangle to the opposite sides are concurrent.



Let ABC be a Δ , and let AP, BQ, CR , when produced, be \perp to BC, CA, AB respectively.

It is required to prove that AP, BQ, CR (when produced) are concurrent.

Through A, B and C, draw str. lines \parallel to BC, CA and AB respectively, thus forming the $\triangle DEF$.

Proof. Since FE is \parallel to BC, and FD is \parallel to AC,

\therefore AFBC is a par^m.

\therefore FA = BC.

Similarly, AE = BC.

Hence, FA = AE; and \therefore A is the mid-point of EF.

Similarly, B is the mid-pt. of FD, and C is the mid-pt. of DE.

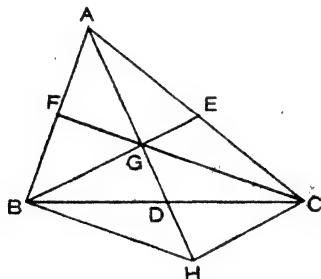
Now, since BC is \parallel to FE, and AP produced is \perp to BC,

\therefore AP is also \perp to FE.

Similarly, BQ is \perp to FD and CR is \perp to DE.

Thus, AP, BQ and CR are \perp to the sides of the $\triangle EFD$ at their middle points; and \therefore they are concurrent. Q. E. D.

4. *The medians of a triangle are concurrent; the common point divides each median into two parts, of which the part nearer the vertex is double the other.*



Let E, F be the mid-pts. of the sides CA and AB of the $\triangle ABC$, and let the medians BE, CF intersect at G.

Join AG, and produce it to meet BC at D.

It is required to prove that D is the mid-pt. of BC.

Through B draw BH \parallel to FC, and produce AD to meet BH at H.

Join CH.

Proof. (1) In the $\triangle ABH$, F is the mid-pt. of AB , and FG is \parallel to BH ;

$\therefore G$ is the mid-pt. of AH .

Again, in the $\triangle AHC$, G and E are the mid-pts. of the sides AH and AC .

$\therefore GE$ is \parallel to HC .

Thus the opp. sides of the quadl. $BGCH$ are \parallel , and $\therefore BGCH$ is a par^m .

But the diagonals of a par^m bisect one another;

$\therefore D$ is the mid-pt. of BC .

Thus the three medians AD , BE , CF meet at the point G .

Q. E. D.

(2) Since D is the mid-pt. of GH .

$\therefore GH = 2GD$.

But $AG = GH$, $\therefore AG = 2GD$.

Also, $BG = HC = 2GE$;
and, $CG = HB = 2GF$;

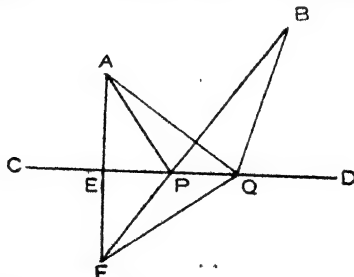
Th. 24, Cor. 2.

Q. E. D.

77. The point of intersection of the medians of a triangle is called the **centroid** of the triangle.

Thus, in the above figure, the point G is the *Centroid* of the $\triangle ABC$.

5. A and B are two points on the same side of an unlimited straight line CD . P is a point in CD such that the angles APC and BPD are equal. Prove that, of all points on the straight line CD , P is that the sum of whose distances from A and B is the least.



Let Q be any other pt. in CD .

Join AQ, BQ .

It is required to prove that $AQ + QB > AP + PB$.

Produce BP to F , making $PF = PA$; join AF , cutting CD in E .

Join FQ .

Proof. In the Δ ' APE, FPE , we have

$$AP = PF,$$

PE common,

and the $\angle APE = \angle EPF$

(\therefore each of them = the $\angle BPD$).

\therefore the two Δ ' are congruent.

Hence, $AE = EF$, and EP is \perp to AF .

Thus, CD is the \perp bisector of the str. line AF .

Hence, $QA = QF$;

and $\therefore AQ + QB = FQ + QB$.

Also $AP + PB = FB$.

Cons.

But $FQ + QB$ is $> FB$,

$\therefore AQ + QB$ is $> AP + PB$.

Q. E. D.

MISCELLANEOUS EXERCISES

1. A straight line AB is bisected at C . If any point P be taken on AB produced, prove that $AP + BP = 2CP$.

2. A straight line AB is bisected at C and any point P is taken in BC , show that $AP - BP = 2CP$.

3. Define adjacent angles.

$\angle POA, \angle POB$ are angles on the same side of OP . If OC bisects $\angle AOB$, prove that $\angle POA + \angle POB = 2\angle POC$.

4. $\angle AOP, \angle BOP$ are adjacent angles, of which $\angle AOP$ is the greater. If OC bisects $\angle AOB$, prove that $\angle AOP - \angle BOP = 2\angle COP$.

5. If, in the diagram of Th. 1, $\angle AOC$ is one-third of $\angle BOC$, find $\angle COD$.

6. If the straight line joining the middle points of two opposite sides of a quadrilateral be perpendicular to each of these sides, prove that its other sides are equal.

7. If the bisector of the vertical angle of a triangle also bisects the base, prove that the triangle is either isosceles or obtuse-angled

8. The equal sides AB , AC of an isosceles triangle ABC are produced to D and E respectively such that $BD=CE$. Prove that $BE=CD$.

9. BC is the greatest side of the $\triangle ABC$, and E , F are any points in CA , AB respectively, prove that $BC > EF$.

10. No straight line can be drawn within a triangle greater than the greatest side.

11. In any triangle any two sides are together greater than twice the median which bisects the remaining side.

Hence deduce that in any triangle the sum of the medians is less than the perimeter.

12. The diameter is the greatest chord of a circle. [The straight line joining any two points on the circumference of a circle is called a chord.]

13. The angle made by two straight lines joining any point on a circle to the ends of a diameter is a rt. angle.

14. The angle between the bisector of the vertical angle of a triangle and the perpendicular from the vertex to the base is equal to half the difference of the base angles.

15. ABC is an equilateral triangle, and D is a point within it. Show that it is possible to construct a triangle with its sides equal to DA , DB , DC .

16. $ABCD$ is a quadrilateral such that the bisectors of $\angle s$ ABC , BCD make a rt. angle. Prove that AB is parallel to CD .

17. In a certain triangle the three angles are in the ratio $4 : 3 : 2$. Find the number of degrees in each angle.

18. In a right-angled triangle, one acute angle exceeds the other by 30° . Find the angles.

19. How many sides has a regular polygon whose interior angle is 19 times as great as its exterior angle?

20. If the sum of the interior angles of a polygon is 24 rt. angles, find the number of its sides.

21. If each interior angle of a regular polygon be $1\frac{1}{2}$ rt. angles, find the number of its sides.

22. $ABCDE$ is a regular pentagon, and AC is joined. Prove that the bisector of the $\angle ACB$ is at right angles to CD .

23. Prove that the triangle formed by joining the middle points of the sides of an equilateral triangle is also equilateral.

24. If a quadrilateral has all its sides equal, prove that its diagonals bisect each other at right angles.

25. ABC is a triangle of which the sides AB is greater than the side AC , if D is the middle point of BC and AD is joined, prove that the $\angle ADB$ is obtuse.

26. If, in Ex. 25, E be any point on AD , prove that BE is greater than CE .

27. Any point P is taken within a circle with centre O and straight lines PA, PB are drawn to the circumference. If $\angle POA > \angle POB$, prove that $PA > PB$ and conversely.

28. Through any point X within a circle the diameter AB is drawn such that the centre of the circle lies on AX . Prove that AX and BX are respectively the greatest and the least of all the straight lines that can be drawn from X to the circumference.

29. In the $\triangle ABC$, the sides AB, AC are produced to D and E respectively such that $BD=CE$. If $CD > BE$, then $AB > AC$ and conversely, if $AB > AC$, then $CD > BE$.

30. $ABCD$ is a quadrilateral in which $AB=CD$ and $AC > BD$. Prove that $\angle ABC > \angle BCD$.

31. ABC is a triangle of which the side AC is greater than the side AB . AD is drawn bisecting the angle BAC , and meeting BC in D . Prove that CD is greater than BD .

32. Through a given point draw a straight line such that the perpendiculars on it from two fixed points may be on opposite side of it and equal to each other.

33. $ABCD$ is a parallelogram ; E and F are the mid-points of AB and CD respectively. If DE, BF intersect the diagonal AC at G and H , prove that $AG=GH=HC$.

34. Prove that the medians of a triangle meet at a point which is a point of trisection on each of them. Hence find a method of trisecting a given straight line.

35. Construct a triangle having given the base, the perpendicular from the vertex to the base, and the line joining the vertex to the mid-point of the base.

36. ABC is a triangle. If AB, AC be produced to D and E respectively, prove that the bisectors of the angle DBC, ECB meet at a point which lies on the bisector of the angle BAC .

37. Construct a right-angled triangle having given the hypotenuse and the sum of the sides.

38. Prove that the locus of the vertices of all right-angled triangles which have a common hypotenuse is a circle.

39. Construct an isosceles triangle having given the base, and the sum of one of the equal sides and the perpendicular from the vertex to the base.

40. AB, AC are two given straight lines ; through a given pt. D between them, draw a straight line meeting AB, AC in G and H , so that GH may be bisected at D .

41. OA, OB, OC are three given straight lines, of which OB lies between OA and OC . Draw the straight line terminated by OA and OC , and bisected by OB .

42. $ABCD$ is a parallelogram, and MN is an unlimited straight line outside it. If AP, BQ, CR, DS be perpendiculars to MN , prove that $AP+CR=BQ+DS$.

43. Construct a triangle, having given the base, an angle at the base, and the difference of the sides.

44. BC is the base of an isosceles triangle ABC , EAD is drawn parallel to BC , and *any* point P is taken on AD . Prove that $BP+PC > BA+AC$.

Prove also that if Q be *any* point above the line DE , $BQ+QC > BA+AC$.

Hence prove that if R be *any* point *above* BC , such that $BR+RC=BA+AC$, then R must be *below* DE .

45. Of all triangles which stand on the same base and which have their vertices in a straight line parallel to the base, prove that the triangle which is isosceles, has the *least* perimeter.

46. Prove that any side of a triangle is greater than the difference of the other two sides. Hence prove that if P is a point in an unlimited straight line MN , such that PA and PB are equally inclined to it, where A and B are two fixed points on opposite sides of MN , then of all points in the given straight line, P is that the *difference* of whose distances from A and B is the *greatest*.

47. Construct a triangle having given the three medians.

[To the figure of Misc. Prop. No. 4 ; notice that the $\triangle BGH$ can be constructed.]

48. If two of the medians of a triangle are equal, the triangle is isosceles.

49. Find the locus of a point which moves so that the sum or difference of its distances from two intersecting str. lines at rt. angles to each other is always a constant.

50. If the sides of a triangle are unequal prove that the bisector of the vertical angle lies between the median and the perpendicular from the vertex to the base.

BOOK II

AREAS

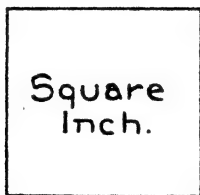
CHAPTER I

DEFINITIONS

1. The **area** of a figure is the amount of surface enclosed by its bounding lines.

2. A **square inch** is the area of a square described on a side one inch long.

A *square centimetre* is the area of a square described on a side one centimetre long.



Similarly, the terms a **square foot**, a **square yard**, a **square mile**, etc. are used in the same sense.

3. The **unit of area** is the area of a square on a side of one unit length.

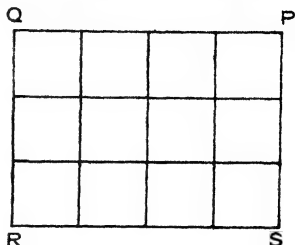
Thus, if the unit of length is an *inch*, the unit of area is a *square inch*; if the unit of length is a *centimetre*, the unit of area is a *square centimetre*; etc.

4. To **measure** the area of a figure is to find how often the figure contains the unit of area.

5. The **area of a rectangle**.

Let PQRS be a rectangle of which the length $PQ=4$ units and the breadth $QR=3$ units.

Divide PQ into four equal parts and QR into 3 equal parts and through the pts. of division in either side, draw lines parallel to the other; then the whole rectangle is divided into 3 rows of squares, a side of each square being equal to the unit of length. There are 4 squares in each row; the total number of squares = 3 times 4 = 12, and hence the area of the rectangle = 12 units of area.



Similarly, if the length = a units and the breadth = b units, the area of the rectangle = $a \times b$ units of area.

Hence, if the side of a square = a units,

its area = $a \times a$ units of area

= a^2 units of area,

or, briefly, the **area of a rectangle** = **length \times breadth** ;

the **area of a square** = **side \times side**.

NOTATION

6. The square on the side AB is written as AB^2 , or *sq. on AB*.

A rectangle is said to be **contained** by any two of its adjacent sides. Thus, the rectangle ABCD is **contained** by AB and BC and is briefly written as "the rect. AB, BC", or "AB. BC".

A four-sided figure is very often named by the two letters at opposite corners. Thus, the rectangle ABCD might be named the rect. AC or the rect. BD.

DEFINITION

7. Any side of a parallelogram or a triangle may be called the **base**.

The **altitude** (or **height**) of a parallelogram with reference to a given side as base is the perpendicular distance between the base and the opposite side.

Thus, in fig. 1 below, CM is the altitude of the par^m AC with reference to AB as base.

The **altitude** (or **height**) of a triangle with reference to a given side as base is the perpendicular distance of the opposite vertex from the base.

For example, in fig. 2 below, CM is the altitude of the ΔABC with reference to AB as base.

8. *Parallelograms or triangles which are between the same parallels have equal altitudes.*

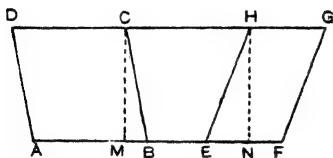


Fig. 1.

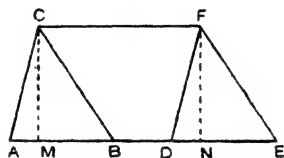


Fig. 2.

Thus, in fig. 1, the parallelograms AC , EG are between the same parallels, AF and DG . The figure $CMNH$ is clearly a rectangle.

$$\therefore CM = HN.$$

Also in fig. 2, the Δ 's ABC , DEF are between the same parallels AE and CF . The figure $CMNF$ is evidently a rectangle.

$$\therefore CM = FN.$$

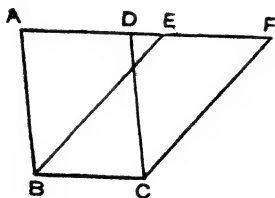
—————

CHAPTER II

THEOREMS

THEOREM 27.

Parallelograms on the same base and between the same parallels (hence, of the same altitude) are equal in area.



Let the par^m ABCD and EBCF be on the same base BC and between the same parallels AF, BC.

It is required to prove that the par^m ABCD and EBCF are equal in area.

Proof. Since DC is \parallel to AB,

\therefore the $\angle \text{FDC} = \text{the int. opp. } \angle \text{EAB}$.

Again, since EB is \parallel to FC,

\therefore the $\angle \text{DFC} = \text{the ext. } \angle \text{AEB}$.

Thus, in the two Δ^s FDC, EAB, we have

the $\angle \text{FDC} = \text{the } \angle \text{EAB}$,

the $\angle \text{DFC} = \text{the } \angle \text{AEB}$,

and $\text{DC} = \text{AB}$; *opp. sides of a par^m .*

\therefore the two Δ^s are equal in all respects.

Th. 18.

Hence, the whole quadl. ABCF *minus* the ΔFDC

$= \text{the whole quadl. ABCF minus the } \Delta \text{EAB}$.

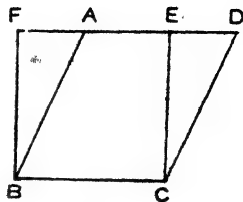
\therefore the $\text{par}^m \text{ ABCD} = \text{the } \text{par}^m \text{ EBCF}$.

Q. E. D.

9. Area of a Parallelogram.

Let $ABCD$ be a par^m on the base BC . Draw $CE \perp$ to AD ; then EC is the altitude of the par^m.

Draw $BF \parallel$ to CE , meeting DA produced in F . Then $FBCE$ is a rectangle, and it is contained by BC and CE .



Now, since FC and AC are par^m on the same base and between the same parallels.

$$\begin{aligned}\therefore \text{ area of the par}^m ABCD &= \text{area of the rect. } BCEF \\ &= BC \times EC \\ &= \text{base} \times \text{altitude.}\end{aligned}$$

COR. Parallelograms on equal bases and of equal altitudes are equal in area.

This follows easily, because the area of a par^m depends only on its base and altitude.

Ex. Find the area of a par^m whose base is 5 ft. and altitude 3 ft.

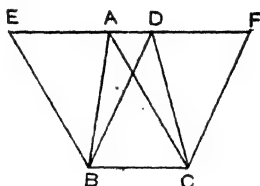
$$\text{Area reqd.} = \text{base} \times \text{altitude} = 5 \times 3 \text{ sq. ft.} = 15 \text{ sq. ft.}$$

EXERCISE 1

1. Divide a given parallelogram into four equal parallelograms.
2. A parallelogram and an equal rectangle stand on the same base and are on the same side of it. Show that the perimeter of the parallelogram is greater than that of the rectangle.
3. Find the area of a parallelogram two of whose adjacent sides are 4 cm. and 5 cm. and the included angle between these sides is 30° .

THEOREM 28.

Triangles on the same base and between the same parallels (hence, of the same altitude) are equal in area.



Let the Δ^s ABC, DBC be on the same base BC and between the same \parallel^s AD, BC.

It is required to prove that the Δ^s ABC, DBC are equal in area.

Draw BE \parallel to CA, meeting DA produced in E; and draw CF \parallel to BD, meeting AD produced in F.

Proof. EBCA and DBCF are par^{ms}; and they are on the same base BC, and between the same \parallel^s EF, BC.

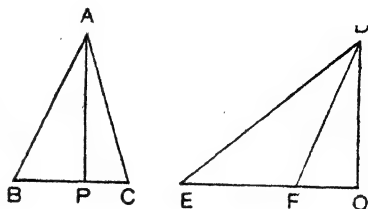
\therefore the par^m EBCA = the par^m DBCF.

But, the Δ ABC = half the par^m EBCA; } *Th. 23.*
 and the Δ DBC = half the par^m DBCF. }
 \therefore the Δ ABC = the Δ DBC.

Q. E. D.

COR. *Triangles on equal bases and of the same altitude are equal in area.*

Let ABC and DEF be two Δ 's on equal bases BC and EF , and having equal altitudes AP , DQ .



Suppose the ΔDEF taken up and so placed that EF may coincide with BC , and D may fall on the same side of BC as A . Then the two Δ 's will be on the same base and of the same altitude, and hence they are equal in area.

NOTE. Hence triangles on equal bases and *between the same parallels* are equal in area. For, triangles between the same parallels are of the same altitude.

Ex. 1. Any median of a triangle divides the triangle into two equal parts.

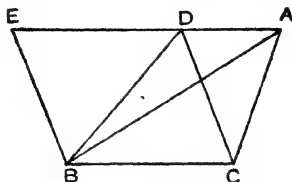
For, the triangles on the two sides of the median are on equal bases and have a common altitude.

Ex. 2. Any diagonal of a parallelogram divides the parallelogram into two equal parts.

For, the parallelogram is divided by the diagonal into two triangles which stand on equal bases and are of equal altitudes.

THEOREM 29.

If a triangle and a parallelogram be on the same base and between the same parallels, then the area of the triangle is equal to half that of the parallelogram.



Let the $\triangle ABC$ and the par^m BCDE be on the same base BC, and between the same \parallel^a EA, BC.

It is required to prove that the $\triangle ABC$ is half of the par^m BCDE.

Proof.

Join BD.

The diagonal BD bisects the par^m EC ;

\therefore the $\triangle DBC$ is half of the par^m BCDE.

But the $\triangle DBC = \triangle ABC$; because they are on the same base BC, and between the same \parallel^a BC, DA ;

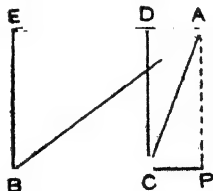
\therefore the $\triangle ABC$ is half of the par^m BCDE.

Q. E. D.

COR. *The area of a triangle is equal to half that of a rectangle contained by the base and altitude of the triangle.*

Let ABC be a \triangle of which BC is the base and AP, the altitude.

Draw AE \parallel to PB ; also draw CD and BE each \parallel to PA, meeting AE in D and E respectively.



Then the par^m EC and the $\triangle ABC$ are on the same base and between the same \parallel^a , \therefore the $\triangle ABC = \frac{1}{2}$ of the par^m EC.

But, since CD is \parallel to PA , the par^m EC is evidently a *rectangle*; and it is contained by BC and CD , i.e., by BC and PA .

\therefore the $\triangle ABC = \frac{1}{2}$ of the rect. contained by BC and PA .

10. The area of a triangle.

Let $BC = a$ units and the altitude $PA = p$ units of length.

\therefore **area of the triangle ABC**

$= \frac{1}{2}$ of the area of the rect. contained by BC , PA

$= \frac{1}{2} \cdot BC \times PA = \frac{1}{2} ap$ units of area.

The result may also be expressed as follows :—

- (i) **area of a triangle**
 $= \frac{1}{2} \cdot \text{base} \times \text{altitude}$.
- (ii) *altitude = twice the area \div base.*
- (iii) *base = twice the area \div altitude.*

Ex. 1. Find the area of a triangle whose base and altitude are 7 cms. and 4 cms. respectively.

$$\begin{aligned}\text{The reqd. area} &= \frac{1}{2} \cdot \text{base} \times \text{altitude} \\ &= \frac{1}{2} \times 7 \times 4 \text{ sq. cm.} \\ &= 14 \text{ sq. cm.}\end{aligned}$$

Ex. 2. The area of a triangle is 54 sq. ft. If the altitude is 18 ft. find the base.

The base required

$$\begin{aligned}&= \frac{2 \times \text{area}}{\text{altitude}} = \frac{2 \times 54}{18} \text{ ft.} \\ &= 6 \text{ ft.}\end{aligned}$$

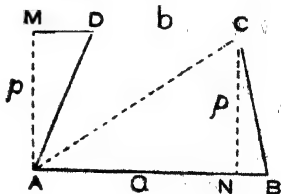
11. Area of a trapezium.

Let $ABCD$ be a trapezium with AB par^l to CD .

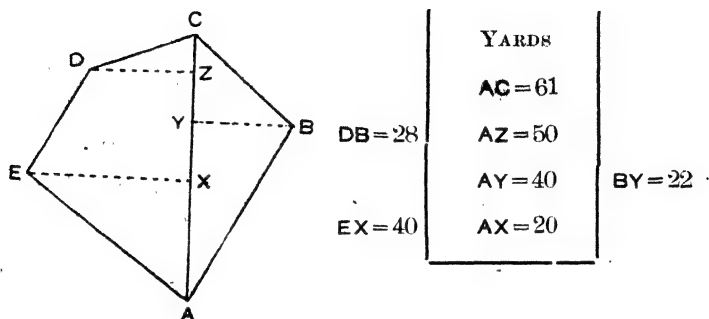
Let $AB = a$ units of length

$CD = b$ units of length.

Draw AM perpendicular on CD and CN perpendicular on AB .



Example. Find the area of the figure ABCDE from the following plan and table of measurements.



Here the fig. = $\triangle ABC + \triangle DCZ + \triangle AEX + \text{trap}^m \text{ DEXZ}$.

Now, $\triangle ABC = \frac{1}{2} \cdot AC \cdot BY = \frac{1}{2} \times 61 \times 22 = 671 \text{ sq. yds.}$

$\triangle DCZ = \frac{1}{2} \cdot CZ \cdot DZ = \frac{1}{2} \times 11 \times 28 = 154 \text{ sq. yds.}$

$\triangle AEX = \frac{1}{2} \cdot AX \cdot BX = \frac{1}{2} \times 20 \times 40 = 400 \text{ sq. yds.}$

$\text{trap}^m \text{ DEXZ} = \frac{1}{2} \cdot (DZ + EX) \cdot XZ = \frac{1}{2} \times 68 \times 30 = 1020 \text{ sq. yds.}$

\therefore Adding up, the total area reqd. = 2245 sq. yds.

NOTE. The above table is briefly recorded as follows :

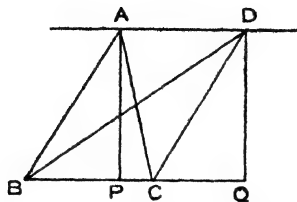
YARDS	
	To C
	61
To D 28	50
	40
To E 40	20
	From A

22 to B

The distances are measured from A along the base line to the points from which the offsets spring and are recorded in the central column. The measures of the offsets are recorded on the right or on the left of this column according as they are the right or to the left of the base line.

THEOREM 30.

Equal triangles on the same base are of the same altitude.



Let the Δ^s ABC and DBC, standing on the same base BC, be equal in area.

Let AP and DQ be the altitudes of the Δ^s ABC and DBC.

It is required to prove that $AP = DQ$.

Proof. The $\Delta ABC = \frac{1}{2}$ the rect. BC, AP
and the $\Delta DBC = \frac{1}{2}$ the rect. BC, DQ
 \therefore the rect. BC, AP = the rect. BC, DQ
 $\therefore AP = DQ$.

Q. E. D.

NOTE. It may be similarly proved that *equal triangles on equal bases are of the same altitude.*

COR. *Equal triangles on the same base (or on equal bases in the same straight line) and on the same side of it are between the same parallels.*

For in the above diagram, AP being equal and \parallel to DQ, AD is \parallel to PQ, i.e., to BC.

EXERCISE 2

If A, a, p are the area, base and altitude of a triangle respectively, find

1. A when $a = 12$ cm. ; $p = 7$ cm.
2. a when $A = 144$ sq. ft. ; $p = 24$ ft.
3. p when $a = 12$ in. ; $A = 30$ sq. in.
4. A when $a = 5p$; $p = 3$ ft.
5. a when $A = 125$ sq. cm. ; $p = 10a$.

6. Find the area of a par^m if the base=15 ft. and height=3 yds.

7. Find the area of a rhombus if its diagonals are (i) 7 cm. and 20 cm. ; (ii) 8 ft., 17 ft. ; (iii) 5 yds., 12 ft.

8. Find the area of a rectangle if the sides are (i) 10 cm. and 7 cm. ; (ii) 23 ft., 5 ft. ; (iii) 18 yds., 13 ft.

9. Find the area of a square when the side is (i) 5 in. ; (ii) 7 cm. ; (iii) 3 yds.

10. Find the area of a square if a diagonal is (i) 7 ft. ; (ii) 12 cm. ; (iii) 13 yds.

11. Prove that the four triangles into which a parallelogram is divided by its diagonals are equal in area.

12. Prove that equal triangles on opposite sides of the same base have equal altitudes. Hence prove that if two equal triangles ABC, DBC be on opposite sides of the same base BC, AD is bisected by BC or BC produced.

13. BC and AD are the parallel sides of a trapezium and E is the mid-point of CD. Prove that the $\triangle AEB$ is half of the whole figure.

14. If two triangles have two sides of the one equal to two sides of the other, and the contained angles supplementary, show that the two triangles can be so placed as to form two parts of the same triangle, and hence that they are equal in area.

15. If two sides of a triangle are given, prove that the area is greatest when the included angle is a right angle.

16. Prove that if a quadrilateral be bisected by each of its diagonals, it must be a parallelogram.

17. Prove that in any quadrilateral the straight lines joining the middle points of opposite sides bisect each other.

18. If E, F be the mid-points of the sides AC, AB of a triangle ABC, prove that the triangle AEF is one-fourth of the whole triangle ABC.

19. D, E are the mid-points of the sides AB, AC of a triangle ABC ; and P is any point in BC produced. Prove that the triangle PDE is one-fourth of the triangle ABC.

20. If two parallelograms have two adjacent sides of the one respectively equal to two adjacent sides of the other, and the included angles supplementary, prove that the parallelograms are equal in area.

21. On the base of a given triangle, draw an isosceles triangle of equal area.

22. If the middle points of the sides of a quadrilateral are joined in order, the parallelogram so formed is half the quadrilateral.

23. $ABCD$ is a par^m . If any point P be taken within it, prove that the $\Delta^s PAB, PCD$ are together equal to half the par^m .

24. AD is a median of the ΔABC . If P be any point on AD , prove that the $\Delta PAB = \text{the } \Delta PAC$.

25. Prove that the area of a rhombus is half the product of its diagonals.

26. The base of a triangle is divided into three equal parts. Prove that lines drawn from the vertex to the points of division divide the triangle into 3 equal parts.

27. Prove that the sum of the distances of any point within an equilateral triangle from its sides is the same for all positions of the point.

28. Prove that the sum of the distances of any point within a rhombus from its sides is the same for all positions of the point.

29. On the base AB construct a $\text{par}^m ABEF$ equal in area to a given $\text{par}^m ABCD$ such that the $\angle ABE$ is 45° .

30. On the base AB construct an isosceles triangle equal to a given $\text{par}^m ABCD$.

31. The sides of a rt. angled triangle are 5, 12 and 13 ft. Find its height with reference to the hypotenuse as base.

32. Find the area of a trapezium if the parallel sides and the altitude are (i) 11 ft., 9 ft.; 8 ft.;

(ii) 13 ft., 19 ft.; 2 yds.;

(iii) 9 cm., 21 cm.; 3 cm.

33. Prove that any str. line through the point of intersection of the diagonals of a parallelogram bisects it. Hence show how a parallelogram may be bisected by a str. line drawn

(i) through a given point;

(ii) par^l to a given line;

(iii) perpendicular to a given line.

34. Find the locus of the vertex of a triangle on a fixed base and having a constant area.

35. Find the locus of the point of intersection of the diagonals of a parallelogram on a given fixed base and having a constant area.

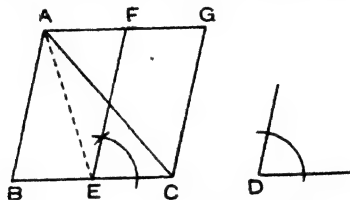
36. A square and a rhombus stand on the same base. Prove that the rhombus has a lesser area.

CHAPTER III

PROBLEMS ON AREAS

PROBLEM 17.

To construct a parallelogram equal to a given triangle and having one of its angles equal to a given angle.



Let ABC be a given Δ , and D the given \angle .

It is required to construct a par^m equal to the ΔABC , and having one of its \angle^s = the $\angle D$.

Construction. Bisect BC at E .

At E in CE , make the $\angle CEF = \text{the } \angle D$; draw $CG \parallel$ to EF ; draw $AG \parallel$ to BC , meeting EF and CG in F and G respectively.

Then the figure FC is the required par^m .

Proof. Join AE .

Since the two $\Delta^s ABE, AEC$ are on equal bases BE, EC , and of the same altitude;

\therefore the $\Delta ABE = \text{the } \Delta AEC$.

\therefore the ΔABC is double of the ΔAEC (α)

The quadl. FC is a par^m , because its opposite sides are \parallel .

Now, the $\text{par}^m FC$ and the ΔAEC are on the same base EC and between the same $\parallel^s AG, EC$;

\therefore the $\text{par}^m FC$ is double of the ΔAEC (β)

Hence, from (α) and (β), the $\text{par}^m FC = \text{the } \Delta ABC$;

and it has also the $\angle CEF = \text{the } \angle D$.

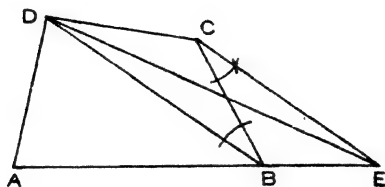
Q. E. F.

COR. To construct a rectangle equal in area to a given triangle.

If in the above problem. $\angle D = 90^\circ$, the par^m constructed will be a rectangle.

PROBLEM 18.

To construct a triangle equal in area to a given quadrilateral.



Let $ABCD$ be the given quadrilateral.

It is required to construct a triangle equal in area to $ABCD$.

Construction. Join DB .

From C draw CE par^l to DB meeting AB produced at E .

Join DE .

Then AED is the required triangle.

Proof. Because the Δ 's BDE , BDC are on the same base BD and between the same parallels DB , CE ,

\therefore the $\Delta BDE =$ the ΔBDC in area.

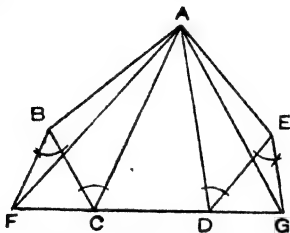
To each of these equals add the ΔABD ;

then the $\Delta AED =$ the fig. $ABCD$.

Q. E. F.

PROBLEM 19.

To construct a triangle equal in area to any given rectilineal figure.



Let $ABCDE$ be a given rectilineal figure.

It is required to construct a Δ equal in area to the rectilineal figure $ABCDE$.

Construction.

Join AC , AD .

Draw $BF \parallel$ to AC , meeting DC produced in F ; and draw $EG \parallel$ to AD , meeting CD produced in G .

Join AF , AG .

Then AFG is the required Δ .

Proof. The $\Delta^s ABC$, AFC are on the same base AC and between the same $\parallel^s AC$, BF ;

\therefore the $\Delta ABC =$ the ΔAFC(α)

Also, the $\Delta^s AED$, AGD are on the same base AD and between the same $\parallel^s AD$, EG ;

\therefore the $\Delta AED =$ the ΔAGD(β)

Hence, from (α) and (β),

the $\Delta AFC +$ the $\Delta ACD +$ the ΔAGD

$=$ the $\Delta ABC +$ the $\Delta ACD +$ the ΔAED ;

i.e., the $\Delta AFG =$ the rectil. figure $ABCDE$.

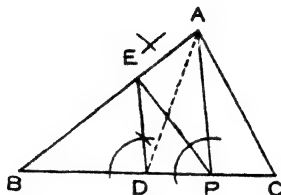
Q. E. F.

NOTE 1. The given rectil. figure is $=$ the rectil. figure $ABCG$ which has one side less than those of the given figure. From this it is clear that a *seven* sided rectil. figure can be reduced to one of *six* sides, and this latter again to one of *five* sides; and so on. Thus, by successive repetitions of the above process, any given rectil. figure may be finally reduced to a triangle of equal area.

NOTE 2. We can construct a *rectangle* equal to any given rectil. figure. For, all that we have to do is to reduce the given figure to a triangle of equal area, and then construct a rectangle equal to this triangle. (See *Prop. 17.*)

PROBLEM 20.

To bisect a triangle by a straight line drawn through a given point in one of its sides.



Let $\triangle ABC$ be the given triangle, and P the given point in the side BC .

It is required to bisect the $\triangle ABC$ by a str. line through P .

Construction. Join AP .

Through D , the middle point of BC , draw DE par^l to PA meeting AB at E .

Join EP .

Then PE bisects the $\triangle ABC$.

Proof. Join AD .

Because the $\triangle EDP$, EDA are on the same base ED and between the same parallels ED , AP .

\therefore the $\triangle EDP =$ the $\triangle EDA$ in area.

To each of these equals add the $\triangle EBD$.

Then, the $\triangle EBP =$ the $\triangle ABD$.

But $BD = DC$

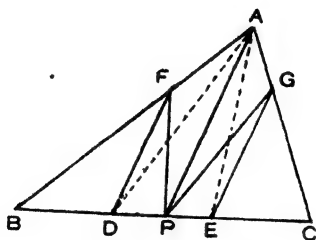
\therefore the $\triangle ABD =$ the $\triangle ACD$
 $= \frac{1}{2}$ the $\triangle ABC$.

Hence, the $\triangle EBP = \frac{1}{2}$ the $\triangle ABC$.

Q. E. F.

PROBLEM 21.

To trisect a triangle by straight lines drawn through a given point in one of its sides.



Let $\triangle ABC$ be the given triangle and P the given point in the side BC .

It is required to trisect the $\triangle ABC$ by straight lines drawn through P .

Construction. Join AP .

Trisect BC at D, E and through D, E draw lines DF, EG \parallel to PA , meeting the sides BA, CA at F and G respectively.

Join PF, PG .

Then, PF and PG trisect the $\triangle ABC$.

Proof. Join AD, AE .

Because the \triangle 's PDF, ADF stand on the same base DF and are between the same \parallel 's DF, PA ;

\therefore the $\triangle PDF =$ the $\triangle ADF$.

To each of these equals add the $\triangle BDF$.

Then, the $\triangle BPF =$ the $\triangle ABD$.

But, $\because BD = DE = EC$,

\therefore the $\triangle ABD =$ the $\triangle ADE =$ the $\triangle AEC = \frac{1}{3} \triangle ABC$. *Th. 28. Cor.*

Hence the $\triangle BPF = \frac{1}{3} \triangle ABC$.

Similarly, the $\triangle CPG = \frac{1}{3} \triangle ABC$.

\therefore the remaining figure $AFPG = \frac{1}{3} \triangle ABC$;

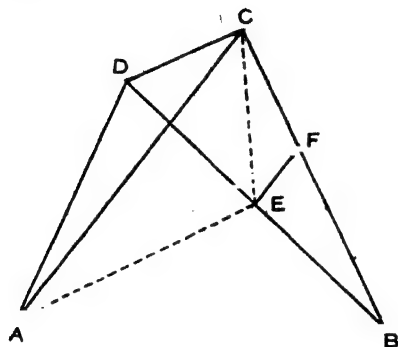
i.e., the lines PF, PG trisect the $\triangle ABC$.

Q. E. F.

N.B. Students are always required to show distinctly all traces of constructions.

PROBLEM 22.

To bisect a quadrilateral by a str. line drawn through an angular point.



Let $ABCD$ be the given quadrilateral and A the given angular point.

It is required to bisect $ABCD$ by a str. line drawn through A .

Construction.

Join AC, BD .

Let the $\triangle ABC$ be $> \triangle ADC$.

Bisect BD at E and through E draw EF par^{*l*} to AC meeting BC at F .

Join AF .

Then the line AF bisects the quadrilateral $ABCD$.

Proof.

Join AE, CE .

Because the \triangle 's ACE, ACF stand on the same base AC and are between the same par^{*ls*} AC, EF .

$$\therefore \triangle ACF = \triangle ACE.$$

To each of these equals add the $\triangle ACD$.

Then the fig. $ADCF =$ the fig. $ADCE$.

But the fig. $ADCE = \triangle ADE + \triangle CDE$

$$= \frac{1}{2} \triangle ABD + \frac{1}{2} \triangle CBD$$

$$= \frac{1}{2} \text{quadl. } ABCD.$$

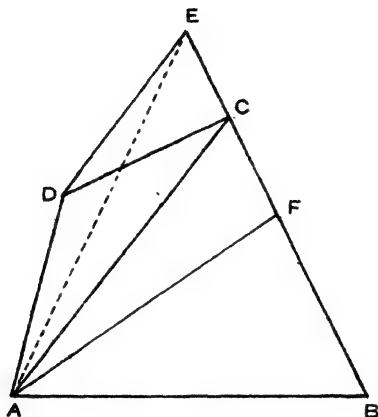
$$[\because DE = \frac{1}{2} BD.]$$

\therefore the fig. $ADCF = \frac{1}{2} \text{quadl. } ABCD.$

i.e., AF bisects the quadl. $ABCD$.

Q. E. F.

PROBLEM 22. SECOND METHOD.



Construction. Join AC.

Let the $\triangle ABC$ be $> \triangle ACD$.

Draw the $\triangle ABE =$ the quadl. $ABCD$.

Prob. 18.

Bisect BE at F .

Join AF .

Then AF bisects the quadl. $ABCD$.

Proof. Since $BF = \frac{1}{2} BE$, $\therefore \triangle ABF = \frac{1}{2} \triangle ABE = \frac{1}{2}$ quadl. $ABCD$,

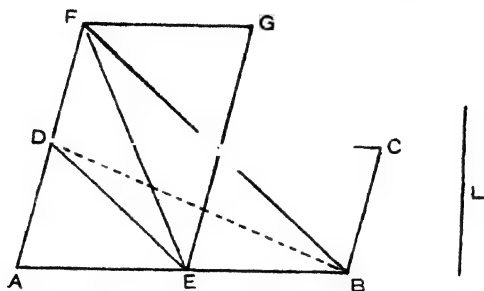
i.e., AF bisects the quadl. $ABCD$.

Q. E. F.

NOTE. The condition that $\triangle ABC$ is $> \triangle ADC$ is necessary; otherwise F would lie on BC produced, in which case the above construction fails.

PROBLEM 23.

To construct a parallelogram equal in area to a given parallelogram having one side of given length.



Let $ABCD$ be the given par^m and L the given side.

It is required to construct on a side $= L$, a par^m equal in area to $ABCD$.

Construction. From AB cut off $AE = L$. Join ED .

Through B draw $BF \text{ par}'$ to ED meeting AD produced at F .

Through F draw $FG \text{ par}'$ to AE and through E draw $EG \text{ par}'$ to AF , to meet FG at G .

Then $AEGF$ is a required par^m .

Proof. Join EF, BD .

Now, the par^m $AEGF$ has the side $AE = L$.

Also, \because the Δ 's DEF, BED stand on the same base DE and are between the same par' 's ED, BF .

\therefore the $\Delta DEF = \text{the } \Delta BED$.

To each of these equals add the ΔAED ,

\therefore the $\Delta AEF = \text{the } \Delta ABD$.

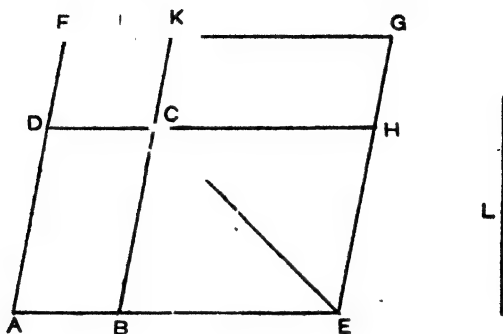
But, par^m $AEGF = 2 \Delta AEF$ and par^m $ABCD = 2 \Delta ABD$, *Th. 23.*

\therefore par^m $AEGF = \text{par}^m$ $ABCD$. Q. E. F.

N. B. Notice that any other par^m which has the same base AE and is between the same par' 's AE, FG is also a required par^m .

NOTE. If the required par^m must have also an angle equal to a given angle, draw the line AH such that $\angle EAH = \text{the given angle}$. Let AH meet FG at H . Complete the par^m $AEIH$, which is the reqd. par^m .

PROBLEM 23. SECOND METHOD.



Construction. Produce AB to E so that $BE = L$. Join EC and produce it to meet AD produced at F. Complete the par^m AEGF.

Produce BC to meet FG at K and DC to meet EG at H.

Then KCHG is the required par^m .

Proof. Because the line ECF bisects the par^m BH, DK, AG.

\therefore the $\triangle HCE = \text{the } \triangle BCE$;
 the $\triangle KCF = \text{the } \triangle DCF$;
 the $\triangle GEF = \text{the } \triangle AEF$.

Hence, $\triangle GEF - \triangle HCE - \triangle KCF = \triangle AEF - \triangle BCE - \triangle DCF$.

$\therefore \text{par}^m \text{ KCHG} = \text{par}^m \text{ ABCD}$.

Also, the side $CH = BE = L$.

Q. E. F.

15. In the above figure the par^m BH, DK are called **parallelograms about the diagonal EF** and the par^m AC, CG are called their **complements**.

N. B. Notice that *complements of the parallelograms which are about the diagonal of a par^m are equal*.

Thus, in the above figure, $\text{par}^m \text{ AC, CG}$ have been proved to be equal.

EXERCISE 8

1. On the side of a parallelogram draw a parallelogram of equal area having an angle equal to (i) 45° ; (ii) 60° ; (iii) 90° ; (iv) 120° ; (v) 135° .

2. On the base of a triangle draw a triangle of equal area having an angle at the base equal to a given angle.

3. Construct a triangle whose sides are 3.5 cm., 4 cm. and 3 cm., and transform it (i) into an equivalent right-angled triangle and (ii) into an equivalent isosceles triangle having the base 4 cm. in each case.

4. On one side of a triangle construct a parallelogram of equal area having one of its angles equal to a given angle.

5. On one side of a triangle as base construct an isosceles triangle equal to half the given triangle.

Hence show how to construct a rhombus equal in area to a triangle having one side of the triangle as a diagonal.

6. P is a given point in the side AB of a triangle ABC. Find a point D in BC produced so that the triangle PBD may be equal to the triangle ABC.

7. ABC is a triangle and P is a point in BA produced. Find a point D in BC so that the triangle PBD may be equal to the triangle ABC.

8. On a *given base* construct a triangle equal in area to a given triangle.

[Let ABC be the given Δ and X, the given base. Cut off from BC, (or BC produced if necessary), BD equal to X. Join AD. Through C draw CP \parallel to DA meeting BA or BA produced in P. Then Δ PBD is one of the required triangles.]

9. The sides of a triangle are 10 cm., 12 cm., 14 cm. Construct a triangle of equal area, one of whose sides is 9 cm.

10. Draw a triangle whose sides are 5'', 6'', 7.5''. Draw an equivalent triangle, one of whose sides is 10''. [1 inch is written as 1'']

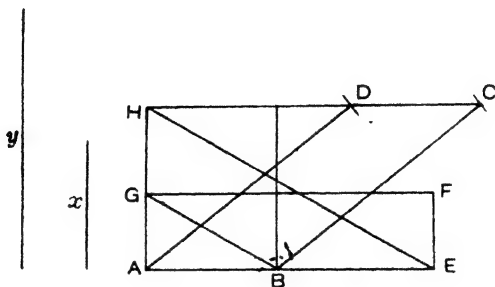
11. On a given base draw an isosceles triangle equal in area to a given triangle.

12. On a given base describe a triangle having a given angle at the base and equal in area to a given triangle.

13. On a given base AB construct a rectangle equal to a given square.

14. On a given base AB construct a rectangle equal to a given rectangle.

15. Draw a parallelogram $ABCD$ with its sides AB, AD equal to given straight lines and its area equal to that of a given rectangle $AEFG$.



Let x, y be the given str. lines and suppose $AB=x$ and $AD=y$.

Along AE or AE produced set off $AB=x$. Join BG . Draw EH parallel to BG to cut AG or AG produced in H . Draw HDC parallel to AE . With centre as A and radius $AD (=y)$ draw an arc cutting HDC at D . Complete the par^m $ABCD$.

Evidently, the par^m AC = the rect. HB = the rect. AF , by Ex. 14.

16. On a given base AB construct a par^m equal in area to a given par^m and having one of its angles equal to a given angle.

17. On a given str. line construct a par^m equivalent to a given triangle and having one of its angles equal to a given angle.

[On double the given base, construct a Δ equivalent to the given triangle (See Ex. 8). Then apply *Prob. 17.*]

18. On a given base construct a rectangle equivalent to a given triangle.

19. Draw a par^m with sides $5'', 3''$ and the contained angle 30° . On the same base construct a rhombus equal to its area, noting the case of failure, if any.

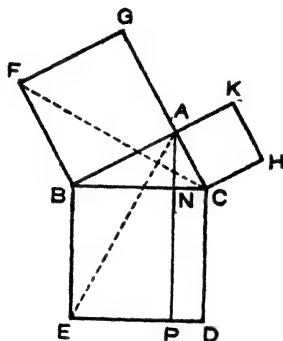
20. Describe a par^m (i) equal in area to a given quadrilateral ;
(ii) equivalent to a given rectilineal figure,
and having an angle equal to a given angle.
 21. Draw a rectangle equal to a given (i) quadrilateral ;
(ii) pentagon.
 22. Draw a rhombus equal to a given (i) triangle ; (ii) quadrilateral
and (iii) pentagon.
 23. Divide a triangle into five equal parts by lines drawn through
one of its angular points.
 24. Divide a triangle into two parts in the ratio 1 : 4 by a str.
line drawn through a point in any one of its side.
 25. Divide a triangle into two parts in the ratio 2 : 3 by a line
drawn through a vertex.
 26. Divide a triangle into two parts in the ratio 3 : 4 by a line
drawn through any point in a side.
 27. Divide a triangle into any number of equal parts by drawing
lines from a vertex.
- Hence, divide a given triangle into two parts in the ratio $m : n$ by
a line (i) drawn through a vertex ;
(ii) drawn through any point in its side.
28. From a quadrilateral cut off a third part by drawing a line
through one of its vertices.
- [In Prob. 22, 2nd Method, cut off $BF = \frac{1}{3}BE$, then, $\triangle ABF$ is
clearly a third part.]
29. Draw a line through a vertex of a quadrilateral dividing it
into two parts in the ratio 2 : 3.
 30. Bisect a quadrilateral by a str. line drawn through a given
point in one of the sides.
- [With the given pt. as vertex, draw a triangle = quadr. (See Prob.
18) and join the pt. with the mid-pt. of its base.]
31. Trisect a parallelogram by lines drawn through an angular
point.
 32. Divide a par^m into two parts in the ratio 2 : 3 by a line drawn
through an angular point.
-

CHAPTER IV

PYTHAGORAS' THEOREM

THEOREM 31.

In a right-angled triangle the square described on the hypotenuse is equal to the sum of the squares described on the sides containing the right angle.



Let ABC be a right-angled Δ , having the right angle at A .
Let $BCDE$, $ABFG$ and $ACHK$ be the squares described on BC ,
 AB and AC respectively.

It is required to prove that the sq. $BCDE$ = the sum of the squares $ABFG$ and $ACHK$.

Draw $AP \parallel$ to BE or CD , meeting ED in P .

Join, AE , CF .

Proof. Since each of the adj. \angle 's BAC , BAG is a rt. \angle ,
 $\therefore CA$ and AG are in one str. line.

Now, the $\angle CBE =$ the $\angle ABF$; [each being a rt. \angle]
 \therefore adding the $\angle ABC$ to each of them, we have the whole
 $\angle ABE =$ the whole $\angle FBC$.

Then in the two Δ ' ABE , FBC , we have

$$AB = FB,$$

$$BE = BC,$$

and the $\angle ABE = \angle FBC$;

\therefore the two \angle ' are equal in all respects.

Now, the ΔABE and the rect. BP are on the same base BE and between the same \parallel ' AP , BE ;

\therefore the rect. $BP =$ twice the ΔABE .

Also, since the ΔFBC and the sq. AF are on the same base FB and between the same \parallel ' GC , FB ,

\therefore the sq. $AF =$ twice the ΔFBC .

Hence, the rect. $BP =$ the sq. AF .

Similarly, by joining AD and BH , it may be shown that the rect. $CP =$ the sq. AH .

\therefore the rectangle BP and CP are together
 $=$ the sum of the squares AF and AH ,

i.e., the sq. $BD =$ the sum of the sqs. AF and AH .

Q. E. D.

NOTE. This theorem was discovered by Pythagoras.

16. The above result may be briefly written as follows:

$$BC^2 = CA^2 + AB^2.$$

i.e., if a and b denote the lengths of the sides containing the right angle and $c =$ the length of the hypotenuse

$$c^2 = a^2 + b^2,$$

$$\text{Hence, } a^2 = c^2 - b^2,$$

$$\text{and } b^2 = c^2 - a^2.$$

Therefore, when any two sides of a right-angled triangle are known the third side can be found out.

Ex. 1. If the sides of a right angled triangle containing the rt. angle are 3 cm. and 4 cm., find its hypotenuse.

Let the hypotenuse = c cm.

$$\therefore c^2 = 3^2 + 4^2 = 9 + 16 = 25$$

$$\text{i.e., } c = \sqrt{25} = 5.$$

Hence, the hyp. = 5 cm.

Ex. 2. A ladder 13 ft. long is placed with one of its ends on a horizontal plane so as to reach the top of a vertical wall 12 ft. high. How far is the foot of the ladder from wall ?

Let the distance reqd. = x ft.

Then, clearly the ladder forms the hypotenuse of a right-angled triangle whose sides containing the rt. \angle are 12 ft. and x ft.

$$\therefore 13^2 = 12^2 + x^2$$

$$\text{or, } 169 = 144 + x^2$$

$$\text{or, } x^2 = 169 - 144 = 25 ;$$

$$\therefore x = \sqrt{25} = 5.$$

17. In the course of the proof of Th. 31, the following important results have been established :

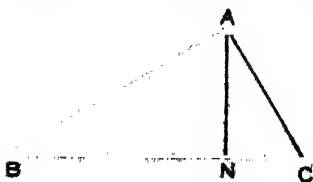
If BC and AP intersect at N , then it has been proved that the sq. AF = rect. BP

i.e., the sq. on AB = the rect. contained by BN , BC ;
[$\because BE = BC$]

Also, the sq. AH = the rect. CP ,

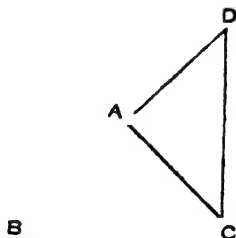
i.e., sq. on AC = the rect. contained by CN , BC . [$\because CD = BC$]

These results may also be expressed thus : If ABC be a triangle right-angled at A and AN is drawn perpendicular on the hypotenuse BC , then AB^2 = $BN \cdot BC$ and AC^2 = $CN \cdot BC$.



THEOREM 32.

If the square described on one side of a triangle be equal to the sum of the squares described on the other two sides, then the angle contained by those two sides is a right angle.



Let ABC be a triangle such that $BC^2 = CA^2 + AB^2$.

It is required to prove that the $\angle BAC$ is a right angle.

Draw $AD \perp$ to AC , and make $AD = AB$.

Join DC .

Proof. Since the $\angle CAD$ is a rt. \angle ,

$$\begin{aligned} \therefore DC^2 &= CA^2 + AD^2 \\ &= CA^2 + AB^2. \end{aligned}$$

Hence the sq. on DC = the sq. on BC ;

$$\therefore DC = BC.$$

Now, in the two Δ 's ABC , ADC , we have

$$AB = AD,$$

$$AC \text{ common,}$$

$$\text{and } BC = DC,$$

\therefore the two Δ 's are congruent.

Cons.

Hence the $\angle BAC =$ the $\angle DAC =$ a rt. \angle .

Q. E. D.

Ex. 1. We have $3^2 + 4^2 = 5^2$. Hence if the sides of a triangle are 3, 4 and 5 units of length respectively the triangle is right-angled.

Ex. 2. Again, since $5^2 + 12^2 = 13^2$, \therefore the triangle whose sides are 5, 12 and 13 units of length respectively, is right-angled.

Ex. 3. We have $(m^2 - n^2)^2 + (2mn)^2 = (m^2 + n^2)^2$.

\therefore if the sides of a triangle are $m^2 - n^2$, $2mn$ and $m^2 + n^2$ units of length respectively, the triangle is right-angled.

Hence for each pair of numbers that may be substituted for m and n , we shall get a set of three numbers representing three str. lines which can form a right-angled triangle. Thus if $m=2$ and $n=1$, we have the sides equal to 3, 4 and 5 units respectively; if $m=4$ and $n=3$, we have the sides equal to 7, 24 and 25 units respectively; if $m=4$ and $n=1$, we have the sides equal to 15, 8 and 17 units respectively; and so on.

EXERCISE 4

1. Find the hypotenuse of a right-angled triangle if the sides containing the rt. \angle are

- (i) 3, 4; (ii) 5, 12; (iii) 8, 15;
(iv) 24, 10; (v) 7, 24; (vi) 11, 17.

2. If the hypotenuse and a side of a rt. angled triangle are (i) 25, 7; (ii) 17, 8; (iii) 26, 10; (iv) 25, 24; (v) 13, 10; find the third side in each case.

3. Prove that a triangle is right angled if its sides are

- (i) 6, 8, 10; (ii) 10, 24, 26; (iii) 14, 48, 50;
(v) 16, 30, 34; (v) 15, 20, 25; (vi) 28, 45, 53.

4. If a man starting from a place A travels 12 miles due North and then 5 miles due East, how far is he from A at the end of his journey?

5. A ladder 37 feet long rests with one end on the ground and the other on the top of a wall. Calculate the height of the wall if the distance of the foot of the ladder from the wall be 12 feet.

6. Two posts 25 ft. and 32 ft. high are 24 ft. apart. Find the distance between their tops.

7. A rope 68 ft. long is tied to the top of a vertical post. When stretched tight, it touches the ground at a distance of 32 ft. from the foot of the post. Find the height of the post.

8. A rod 13 feet long is held vertically in a tank of water, one end of the rod reaching the bottom of the tank, and the other being above the surface of the water. Another rod of equal length is held in a slant position, one end being in contact with the lower end of the first rod and the other being on the surface of the water. If the upper end of the second rod be 5 feet distant from the point where the first cuts the surface of water, calculate the length of that portion of the first rod which is above the water.

9. Find the diagonal of a square if its side is (i) 4 ft. ; (ii) 32 cm. ; (iii) 15 yds. ; (iv) a ft.

10. Find the diagonal of a rectangle whose adjacent sides are (i) 5 ft., 12 ft. ; (ii) 8 cm., 15 cm. ; (iii) a cm., b cm.

11. If the diagonal of a rectangle is 26 ft. and its length 24 ft., calculate its area.

12. Find the side of a rhombus if its diagonals are 21 cm., 72 cm.

13. If the base and altitude of an isosceles triangle are 4.8 cm. and 4.5 cm., find the sides.

14. If the base and one of the equal sides of an isos. Δ are 4.2 ft. and 7.5 ft. respectively, find its altitude and area.

15. Find the altitude of an equilateral triangle if its side is 15 ft. Hence find its area.

16. AD is the altitude of an equilateral triangle ABC. If AD and BD respectively contain p and m units of length, prove that $p^2 = 3m^2$.

17. A square is half the square on its diagonal.

Hence construct a square (i) double a given square, and (ii) half a given square.

18. Prove that the sum of the squares on the sides of a rhombus is equal to the sum of the squares on its diagonals.

19. ABCD is a quadrilateral in which the diagonals are at right angles. Prove that

$$AB^2 + CD^2 = BC^2 + AD^2.$$

20. ABC is a triangle right-angled at A, and D is a point on AC. Prove that

$$BC^2 + AD^2 = BD^2 + AC^2.$$

21. Construct a rectangle such that the square on its diagonal is equal to five times a given square.

22. ABC is a triangle right-angled at A. AN is drawn perp. on BC, meeting BC at N. Prove that

- (i) $AB^2 - AC^2 = BN^2 - CN^2$;
- (ii) $AB^2 = BN \cdot BC$;
- (iii) $AC^2 = CN \cdot BC$.

23. Construct a square equal in area to the sum of two given squares.

[Draw a rt. angled Δ with the sides of the given square as the sides containing the rt. \angle . The sq. on the hypotenuse is the sq. reqd.]

24. Construct a square equal in area to the difference of two given squares.

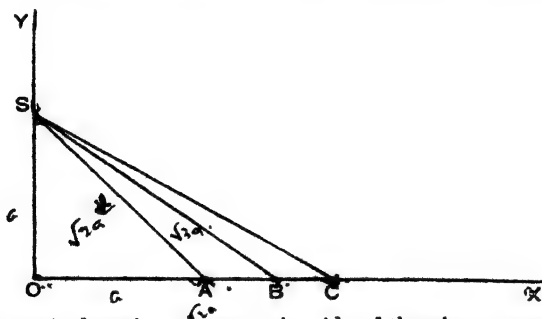
25. Divide a given straight line into two parts so that the sum of the squares on the parts may be equal to a given square.

26. Divide a given str. line into two parts such that the difference of the squares on the parts may be equal to a given square.

SOME APPLICATIONS OF THE THEOREM OF PYTHAGORAS

1. To draw squares whose areas shall be respectively twice, three times, four times etc. that of a given square.

Hence to deduce graphically the values of $\sqrt{2}$, $\sqrt{3}$, $\sqrt{4}$, $\sqrt{5}$, etc.



Let unit length represent the side of the given square.

Take two lines OX, OY at right angles and cut off OA, OS each = 1 unit. Join AS.

$$\text{Then, } AS^2 = OA^2 + OS^2 = 1 + 1 = 2,$$

i.e., sq. on AS is twice the given squares.

$$\text{Also, } AS = \sqrt{2}.$$

Next, cut off from OX, OB = SA and join SB.

$$\text{Then, } SB^2 = OB^2 + OS^2 = AS^2 + OS^2 = 2 + 1 = 3,$$

i.e., the sq. on SB is three times the given square.

$$\text{Also, } SB = \sqrt{3}.$$

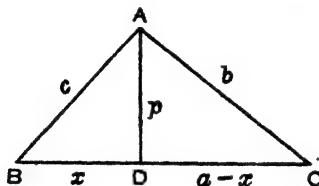
Again, cut off from OX, OC = SB and join SC.

Then $SC^2 = OC^2 + OS^2 = SB^2 + OS^2 = 3 + 1 = 4$,
i.e., sq. on SC is four times the given square.

Also. $SC = \sqrt{4}$.

SA, SB, SC may be obtained by measurement and consequently $\sqrt{2}, \sqrt{3}$, etc. may be found. Proceeding in this manner, the values of $\sqrt{5}, \sqrt{6}, \dots$ may also be determined.

2. If the sides BC, CA, AB of a triangle be respectively equal to a, b and c units of length, and if $2s = a + b + c$, prove that the area of the triangle $= \sqrt{s(s-a)(s-b)(s-c)}$ units of area.



Let the altitude AD of the triangle contain p units of length.

\therefore The area of the $\Delta = \frac{ap}{2}$ units of area.

Now, let BD be x units of length; then $CD = a - x$ units of length.

From the ΔADB , we have $p^2 = c^2 - x^2$;

and from the ΔADC , $p^2 = b^2 - (a - x)^2$.

$$\therefore c^2 - x^2 = b^2 - (a - x)^2,$$

$$\text{whence } x = \frac{a^2 - b^2 + c^2}{2a}.$$

Hence, $p^2 = c^2 - x^2$.

$$= c^2 - \left(\frac{a^2 - b^2 + c^2}{2a} \right)^2$$

$$= \left\{ c + \frac{a^2 - b^2 + c^2}{2a} \right\} \left\{ c - \frac{a^2 - b^2 + c^2}{2a} \right\}$$

$$= \frac{(c+a)^2 - b^2}{2a} \cdot \frac{b^2 - (c-a)^2}{2a}$$

$$= \frac{(c+a+b)(c+a-b)(b+c-a)(b-c+a)}{4a^2}.$$

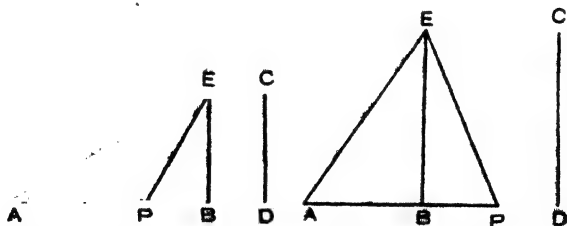
$$\begin{aligned} \text{Now, since } 2s &= a+b+c, \\ \therefore \quad &\left. \begin{aligned} c+a-b &= (a+b+c) - 2b = 2(s-b), \\ b+c-a &= (a+b+c) - 2a = 2(s-a), \\ a+b-c &= (a+b+c) - 2c = 2(s-c), \end{aligned} \right\} \\ \therefore \quad p^2 &= \frac{4s(s-a)(s-b)(s-c)}{a^2}, \end{aligned}$$

$$\therefore p = \frac{2\sqrt{s(s-a)(s-b)(s-c)}}{a}.$$

Hence, the area of the $\triangle ABC$.

$$= \frac{ap}{2} = \sqrt{s(s-a)(s-b)(s-c)} \text{ units of area.}$$

3. *AB is a given straight line. Find a point P in AB, or AB produced, such that the difference of the squares on AP, BP may be equal to the square on a given line CD.*



Construction. Draw $BE \perp$ to AB , making $BE = CD$.

Join AE ; and make the $\angle AEP = \angle EAB$.

Let EP meet AB , or AB produced, in P .

The point P thus found is the required point.

Proof. Since the $\angle AEP = \angle EAB$,

$$\therefore AP = EP.$$

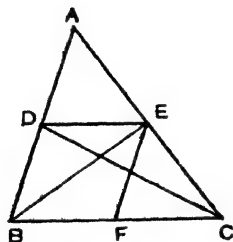
$$\begin{aligned} \text{Hence, } AP^2 - BP^2 &= EP^2 - BP^2 \\ &= EB^2 \quad [\because \text{the } \angle EBP \text{ is a right } \angle] \\ &= CD^2. \end{aligned}$$

Q. E. F.

CHAPTER V

MISCELLANEOUS PROPOSITIONS (II)

1. *The straight line joining the middle points of any two sides of a triangle is parallel to the third side and equal to half of it.*



Let D, E be the mid-pts. of the sides AB and AC of a $\triangle ABC$.

It is required to prove that DE is \parallel to BC and is $= \frac{1}{2}BC$.

Proof. (1) Join BE, CD .

The $\triangle BDC, ADC$ are on equal bases and of the same altitude ;

\therefore the $\triangle BDC =$ the $\triangle ADC$;

and \therefore the $\triangle BDC = \frac{1}{2}$ the $\triangle ABC$

Similarly, the $\triangle BEC = \frac{1}{2}$ the $\triangle ABC$.

Hence the $\triangle BDC =$ the $\triangle BEC$.

$\therefore DE$ is \parallel to BC .

(2) Let F be the mid-pt. of BC ; join EF .

Then since E and F are the mid-pts. of AC and BC ,

$\therefore EF$ is \parallel to AB .

Hence DF is a par^m,

$\therefore DE = BF = \frac{1}{2}BC$.

Q. E. D.

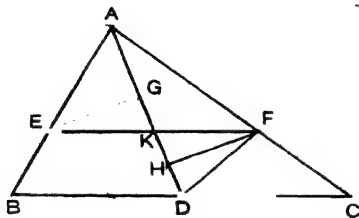
COR. *Conversely, if through the middle point of a side of a triangle a straight line be drawn parallel to another, it will pass through the middle point of the third side.*

In the above diagram, if $DE \parallel BC$, then the $\triangle BEC = \triangle BDC$.

\therefore the $\triangle BEC = \frac{1}{2}$ the $\triangle ABC$.

Hence the pt. E is the mid-pt., of AC (for, if any other pt. E' were the mid-pt.) the $\triangle BE'C$ would be half of the $\triangle ABC$, which is impossible.

2. *If D is the mid-pt. of the side BC of a triangle ABC, prove that AD bisects any straight line EF, drawn parallel to BC and meeting the sides AB, AC at E and F respectively.*



Proof.

Join DE, DF.

The $\triangle BED, DFC$ are on equal bases BD, DC and between the same \parallel EF, BC;

\therefore the $\triangle BED = \triangle DFC$.

Also the $\triangle ABD = \triangle ADC$.

\therefore the $\triangle AED = \triangle AFD$.

Ax 3.

Let EG and FH be the altitudes of the $\triangle AED, AFD$; and let K be the pt. where EF cuts AD.

The $\triangle AED = \frac{1}{2}$ the rect. AD.EG

and the $\triangle AFD = \frac{1}{2}$ the rect. AD.FH.

$\therefore EG = FH$.

Now, in the $\triangle EKG, FKH$,

$EG = FH$,

the $\angle EKG =$ the vertically opp. $\angle FKH$,

the $\angle EGK =$ the $\angle FHK$, each being a rt. angle;

\therefore the two \triangle 's are congruent.

Hence, $EK = FK$.

Q. E. D.

MISCELLANEOUS EXERCISES

1. A rectangle and a par^m of equal area stand on the same base. Prove that the perimeter of the rectangle is less than that of the parallelogram.
2. The four triangles into which the diagonals divide a parallelogram are equal in area.
3. If two triangles of equal area stand on opposite sides of a common base, the line joining the vertices is bisected by the base.
4. The sum of the perpendiculars from any point within any equilateral figure to its sides is the same wherever the point is taken.
5. Of all triangles of equal area and on the same base that which is isosceles has the least perimeter.
6. ABCD is a par^m and P is any point within the angle which AD makes with BA produced. Prove that the $\Delta PAC = \Delta PAB + \Delta PAD$.
[Draw DE, BF par^t to AP to meet AC at E, F. Then ΔAEP , BFC being congruent, $AE = CF$. $\therefore \Delta PCF = \Delta AEP = \Delta PAD$. Also $\Delta PAF = \Delta PAB$. Hence.]
7. If in Ex. 6, P is within the $\angle BAD$, prove that $\Delta PAC = \Delta PAB - \Delta PAD$.
8. Prove that a trapezium is bisected by the line joining the middle points of the parallel sides.
9. Two sides of a triangle being given prove that the area included is greatest when the angle between the sides is a rt. \angle .
10. ΔABC is drawn on a given line BC as base such that its area is equal to a given area. Prove that the locus of A is a pair of lines each par^t to BC.
11. ABCD is a par^m drawn on a given line AC as diagonal such that its area is equal to a given area. Find the locus of B and D.
12. ABCP is a quadrilateral such that its area is always equal to ABCD. Find the locus of P.
13. Construct a triangle, given its area and two sides.
Is the construction always possible?
14. Construct a triangle having given area, a side and an angle adjacent to the side.
15. Construct a rectangle equal in area to a given triangle.
16. On a given side construct a rectangle equal in area to a given rectangle.

17. Draw a parallelogram equal in area to a given parallelogram, having given also (i) a side and an angle ; (ii) two sides.

18. Show that a par^m is bisected by any line through the pt. of intersection of its diagonals.

Hence bisect a par^m by a line perpendicular to a given line.

19. Construct a triangle equal in area to a given triangle and having its altitude of given length.

20. Trisect a given triangle by lines drawn through any vertex.

21. Find the point O within the triangle ABC such that $\triangle AOB = \triangle BOC = \triangle COA$.

22. ABCD is a quadrilateral where $\triangle ABC$ is twice the $\triangle ADC$.

If AC and BD cut at O, prove that $DO = \frac{1}{3}BD$.

23. Divide a square into three equal parts by straight lines drawn through a vertex.

24. Divide a quadrilateral into three equal parts by str. lines drawn through a vertex.

25. Divide a pentagon into three equal parts by lines drawn through a vertex.

26. Divide a pentagon into five equal parts by lines drawn through a vertex.

27. Bisect a trapezium (i) by a line drawn through one of its vertices ; (ii) by a line drawn through a point in one of the sides.

28. E, F are mid-points of the sides BC, CD of the sq. ABCD. Show that $\triangle AEF = \frac{1}{4}$ trap^m ABCF.

29. Construct a parallelogram which is equal in area to a given triangle and which has a given side and a given angle.

30. If the sides containing the right angle of a right-angled triangle are a, b , find

- (i) the hypotenuse ;
- (ii) the area ;
- (iii) the perpendicular from the rt. angle to the hypotenuse ;

and (iv) the median from the right angle to the hypotenuse.

31. If a, b are the measures of the sides of a right-angled triangle containing the rt. angle and p that of the perpendicular from the right angle to the hypotenuse, prove that

$$\frac{1}{p^2} = \frac{1}{a^2} + \frac{1}{b^2}.$$

32. If P is any point within the rect. ABCD, $PA^2 + PC^2 = PB^2 + PD^2$.

33. A and B are two fixed points and CD any str. line perpendicular to AB meeting AB or AB produced in D. Prove that if P is any point in CD,

$$PA^2 - PB^2 = DA^2 - DB^2.$$

34. $\triangle ABC$ is a triangle acute angled at C . Prove that

$$AB^2 < AC^2 + BC^2.$$

Hence, prove that if in a triangle $\triangle ABC$,

$$AB^2 > AC^2 + BC^2,$$

then the $\angle ACB$ is obtuse.

35. The $\triangle ABC$ is rt. angled at C . If the $\angle A = 60^\circ$, prove that
(i) $AB = 2AC$; (ii) $3AB^2 = 4BC^2$; and (iii) $BC^2 = 3AC^2$.

36. If an equilateral triangle and a square stand on the same base, prove that the area of the $\triangle = \frac{\sqrt{3}}{4}$ the area of the square.

Hence deduce that the equilateral triangle described on the hypotenuse of a right-angled triangle is equal to the sum of the equilateral triangles drawn on the sides containing the right angle.

37. Divide a str. line into two parts such that the square on one part may be double the square on the other.

[If AB be the given line, construct the $\triangle ABC$ such that $\angle B = 45^\circ$ and, $\angle A = \frac{1}{2}$ of 45° . Draw CD making $\angle ACD = \angle A$ and meeting AB at D . Prove that $AD = CD = CB$ and $BD^2 = CD^2 + CB^2 = 2AD^2$.]

38. Divide a str. line into two parts such that the square on one part may be three times the square on the other.

[If AB be the given line, construct the $\triangle ABC$ such that $\angle B = 60^\circ$ and $\angle A = 45^\circ$. Draw the line CD making $\angle ACD = \angle A$, to meet AB at D . The $\triangle BDC$ is rt. angled at D and its $\angle B = 60^\circ$. Clearly, $AD = CD$ and $AD^2 = CD^2 = 3BD^2$. See Ex. 34. (iii)]

39. Calculate the area of a triangle whose sides are (i) 10, 17, 21 cms; (ii) 5, 12, 13 ft (iii) 10, 11, 18 cms; (iv) 18, 24, 33 ft., respectively.

40. Calculate the area of a triangle whose sides are 7, 24, 25 ft. respectively.

Hence find the length of the perpendicular on the greatest side from the opposite angular point.

41. The parallel sides of a trapezium are 20 and 34 ft. and the other two sides are 13 and 15 ft. Find the area of the trapezium.

[First, find the distance between the par sides.]

42. Describe a rhombus equal to a given rectilineal figure.

43. Construct a rectangle equal to the sum or difference of two given triangles.

BOOK III

THE CIRCLE

CHAPTER I

FUNDAMENTAL IDEAS AND DEFINITIONS

1. A **circle** is a plane figure bounded by one line which is such that all straight lines drawn to it from a certain fixed point within the figure are equal to one another.

The *fixed point* is called its **centre** and the *bounding line* is called its **circumference**.

The term circle denotes the *space* bounded by the circumference; but the word is also often used to mean the *circumference* itself, if no confusion is likely to arise.

NOTE. Evidently, the circle is a **closed** figure.

2. Any straight line drawn from the centre of a circle to the circumference is called a **radius** of the circle.

Hence, (i) *all radii of the same circle are equal to one another*, and

(ii) *if any straight line be drawn from the centre of a circle equal to the radius, the extremity of the line will be on the circumference*.

3. Any straight line drawn through the centre of a circle and terminated both ways by the circumference is called a **diameter** of the circle.

Hence, a *diameter* = $2 \times$ *radius*.

4. A **semi-circle** is the figure bounded by a diameter of a circle and the part of the circumference which it cuts off.

Hence, every diameter divides a circle into two semi-circles.

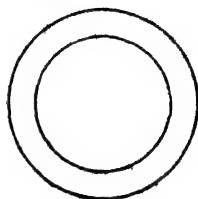
5. Two or more circles are said to be **concentric** when they have the same centre.

6. From the above definitions, the following properties of circles are evident :—

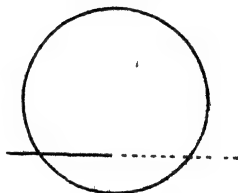
(i) *If two circles have equal radii they are congruent.*

(ii) A point is without or within a circle according as its distance from the centre is greater or less than the radius.

(iii) Concentric circles, whose radii are unequal, cannot cut one another.

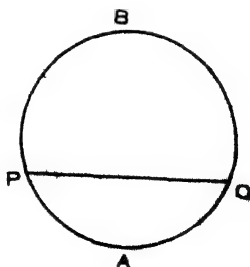


(iv) A circle is a *closed* figure ; hence, if a straight line crosses the circumference, it will also cross it at a second point when produced



7. Any part of the circumference of a circle is called an **arc** of the circle.

Thus, PAQ, PBQ are arc-



8. The finite straight line joining any two points on the circumference of a circle is called a **chord** of the circle.

Thus, in the fig. of § 7, PQ is a chord.

NOTE 1. A diameter is also a chord.

NOTE 2. Every chord which is not a diameter, divides the circumference into *unequal* arcs, of which the greater one is called the **major arc** and the lesser, the **minor arc**.

These two arcs are called **conjugate** to each other.

Thus, in the figure of § 7, **PAQ** is the minor arc and **PBQ** is the major arc.

Also the arcs **PAQ**, **PBQ** are conjugate to each other.

SYMMETRY

9. A figure is said to be **symmetrical about a line** if the part of the figure on one side of the line coincides completely with the part on the other side when the figure is folded about that line.

The line is called an **axis of symmetry** of the figure.

Ex. 1. It is easy to see that an isosceles triangle is symmetrical about the bisector of its vertical angle.

Ex. 2. A square is symmetrical about a diagonal or about each of the lines joining the middle points of its opposite sides.

Ex. 3. A rhombus is symmetrical about each of its diagonals.

If a figure is symmetrical about a line, then either **half** of the figure is called an **image** or **reflection** of the other **half**.

10. A figure is said to be **symmetrical about a point O** if corresponding to every point **P** of the figure, there is another point **P'** such that the str. line **PP'** is bisected at **O**.

Ex. 1. A circle is symmetrical about the centre.

Ex. 2. A parallelogram is symmetrical about the point of intersection of its diagonals.

11. Two points **P**, **Q** are said to be **symmetrically opposite** with respect to a line **AB**, if the str. line **PQ** is bisected at right angles by **AB**.

[Either of the points **P**, **Q** is called the **image** of the other in the axis of symmetry, **AB**.]

NOTE. Any pt. in the axis of symmetry is equidistant from the two symmetrically opposite points.

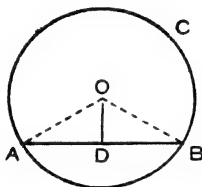
CHAPTER II

CHORDS

THEOREM 33.

If a straight line drawn from the centre of a circle bisects a chord which is not a diameter it is at right angles to the chord.

Conversely, the perpendicular to a chord from the centre bisects the chord.



Let O be the centre of the $\odot ABC$ and AB , a chord not passing through the centre.

Let OD bisect AB .

It is required to prove that OD is perp. to AB .

Join OA , OB .

Proof.

In the $\Delta^s OAD$, ODB ,

$$\therefore \begin{cases} OA = OB, & (\text{radii of the } \odot) \\ AD = DB, \\ \text{and } OD \text{ is common,} \end{cases} \quad \text{Hyp.}$$

\therefore the two Δ^s are congruent.

Hence, the $\angle ODA = \angle ODB$;
and these being adjacent angles, each = a rt. \angle .

$\therefore OD$ is perp. to AB .

Q. E. D.

(ii) *Conversely*, let OD be \perp to AB .

It is required to prove that $AD = DB$.

Join OA, OB .

Proof. In the right-angled Δ^s ODA, ODB ,

$$\therefore \begin{cases} \text{the hypotenuse } OA = \text{the hypotenuse } OB; \\ \text{and } OD \text{ is common} \end{cases} \quad (\text{being radii of the } \odot)$$

\therefore the two Δ^s are congruent.

Hence $AD = DB$.

Q. E. D.

COR. 1. *A straight line cannot cut a circle in more than two points.*

For, if the chord AB were to meet the circle again at some other point E , then D would be the middle point of AB as well as of AE , which is impossible.

COR. 2. *The perpendicular bisector of a chord of a circle passes through its centre.*

Let PQ be a chord of a circle of which C is the centre, and let AB be the perp. bisector of PQ .

It is required to prove that AB passes through C .

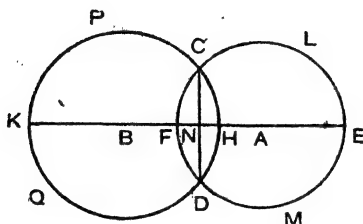
Proof. Since AB is the perp. bisector of PQ , it is the locus of points equidistant from P and Q . (i.e. every pt., equidistant from P and Q , lies on AB). Also the centre, C , of the circle is equidistant from P and Q . $\therefore C$ must lie on AB .

i.e. AB passes through C .

COR. 3. *The middle points of any system of parallel chords of a circle lie on a straight line passing through the centre.*

For, if a str. line be drawn from the centre \perp to one of the chords, it will be \perp to all the chords, and will \therefore intersect all of them at their middle points.

Two important Theorems : (1) *If two circles cut each other the line joining their centres bisects the common chord at right angles.*



Let the two \odot ' whose centres are A and B cut each other at the points C and D, so that CD is their common chord.

It is required to prove that AB bisects CD at right angles.

Proof. Let N be the middle point of CD.

Join AN, BN.

Because in the \odot PQH, B is the centre and N is the mid-point of the chord CD,

\therefore BN is \perp to CD.

Th. 33.

Similarly, AN is \perp to CD.

\therefore the \angle BNC + the \angle ANC = 2 rt. \angle 's.

\therefore AN and BN are in one and the same str. line.

Hence, the str. line AB bisects CD and is also perp. to it.

Q. E. D.

Otherwise : The proposition may also be proved as follows : Through N, the mid-pt. of CD, draw the str. line KNE perpendicular to CD. Then, since the pt. A is equidistant from C and D, it must lie on the str. line KE (Th. 25, Bk. I.); and, for a similar reason, the pt. B must lie on KE. Hence the str. line AB coincides with the str. line KE, and \therefore it bisects CD at right angles.

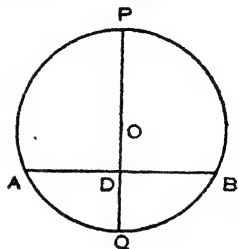
Q. E. D.

(2) *A circle is symmetrical about one of its diameters.*

Let PQ be any diameter of the circle APB , of which O is the centre.

It is required to prove that the circle is symmetrical about PQ .

Take any point A on the circumference and draw AD perpendicular to PQ and produce it to meet the circle again at B .



Proof. Because OD is perpendicular to the chord AB .

$\therefore AD = DB$.

Hence, the diameter PQ bisects AB at right angles. Then, if the figure is folded about PQ , DA falls along DB , since $\angle ODA = \angle ODB$ and $\therefore A$ on B (since $AD = DB$); \therefore any point A on one semi-circumference will fall on some point B on the other semi-circumference;

\therefore the two semi-circumferences coincide.

Hence, the circle is symmetrical about PQ .

Q. E. D.

NOTE. In the above figure, evidently A and B are symmetrically opposite points with regard to PQ . Hence,

if a circle passes through any point A , it must also pass through the symmetrically opposite point with regard to any diameter.

EXERCISE 1

1. AB is a chord of a circle of which the centre is O . Prove that the straight line drawn from O to the middle point of AB passes through the middle point of any other chord that is parallel to AB .

2. Prove that in a circle the centre and the middle points of any number of chords that are parallel to one another lie in one straight line.

3. If two chords of a circle bisect each other, prove that their point of intersection must be the centre of the circle.

4. If two circles, whose centres are A and B , have one point P in common, prove that they have also another point Q in common, where Q is such that PQ is bisected at right angles by AB .

5. If any number of circles pass through two given points, prove that their centres all lie in one straight line.

6. If the chords AB, AC of a circle are equally inclined to the radius to A, prove that $AB=AC$.

7. If a circle pass through the vertices of a right-angled triangle, show that its centre is the middle point of the hypotenuse.

8. If two circles have two points in common, prove that any two parallel straight lines drawn through the common points and terminated by the circumferences are equal.

9. From a point, O, two equal straight lines OA, OB are drawn to the circumference of a circle whose centre is C. Prove that the $\angle AOC = \angle BOC$.

10. The radii of two intersecting circles are r and r' , and d is the distance between their centres. Show that $r-r' < d < r+r'$.

11. Show how to draw the chord of a circle which is bisected at a given point within the circle.

12. A chord PQ of a circle cuts a concentric circle in P' , Q' ; prove that $PP' = QQ'$.

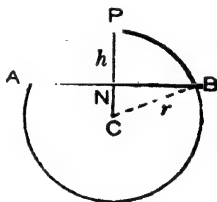
13. *Diameter of a circle is the greatest chord.*

14. In the adjoining figure, APB represents a bridge, of the form of an arc of a circle whose radius is r ; if the height of the arch be h , find the span AB.

[Evidently $CP=CB=r$;
 $\therefore CN=r-h$; hence, since
 the $\triangle CNB$ is rt. \angle at N,

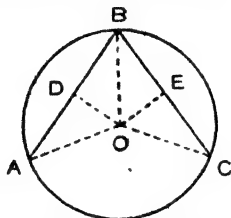
$$\begin{aligned} BN^2 &= CB^2 - CN^2 \\ &= r^2 - (r-h)^2 \\ &= 2rh - h^2. \end{aligned}$$

$$\therefore AB = 2BN = 2\sqrt{2rh - h^2}.$$



THEOREM 34.

There is one circle, and one only, which passes through three given points, not in a straight line.



Let A, B, C be three given pts. which do not lie in one str. line.

It is required to prove that one circle, and only one, passes through A, B and C .

Join AB, BC .

Let DO and EO be the perp. bisectors of AB and BC respectively.

Then, $\because AB$ and BC are not in one and the same str. line, DO and EO are not parallel;

$\therefore DO$ and EO must meet in some point O .

Join OA, OB, OC .

Proof. Because O is on the perp. bisector of AB , we have,
 $OA = OB$.

Similarly, because O is on the perp. bisector of BC , $OB = OC$.
 $\therefore OA = OB = OC$.

Hence, the circle described with centre O and radius OA passes through A, B and C .

Again, because the two str. lines, DO and EO , cannot intersect at any other point, there cannot be any other point equidistant from A, B and C .

\therefore there is no other circle which passes through A, B and C .
Q. E. D.

COR. 1. *Circles passing through three given points which are not in the same str. line coincide.*

For, they have the same centre and the radius.

COR. 2. *One circle cannot cut another in more than two points.*

For, if one \odot has three points in common with another, then there will be two \odot 's passing through the same three points, which is impossible.

COR. 3. *If from a point O within a circle three equal straight lines OP, OQ, OR can be drawn to the circumference, then O must be the centre of the circle.*

Since the pt. O is equidistant from the pts. P, Q, R, it must be the pt. of intersection of the \perp bisectors of PQ and QR; and there is *no other* pt. besides this which can be equidistant from those three pts. Hence the centre of the given \odot , which certainly is equidistant from the pts. P, Q, R, on the circumference, must coincide with O.

12. Definition : A circle is said to be **described** (or **circumscribed**) **about a triangle** when it passes through the vertices of the triangle. The circle described about a triangle is called the **circum-circle** of the triangle; and the centre and the radius of this circle are respectively called the **circum-centre** and the **circum-radius** of the triangle.

The *circum-centre* of a triangle is evidently the point of intersection of the perpendicular bisectors of any two of its sides; and the *circum-radius* is the distance of any vertex of the triangle from the circum-centre.

13. It is to be carefully noted that through any three points not lying on a str. line, a circle may be drawn. But it is only under special conditions that a circle can be drawn through more than three points.

Definition : If a circle can be drawn through four or more points, then those points are said to be **concyelic**.

EXERCISE 2

1. Show that through two given points any number of circles may be drawn, whose centres all lie on a straight line.

2. Is there any flaw in the statement :—

“Through any three given points one circle, and only one, can be described”?

If so, what's the correct statement and why?

3. Describe a circle of given radius through two given points. Is this always possible?

4. Draw a triangle whose sides are 3", 4" and 5"; measure the length of its circum-radius.

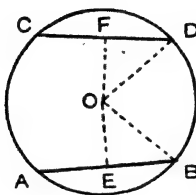
5. Prove that the centre of the circum-circle of an equilateral triangle is equidistant from the sides.

6. Can a circle be *always* drawn through two points, having its centre lying on a given straight line?

THEOREM 35.

Equal chords of a circle are equidistant from the centre.

Conversely, chords which are equidistant from the centre are equal.



Let AB and CD be two chords of a \odot whose centre is O .

Let OE , OF be the \perp 's from O upon AB and CD respectively ; then OE , OF are respectively the *distances* of AB and CD from O .

If $AB = CD$, it is required to prove that $OE = OF$.

Join OB , OD .

Proof. Since OE is \perp to AB ,

$$\therefore EB = \frac{1}{2}AB, \quad \because AE = EB. \quad \text{Th. 33.}$$

Similarly, $FD = \frac{1}{2}CD$.

$$\text{Hence, } EB = FD, \quad \because AB = CD. \quad \text{Hyp.}$$

Now, in the rt. angled Δ 's OEB , OFD ,

$$\therefore \begin{cases} \text{the hypotenuse } OB = \text{the hypotenuse } OD, \\ \text{and } EB = FD ; \end{cases}$$

\therefore the two Δ 's are congruent.

Hence, $OE = OF$.

Q. E. D.

Conversely, if $OE = OF$, it is required to prove that

$$AB = CD.$$

Join OB, OD ,

Proof. In the rt. angled Δ^s OEB, OFD ,

\therefore { the hypotenuse $OB =$ the hypotenuse OD .
and $OE = OF$;

\therefore the two Δ^s are congruent.

Hence, $EB = FD$.

Now, OE being \perp to AB , E is the mid-pt. of AB ;

$$\therefore AB = 2EB.$$

$$\text{Similarly, } CD = 2FD.$$

Hence, $AB = CD$, $\therefore EB = FD$. Q. E. D.

COR. 1. *In equal circles, equal chords are equidistant from the centre, and conversely.*

COR. 2. *The middle points of equal chords of a circle lie on the circumference of a concentric circle.*

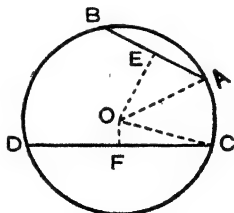
For, the distances of the centre from the middle points of the chords are equal to one another.

An Important Proposition :

Of any two chords of a circle, the one which is nearer to the centre is greater than the one more remote.

Conversely, the greater of the two chords of a circle is nearer to the centre than the one which is less.

Let AB and CD be two chords of a circle whose centre is O ; and let OE and OF be perp^s from O on AB and CD respectively.



If $OF < OE$, it is required to prove that $CD > AB$.

Join OA, OC .

Proof. Because OE, OF are perp^s on AB, CD ,

$$\therefore AE = \frac{1}{2}AB, \text{ and } CF = \frac{1}{2}CD.$$

Again, \therefore the ΔOEA is rt. \angle^{ed} at E , $\therefore OA^2 = AE^2 + OE^2$.

Similarly, \therefore the ΔOFC is rt. \angle^{ed} at F ,

$$OC^2 = CF^2 + OF^2.$$

But $OC = OA$, being radii;

$$\therefore AE^2 + OE^2 = CF^2 + OF^2 \dots\dots\dots(1)$$

But $OF < OE$; i.e. $OF^2 < OE^2$.

$$\therefore CF^2 > AE^2;$$

$$\therefore CF > AE; \text{ i.e. } CD > AB.$$

Conversely, if $OF > OE$, it is reqd. to prove that $CD < AB$.

Proof.

Since $OF > OE$,

$$\therefore OF^2 > OE^2.$$

$$\therefore \text{ from (1), } CF^2 < AE^2, \text{ i.e. } CF < AE.$$

$$\therefore CD < AB.$$

Q. E. D.

COR. *Of all chords in a circle, those which pass through the centre are the greatest.*

EXERCISE 3

1. Draw a circle of radius equal to 5 cm. and in it place two chords, each of length 8 cm. Verify by actual measurement that they are equidistant from the centre of the circle.

2. A chord of length 6'' is at a distance of 4'' from the centre of a circle. Find the length of the chord whose distance is 3'' from the centre.

3. O is the centre of a circle of which the radius is 2'' and A, B, C are three points each at a distance of one inch from O. Construct the chords that are bisected respectively at A, B, C and prove that these chords are equal. Verify this by actual measurement.

4. If two equal chords of a circle intersect at a point, they are equally inclined to the diameter of the circle through that point.

(The pt. of intersection may be inside, on or outside the circle).

5. Any two intersecting chords of a circle, equally inclined to the diameter through the point of intersection, are equal.

6. Show how to draw two equal chords of a circle, at right angles to each other.

7. Parallel chords drawn through the extremities of a diameter on opposite sides of it are equal, and conversely.

8. If one chord of a circle passes through the middle point of another chord, show that the former is greater than the latter.

9. Show that there cannot be three equal chords of a circle all passing through a given point within it.

10. AB, AC, AD are three chords of a circle taken in order, AB being the diameter. Prove that AB is greater than AC and AC is greater than AD.

THEOREM 36.

The angle at the centre of a circle is double of an angle at the circumference, standing on the same arc.

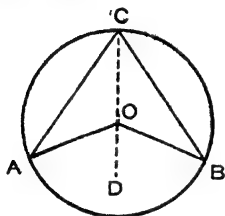


Fig. 1.

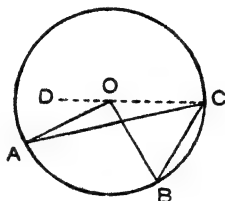


Fig. 2.

Let O be the centre of a \odot of which AB is an arc ; and let $\angle AOB$ be the angle at the centre, and $\angle ACB$ an angle at the O^e , standing on the arc AB .

It is required to prove that the $\angle AOB = \text{twice the } \angle ACB$

Join CO and produce it to any pt D .

Proof. Since $OB = OC$, \therefore the $\angle OCB = \text{the } \angle OBC$;
but the $\angle DOB = \text{the } \angle OCB + \text{the } \angle OBC$;
 \therefore the $\angle DOB = \text{twice the } \angle OCB$.

Similarly, the $\angle AOD = \text{twice the } \angle OCA$

Hence, in fig. (1),

the $\angle AOD + \text{the } \angle DOB = \text{twice the } \angle OCA +$
 $\text{twice the } \angle OCB,$

i.e. the $\angle AOB = \text{twice the } \angle ACB$;

and in fig. (2),

the $\angle DOB - \text{the } \angle AOD = \text{twice the } \angle OCB -$
 $\text{twice the } \angle OCA,$

i.e., the $\angle AOB = \text{twice the } \angle ACB$.

Q. E. D.

Obs. If the arc AB be equal to the semi-circumference of the circle, the $\angle AOB$ becomes a *straight-angle* ; and if the arc AB be greater than the semi-circumference, then the $\angle AOB$ becomes a *reflex* angle. The same proof will hold for these two cases too.

EXERCISE 4

1. If O be the circum-centre of a triangle ABC , prove that the angles OBC , BAC are complementary.

2. $ABCD$ is a circle of which the centre is O . If the sum of the angles ADB , BDC be equal to one right-angle, prove that the points A , O , C lie on a straight line.

3. If ABC , $A'B'C'$ be two triangles in which $BC=B'C'$, and the $\angle A = \text{the } \angle A'$, show that their circum-circles are equal.

4. Diagonals of a parallelogram, inscribed in a circle, intersect each other at the centre of the circle.

5. Prove that the angle subtended at the circumference of a circle by one of its diameter is a right-angle.

6. From a point A , on the circumference of a circle, AD is drawn perpendicular on a chord BC ; if AE be the diameter through A , prove that the angles BAD and EAC are equal.

[Apply Ex. 5.]

7. Show how to determine the positions of three points on a circle such that the triangle formed by joining them has two of its angles equal to 60° and 75° .

8. Show how to divide a circle into two parts, by a chord, such that the angle in one of them subtended by the chord is double that in the other.

[Take any pt. A on the \odot whose centre is O and draw a chord AD equal to the radius, r ; through O draw $OB \parallel$ to AD . Join OA , DB , so that $OADB$ is a par^m . \therefore the $\angle ADB = \text{the } \angle AOB$; take any pt. C on the \odot , on that side of AB which does not contain D . Then $\angle ACB = \frac{1}{2} \angle AOB$ and $\therefore = \frac{1}{2} \angle ADB$. Hence AB is the chord which divides the \odot in the required way.]

CHAPTER III

SEGMENTS : ANGLES IN A SEGMENT

DEFINITIONS

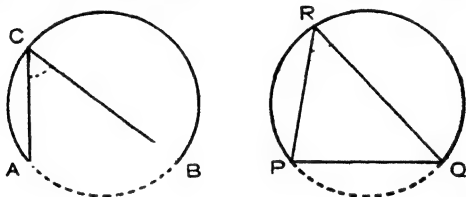
14. A segment of a circle is the figure bounded by an arc and the chord joining the extremities of the arc.

NOTE 1. A semi-circle is also a segment.

NOTE 2. The chord of a segment is also called the base of the segment.

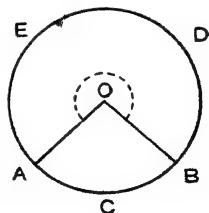
15. An angle in a segment is the angle contained by two straight lines drawn from any point in the arc of the segment to the extremities of its chord.

16. Similar segments are those which contain equal angles. Thus, in the following diagram, the segments ACB and PRQ are *similar*, because the \angle ACB and PRQ are equal.



17. A sector of a circle is the figure bounded by an arc and the two radii drawn to the extremities of the arc.

Thus, in the adjoining diagram, the figure AOB is a sector of the \odot ABD. The figure AOBDE is also a sector.

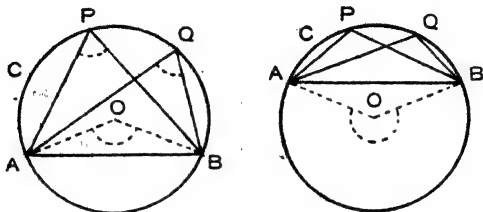


NOTE 1. The angle between the two bounding radii of a sector is called the **angle of the sector**. Hence the angle of the sector AOBDE is the re-entrant angle AOB.

NOTE 2. A sector becomes a semi-circle when the angle of the sector becomes equal to two right angles.

THEOREM 37.

Angles in the same segment of a circle are equal.



Let $\angle APB$ be any \angle in the segment ACB of the \odot , whose centre is O . Let $\angle AQB$ be any other \angle in the same segment.

It is required to prove that the $\angle APB =$ the $\angle AQB$.

Join OA, OB .

Proof. The arc AB of the \odot subtends the $\angle AOB$ at the centre, and the $\angle APB$ at the pt. P on the remaining part of the O^{ce} ;

\therefore the $\angle APB =$ half the $\angle AOB$. *Th. 36.*

Similarly, the $\angle AQB =$ half the $\angle AOB$.

Hence, the $\angle APB =$ the $\angle AQB$.

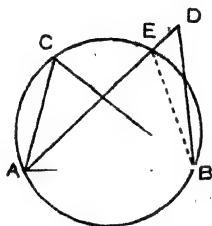
Q. E. D.

NOTE. If the segment ACB be less than a semi-circle, the angle AOB is a reflex angle.

THEOREM 38.

[CONVERSE OF THEOREM, 37]

If the line joining two given points subtends equal angles at two other points on the same side of it, the four points lie on a circle.



Let C and D be two pts. on the same side of the str. line joining the given points A, B and let the $\angle ACB = \angle ADB$.

It is required to prove that the four points A, B, C, D lie on the circumference of a circle.

Proof. A \odot will pass through any three of the four pts. A, B, C, D . Th. 34.

\therefore if the \odot passing through A, B, C do not pass through D , then it will cut AD , or AD produced, at some pt. E .

Join EB .

Then, the $\angle ACB = \angle AEB$, in the same segment.

But the $\angle ACB = \angle ADB$;

Hyp.

\therefore the $\angle AEB = \angle ADB$;

i.e. an ext. \angle of the $\triangle BED$ is equal to one of its int. opposite angles; which is impossible.

Hence, the circle passing through A, B, C must pass also through D . Q. E. D.

COR. Triangles standing on the same base, and on the same side of it, with equal vertical angles, have their vertices on the circumference of a circle of which the given base is a chord.

Let AB be the common base and C, D, E, F , &c., the vertices of the Δ 's; then, since the $\angle ACB = \angle ADB$, the \odot passing

through A, B, C also passes through D. Similarly, the \odot passing through A, B, C also passes through E; and so on. Thus the pts. D, E, F, &c., all lie on the \odot that passes through the pts. A, B, C; which proves the corollary.

NOTE. The foregoing corollary and Theorem 37 are converse propositions. For, the corollary may be stated in a slightly altered form, thus :—

If triangles standing on the same base and on the same side of it, have equal vertical angles, then their vertices lie on the arc of a segment of which the given base is the chord; whilst Theorem 37 may also be enunciated as follows :

If triangles standing on the same base, and on the same side of it, have their vertices on the arc of a segment of which the given base is the chord, their vertical angles are equal.

EXERCISE 5

1. A quadrilateral ABCD is inscribed in a circle whose centre is O. If the diagonals AC, BD intersect in E, prove that the $\angle AOB + \text{the } \angle COD = 2 \angle AEB$.

2. If two chords, AC and BD, of a circle, intersect at right angles, show that the chords AB, CD subtend supplementary angles at the centre.

3. AB, CD are two chords of a circle such that when produced they meet at P. If O be the centre of the circle, prove that the angle APC is equal to half the difference between the angles AOC, BOD.

4. Find the locus of the vertex of a triangle having a given vertical angle and standing on a given base.

5. XY is a given straight line and A, B are two fixed points outside it. Find a point in XY at which AB will subtend a right angle.

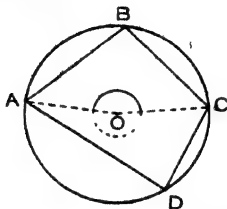
6. Show that the middle points of the sides of a triangle and the feet of the perpendiculars drawn from the vertices to the opposite sides are concyclic.

7. ABCD is a circle. The bisectors of the angles CAB, CBA meet at P, and the bisectors of the angles DAB, DBA meet at Q. Prove that the four points A, Q, P, B are concyclic.

8. ABC is a triangle inscribed in a circle. If AB be fixed in position and C be made to move along the circumference, find the locus of the point of intersection of perpendiculars from A and B on BC and AC, respectively.

THEOREM 39.

The opposite angles of any quadrilateral inscribed in a circle are supplementary.



Let $ABCD$ be a quadrilateral inscribed in a \odot whose centre is O .

It is required to prove that (i) the $\angle ABC +$ the $\angle ADC =$ two right angles ;

and (ii) the $\angle BAD +$ the $\angle BCD =$ two right angles.

Join OA, OC .

Proof. Now, the $\angle ADC$ at the $O^e =$ the half the $\angle AOC$ at the centre, standing on the arc ABC .

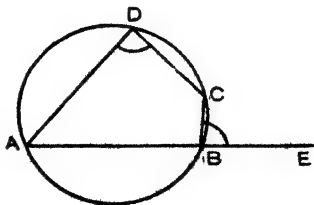
Also, the $\angle ABC$ at the $O^e =$ half the reflex $\angle AOC$ at the centre, standing on the arc ADC .

Hence, the $\angle ADC +$ the $\angle ABC =$ half the sum of the $\angle AOC$ and the reflex $\angle AOC$
 $=$ half of four right angles
 $=$ two right angles.

Similarly, the $\angle BAD +$ the $\angle BCD =$ two right angles. Q.E.D.

COR. 1. *If the side AB of a quadrilateral $ABCD$ inscribed in a circle be produced to E , the angle EBC is equal to the angle ADC .*

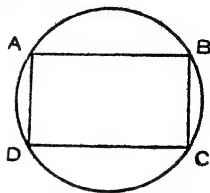
The $\angle EBC$ is supplementary to the $\angle ABC$; also the $\angle ADC$ is supplementary to the $\angle ABC$. Hence, the $\angle EBC =$ the $\angle ADC$.



COR. 2. *If a circle pass through the angular points of a parallelogram, the parallelogram must be a rectangle.*

Let a \odot pass through the angular pts. of the par^m ABCD. The $\angle A =$ the $\angle C$ (opp. \angle 's of a par^m).

also, the sum of the \angle 's A and C is two rt. \angle 's, because the quadl. ABCD is inscribed in a \odot . Hence, each of the \angle 's A and C is a rt. \angle , which proves the corollary.

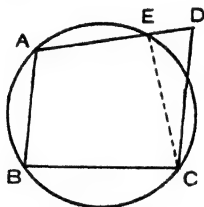


18. Definition. A quadrilateral is said to be **cyclic** when a circle can be made to pass through its angular points.

THEOREM 40.

[CONVERSE OF THEOREM 39]

If a pair of opposite angles of a quadrilateral be supplementary, the quadrilateral is a cyclic one.



Let the \angle 's B and D of the quadl. ABCD be together equal to two rt. \angle 's.

It is required to prove that the four points A, B, C, D are concyclic.

Proof. A \odot will pass through the pts. A, B, C. If this \odot do not pass through D, let it cut AD, or AD produced, at some pt. E. Join EC.

Now, the quadl. ABCE being cyclic, the $\angle AEC$ is the supplement of the $\angle ABC$;

but the $\angle ADC$ is the supplement of the $\angle ABC$. *Hyp.*

\therefore the $\angle AEC =$ the $\angle ADC$, which is impossible.

Hence, the \odot which passes through A, B, C must pass also through D. Q. E. D.

COR. *If, when the side AB of a quadrilateral ABCD is produced to E, the angle EBC be equal to the angle ADC, then the four points A, B, C, D are concyclic.*

NOTE. It may be observed that if the \angle^s B and D are supplementary the \angle^s A and C are also supplementary, because the four angles of a quadrilateral are together equal to four right angles.

EXERCISE 6

1. From a given point, O, outside a given circle, straight lines OAB, OCD are drawn to meet the circle in A, B, C, D respectively. Prove that the triangles OAC, OBD are equiangular.

2. The bisectors of the angles B, C of a triangle ABC meet at P and the bisectors of the exterior angles at B, C meet at Q. Show that B, P, C, Q are concyclic.

3. Any two triangles which stand on equal bases and have their vertical angles supplementary, have equal circum-circles.

4. P is any point in the base AB of an isosceles triangle ABC; prove that the circum-circles of the triangles APC, BPC are equal.

5. ABCD is a quadrilateral inscribed in a circle, the angle ABC is bisected by a straight line BE meeting the circumference at E. If AD be produced to F, show that DE bisects the angle CDF.

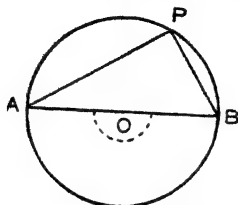
6. ABCD is a quadrilateral and the bisectors of the angles A, B; B, C; C, D; D, A; meet in E, F, G, H respectively. Show that the figure EFGH is cyclic.

7. Prove that a straight line drawn parallel to the base of an isosceles triangle cuts off from it a cyclic quadrilateral.

[Let DE be par to the base BC of an isosceles triangle ABC. Then, \therefore the $\angle BDE +$ the $\angle ECB =$ the $\angle BDE +$ the $\angle DBC = 2$ rt. \angle^s , the four points B, C, E, D are concyclic.]

THEOREM 41.

The angle in a semi-circle is a right angle.



Let AB be a diameter of a \odot , of which the centre is O .

Let APB be any \angle in the semi- \odot APB .

It is required to prove that the $\angle APB$ is a right angle.

Proof. The semi- \odot^e AB subtends the *straight angle* AOB at the centre, and the $\angle APB$ at the pt. P on the remaining part of the \odot^e ;

$$\begin{aligned}\therefore \text{ the } \angle APB &= \text{half the str. } \angle AOB \\ &= \text{half of two rt. } \angle^s \\ &= \text{one right angle.}\end{aligned}$$

Q. E. D.

COR. 1. *Any chord of a circle subtending a right angle at a point on the circumference is a diameter.*

Let AB be the chord subtending a rt. angle at C on the \odot^e . If AB be not the diameter, let AD be the diameter through A . Then evidently the $\angle ACD = \text{a rt. } \angle = \text{the } \angle ACB$, which is impossible unless AD coincides with AB . Hence the proposition.

COR. 2. *If a straight line AB subtends a right angle at any point C , then the circle described on AB as diameter passes through C .*

If the circle does not pass through C , let it cut AC , or AC produced, at some point D . Join DB . Then the $\angle ADB$, being in a semi-circle is a right angle and \therefore equal to the $\angle ACB$, which is impossible. Hence, the circle must pass through C .

THEOREM 42.

The angle in a segment greater than a semi-circle is less than a right angle; and the angle in a segment less than a semi-circle is greater than a right angle.

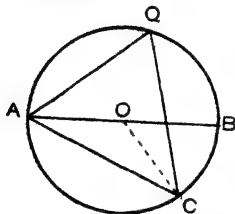


Fig. 1.

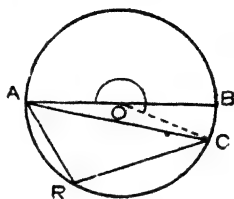


Fig. 2.

(i) Let AC be a chord of the \odot , whose centre is O , and AB the diameter, as in fig. (1).

Then the segment $AQBC$ is $>$ a semi- \odot ; let $\angle AQC$ be any angle in this segment.

It is required to prove that the $\angle AQC$ is less than a right angle.

Join OC .

Proof. The $\angle AQC = \text{half the } \angle AOC$.

But the $\angle AOC$ is $<$ the $\angle AOB$ i.e. $<$ two rt. \angle ;

\therefore the $\angle AQC$ is $<$ one right angle.

Q. E. D.

(ii) Let AC be a chord of the \odot , as in fig. (2).

Then the segment ARC is $<$ a semi- \odot ;

let $\angle ARC$ be any \angle in this segment.

It is required to prove that the $\angle ARC$ is greater than a rt. angle.

Join OC .

Proof. The arc ABC subtends the reflex $\angle AOC$ at the centre and the $\angle ARC$, at the pt. R on the remaining part of the \odot .

\therefore the $\angle ARC = \text{half the reflex } \angle AOC$.

But the reflex $\angle AOC$ is $>$ two rt. \angle ;

\therefore the $\angle ARC$ is $>$ one right angle.

Q. E. D.

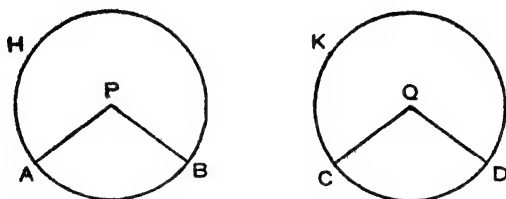
EXERCISE 7

1. Two circles intersect at A and B. If AP and AQ are diameters, prove that the three points P, B, Q are collinear.
2. ABC is a triangle, and the circle described on AB as diameter, cuts BC at D. Prove that the circle described on AC as diameter also passes through D.
3. Circles are described on the sides of a quadrilateral as diameters. Prove that the common chord of two of these circles which are adjacent is parallel to the common chord of the other two.
4. If a triangle is inscribed in a circle, prove that the sum of the angles in the three segments exterior to the triangle is equal to four right angles.
5. If a quadrilateral is inscribed in a circle, prove that the sum of the angles in the four segments exterior to the quadrilateral is equal to six right angles.
6. ABC is a triangle, and D is the middle point of BC. If BP, CQ be drawn perpendicular to AC, AB respectively, prove that the perpendicular bisector of PQ will pass through D. Prove also that the triangles ABC and APQ are equiangular.
7. In the figure of the preceding example, prove that the angle BCQ is equal to the angle BPQ.
8. Prove that the straight lines, which bisect any angle of a quadrilateral inscribed in a circle and the opposite exterior angle, meet on the circumference of the circle.
9. A quadrilateral is inscribed in a circle. If the bisectors of two of its opposite angles meet the circle in P and Q, prove that PQ is a diameter.
10. If a trapezium be inscribed in a circle, the oblique sides must be equal.

THEOREM 43.

In equal circles, arcs which subtend equal angles at the centre are equal.

Conversely, in equal circles, angles at the centres, standing on equal arcs, are equal.



Let ABH and CDK be two equal \odot 's whose centres are P and Q; and let the arcs AB and CD subtend the \angle 's APB and CQD respectively at the centres.

(i) *If the \angle APB be equal to the \angle CQD, it is required to prove that the arc AB is equal to the arc CD.*

Proof. (i) Apply the \odot CDK to the \odot ABH, so that the centre Q may coincide with the centre P, and QC may fall along PA.

Then, since the \angle CQD = the \angle APB, QD will fall along PB.

Hence, since QC = PA and QD = PB, the pt. C must coincide with the pt. A and the pt. D with the pt. B.

Also, since the two \odot 's have now become concentric and they have equal radii, the two \odot 's must coincide *entirely*.

Hence the arc CD entirely coincides with the arc AB and is \therefore equal to it.

Q. E. D.

(ii) *Conversely, if the arc AB be equal to the arc CD, it is required to prove that the $\angle APB = \angle CQD$.*

Apply the $\odot CDK$ to the $\odot ABH$, so that the centre Q may coincide with the centre P , and QC may fall along PA .

Then, since $QC = PA$, the pt. C must coincide with the pt. A .

Also, since the \odot 's have now become concentric and have equal radii, the two \odot 's coincide entirely.

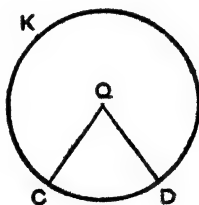
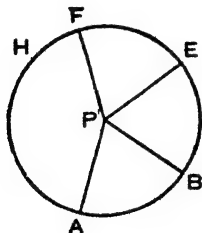
Hence, since the arc $CD =$ the arc AB , the pt. D must coincide with the pt. B .

Now, Q coinciding with P and D with B , QD coincides with PB ; and consequently the $\angle CQD$ coincides with the $\angle APB$.

Hence, $\angle CQD = \angle APB$.

Q. E. D.

COR. 1. *If in the same circle ABH, the arcs AB and EF subtend equal \angle 's APB, EPF at the centre, then the arc AB = the arc EF.*



Let CDK be a \odot whose centre is Q and radius $= PA$, and let the $\angle CQD$, contained by the radii QC and QD , be $=$ the $\angle EPF$ (or the $\angle APB$). Clearly then the arc $AB =$ the arc EF , because each of them $=$ the arc CD .

COR. 2. *If in the same circle ABH, the arc AB be $=$ the arc EF, then the \angle 's APB, EPF, which these arcs subtend at the centre, are equal.*

Let $\odot CDK$ be a \odot whose centre is Q and radius= PA , and let the arc CD be= $\text{the arc } AB$ (or $\text{the arc } EF$). Clearly then the $\angle APB = \text{the } \angle EPF$, because each of them = $\text{the } \angle CQD$.

COR. 3. *In equal circles, sectors which have equal angles are equal; also sectors which have equal arcs are equal.*

If the $\odot CDK$ be applied to the $\odot ABH$ so that the $\angle CQD$ coincides with the $\angle APB$, then the arc CD also coincides with the arc AB . Hence the sector QCD entirely coincides with the sector PAB and is \therefore equal to it. Similarly, if the arc CD be= $\text{the arc } AB$, it follows that the sector $QCD = \text{the sector } PAB$.

COR. 4. *In equal circles (or in the same circle), arcs which subtend equal angles at the circumferences (or circumference) are equal.*

Let O, O' be the centres of two equal \odot 's. If the arcs AB and CD subtend equal \angle^s AEB, CFD at the \odot^{cs} , then they also subtend equal \angle^s at the centres, (because the \angle^s $AOB, CO'D$ are respectively doubles of the \angle^s AEB, CFD); and \therefore the arc $AB = \text{the arc } CD$.

If in the same \odot , the arcs AB and GH subtend equal \angle^s AEB, GKH at the \odot^e , then they also subtend equal \angle^s at the centre, (for the \angle^s AOB, GOH are respectively doubles of the \angle^s AEB, GKH); and \therefore the arc $AB = \text{the arc } GH$.

COR. 5. *In equal circles (or in the same circle), angles at the circumferences (or circumference) which stand on equal arcs are equal.*

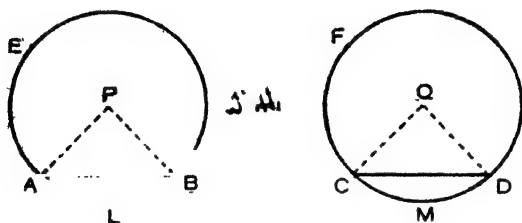
Referring to the notation of Cor. 4, if the arc AB be= $\text{the arc } CD$, then the $\angle AOB = \text{the } \angle CO'D$, (*Th. 43*); and \therefore the $\angle AEB = \text{the } \angle CFD$, because these \angle^s are respectively halves of the \angle^s $AOB, CO'D$.

Again, if the arc AB be= $\text{the arc } GH$, then the $\angle AOB = \text{the } \angle GOH$, (*Th. 43, Cor. 2.*); and \therefore the $\angle AEB = \text{the } \angle GKH$, because these \angle^s are respectively halves of the \angle^s AOB, GOH .

THEOREM 44.

In equal circles, chords which cut off equal arcs are equal.

Conversely, in equal circles, arcs which are cut off by equal chords, are equal, the major arc being equal to the major arc and the minor to the minor.



Let ABE and CDF be two equal \odot 's of which the centres are P and Q.

(i) Let the arc AB be = the arc CD.

Join AB, CD.

It is required to prove that the chord AB is equal to the chord CD.

Join PA, PB, QC, QD.

Proof. Because the arc AB = the arc CD,

\therefore the \angle APB, standing on the arc AB
= the \angle CQD, standing on the arc CD.

Th. 43.

Hence, in the two Δ 's PAB, QCD,

\therefore PA = QC (radii of equal \odot 's)

PB = QD (" " " ")

and the included \angle APB = the included \angle CQD,

\therefore the two Δ 's are congruent.

\therefore the chord AB = the chord CD.

Q. E. D.

(ii) Conversely, if the chord AB = the chord CD .

It is required to prove that the major arc AEB = the major arc CFD and the minor arc AB = the minor arc CD .

Proof. In the two Δ^s APB , CQD .

$\therefore PA = QC$ (radii of equal \odot^s)

$PB = QD$ (" " " ")

and $AB = CD$

Hyp.

\therefore the two Δ^s are congruent.

\therefore the $\angle APB$ = the $\angle CQD$

\therefore the arc AB = the arc CD

Th. 43.

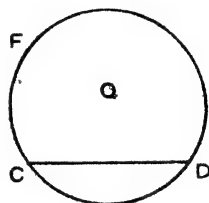
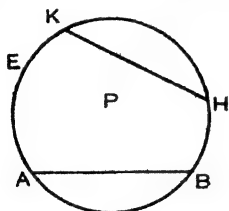
and these are minor arcs.

Again, the \odot^s being equal,

the whole \odot^r $AEBL$ = the whole \odot^r $CFDM$.

\therefore the remaining arc AEB = the remaining arc CFD , which proves the equality of the major arcs. *Q. E. D.*

COR. 1. *If in the same circle ABE , the arc AB be equal to the arc HK , then the chord AB is equal to the chord HK .*



Let CDF be an equal \odot having its centre at Q , and let the arc CD be = the arc AB (or the arc HK). Clearly, then the chord AB = the chord HK , because each of them = the chord CD .

COR. 2. *If in the same circle ABE , the chord AB be equal to the chord HK , then the minor arc AB is equal to the minor arc HK , and the major arc AEB is equal to the major arc HEK .*

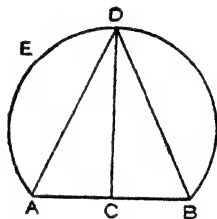
Let CDF be an equal \odot having its centre at Q , and let the chord CD be = the chord AB (or the chord HK).

Clearly then the minor arc AB = the minor arc HK , because each of them = the minor arc CD . Also the major arc AEB = the major arc HEK , because each of them = the major arc CFD .

COR. 3. *In equal circles, segments which have equal arcs are equal; also, segments which have equal chords and which are both greater, or both less, than a semi-circle, are equal.*

For, if the $\odot CDF$ be so applied to the $\odot ABE$ that the arc CD coincides with the arc AB , then the segment CD entirely coincides with the segment AB and is \therefore equal to it. Again, if the chord CD be the chord AB , the $\odot CDF$ may be so applied to the $\odot ABE$ that the arc CD coincides with the arc AB and the arc CFD with the arc AEB . Hence the segment CD entirely coincides with the segment AB and is \therefore equal to it; also the segment CFD entirely coincides with the segment AEB and is \therefore equal to it.

COR. 4. *If C be the middle point of the chord AB of an arc AEB , and if CD be drawn perpendicular to AB meeting the arc in D , then D is the middle point of the arc AEB .*



Since DC produced is a diameter of the \odot of * which AEB is an arc, the arcs DA and DB are clearly both less than the semi- \odot of the \odot . Now, if DA and DB be joined, the two $\triangle ACD$ and BCD are evidently congruent; whence $DA = DB$, and \therefore the arc $DA =$ the arc DB .

EXERCISE 8

1. A, B, C are three points on the circumference of a circle of which the centre is O . If the angle AOC be three times the angle AOB , prove that the arc AC is also three times the arc AB .

2. P and Q are two points on the circumference of a circle of which the centre is O . If the $\angle POQ = 120^\circ$, prove that the arc PQ is one-third of the whole circumference, and that the chord PQ is a side of an equilateral triangle inscribed in the circle.

Hence construct an equilateral triangle with its vertices on the circumference of a circle whose radius is 2 inches.

3. If AB and CD be two diameters of a circle, perpendicular to each other, prove that the quadrilateral $ACBD$ is both equilateral and equiangular.

4. If a regular hexagon be inscribed in a circle, prove that each side of the figure is equal to a radius of the circle.*

5. If two equal circles intersect so that the centre of one circle is on the circumference of the other, prove that one-third of each circumference lies within the other.

6. If in a circle, two arcs be such that they subtend complementary angles at the circumference, prove that the two arcs are together equal to half the circumference.

7. If AB , CD be two chords of a circle at right angles to each other prove that the sum of the arcs AC , BD is equal to half the circumference of the circle.

8. AB is the common chord of two equal circles. If any straight line drawn through B meet the circumferences in P and Q , prove that the triangle PAQ is isosceles.

9. The perpendiculars from A , B to the opposite sides of the triangle ABC meet the circum-circle of the triangle at X and Y respectively. Prove that the arc CX = the arc CY .

10. The bisector of the vertical angle A of the triangle ABC bisects the arc BC of the circum-circle of the triangle.

11. OA , OB are two radii of circle at rt. angles to each other, and AX , BY are parallel chords. Prove that BX , AY are rt. \angle s to each other.

[Evidently, the Δ s BOX , AOY are congruent, and \therefore the $\angle OBX$ = the $\angle OAY$.]

CHAPTER IV

TANGENCY

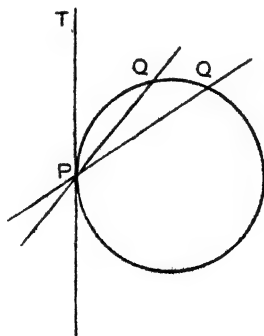
19. Definitions : (i) Any unlimited straight line that cuts the circumference of a circle is called a **secant** of a circle.

Hence, a chord when produced both ways becomes a *secant*, or, in other words, a chord is that portion of a secant which lies within the circle.

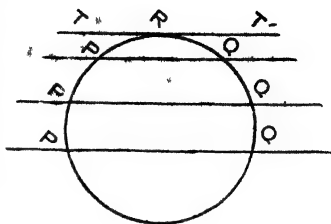
(ii) If a secant of a circle moves so that the two points in which it cuts the circumference continually approach one another, then in the position which it ultimately takes up when the two points coincide, the secant becomes what is called a **tangent** to the circle; and it is said to *touch*, or be the *tangent* to, the circle *at the point* at which those two points coincide.

(iii) The point at which the tangent to a circle touches it, is called the **point of contact** of the tangent.

Ex. 1. In the adjoining diagram, let PQ be a secant of the circle. Let PQ be so rotated that P remains fixed while Q moves along the circumference towards P ; then the secant PQ will continually change its position. If PT be the position which the secant assumes when Q coincides with P , then PT is the *tangent* to the circle at the point P .



Ex. 2. Let P, Q be any two points on the circumference of a circle. Suppose that the secant PQ moves in such a manner that *both* the points P and Q approach nearer and nearer to some point R on the arc PQ , and ultimately coincide at R . If TRT' be the position of the secant when P and Q coincide, then TRT' is the *tangent* to the circle at the point R .



NOTE 1. From the above it is clear that when a straight line becomes a *tangent* to a circle at any point, it does not *cut* the circumference at that point. Hence a tangent to a circle is an *unlimited straight line which meets the circumference but does not cut it at the point of meeting*.

NOTE 2. A tangent may also be regarded as a secant cutting the circumference in two *coincident* points. In other words a tangent is a secant of which the chord-portion does not exist.

20. If the circumference of one circle passes through two points on the circumference of another, and if one of the circles be made to move, keeping the other fixed, in such a way that the two points come nearer and nearer to each other, then in its *ultimate position*, when the two points *coincide* into one, the moving circle is said to **touch** the other at the point of coincidence, this point being called their **point of contact**.

For instance, in the diagram p. 192, let O and O' be the centres of the two circles which cut each other in the points P and Q . If the first circle moves, while the second remains fixed,

so that the points P and Q come nearer and nearer to one another, and if HRK be the ultimate position of the moving circle when P and Q coincide at R , then the circle HRK is said to *touch* the circle RMN at the point R , and R is called their *point of contact*.

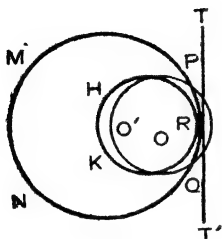


Fig. 1.

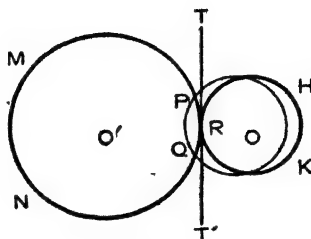


Fig. 2.

Obs. 1. Hence it is clear that two circles may be said to *touch* each other when they *meet* but *do not cut* each other at the point of meeting.

Obs. 2. It may also be said that one circle touches another when the circumference of the former passes through two *coincident* points on the circumference of the latter.

Obs. 3. In the above diagram, let TRT' be the ultimate position of the secant PQ , when P and Q coincide at R .

Then TRT' is clearly a tangent to each of the two circles because it passes through two *coincident* points on each circumference. Hence, *when two circles touch each other, they have a common tangent at the point of contact.*

21. Definition : Two circles are said to **touch** each other **internally** (or to have **internal contact**), when the centres of the circles are on the *same* side of the point of contact, as in fig. (1) ; and they are said to touch each other **externally** (or to have **external contact**), when the centres are on *opposite* sides of the point of contact, as in fig. (2).

THEOREM 45.

The tangent at any point of a circle is perpendicular to the radius through the point of contact.

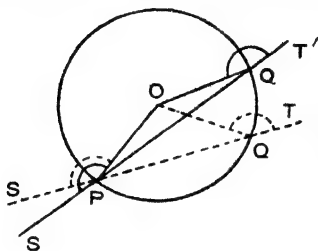


Fig. 1.

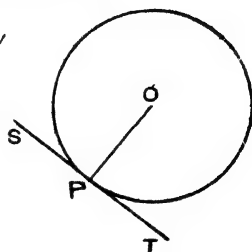


Fig. 2.

Let P be any point on the \odot of a \odot whose centre is O ; join OP .

It is required to prove that the tangent at P is perpendicular to OP .

Let ST be a secant through P , cutting the \odot again at Q . (Fig. 1).

Join OQ .

Proof. Since $OQ = OP$, \therefore the $\angle OPQ =$ the $\angle OQP$.

Now, the $\angle OPS$ is the supplement of the $\angle OPQ$,
and the $\angle OQT$ is the supplement of the $\angle OQP$. }

Hence the $\angle OPS =$ the $\angle OQT$.

Let the secant ST be turned about the pt. P so that the pt. Q , moving along the arc QP , gradually approaches P .

Then, in every position of the secant, the $\angle OPS =$ the $\angle OQT$.

Ultimately, when Q coincides with P , the secant ST becomes the tangent at P , and the $\angle OQT$ becomes the $\angle OPT$, as in fig. 2.

Hence, when ST is the tangent at P , the $\angle OPS =$ the $\angle OPT$, and these are adjacent angles ; \therefore each = a rt. \angle .

$\therefore OP$ is \perp to ST .

That is, the tangent at P is \perp to OP .

Q. E. D.

COR. 1. *If from the point of contact of a tangent to a circle a straight line be drawn perpendicular to the tangent, it must pass through the centre of the circle.*

If PO' be drawn \perp to PT , PO' must coincide in direction with PO ; for, otherwise there would be two perpendiculars to PT at P , which is impossible.

COR. 2. *If through any point on a circle a straight line be drawn perpendicular to the radius to that point, it must be the tangent to the circle at that point*

If PT' be drawn \perp to OP , PT' must coincide in direction with PT ; for, otherwise there would be two perpendiculars to OP at P , which is impossible.

COR. 3. *There cannot be more than one tangent to a circle at any given point on its circumference.*

For, if there were two tangents to a \odot at any given pt. P on its \odot^c , each of them would be \perp to OP , and thus there would be two \perp^s to OP at P , which is impossible.

COR. 4. *If through the centre of a circle a straight line be drawn perpendicular to a tangent to the circle, it must meet the tangent at the point of contact.*

If through O a straight line be drawn \perp to the tangent SPT , it must coincide in direction with OP ; for, there would otherwise be two perpendiculars to SPT through O , which is impossible.

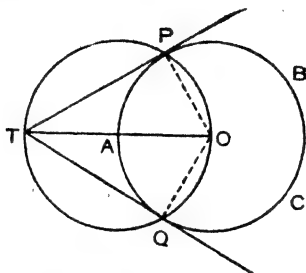
COR. 5. *Every point on a tangent to a circle except the point of contact, is outside the circle.*

Let SPT be a tangent to a \odot whose centre is O , the pt. of contact being P . Then, since OP is \perp to ST , every other point on ST , besides P , is at a greater distance from O , than OP , i.e. at a greater distance from O than the radius of the \odot ; which proves the corollary.

NOTE. Theorem 45 may also be proved as follows: The straight line drawn from the centre of a circle to the middle point of the chord-portion of a secant is always perpendicular to the secant (Th. 33). When the secant becomes a tangent, the chord-portion becomes reduced to the mere point of contact, and so the middle point of the chord-portion too becomes identical with the point of contact. Hence the straight line drawn from the centre to the point of contact of a tangent (which may be regarded as the straight line drawn from the centre to the middle point of the chord-portion of the tangent) is perpendicular to the tangent.

THEOREM 45A.

Two, and only two, tangents can be drawn to a circle from an external point.



Let $\odot ABC$ be a \odot whose centre is O and T be an external point.

It is required to prove that two tangents can be drawn from T to the $\odot ABC$, and no more.

Join OT , and on OT as diameter let a $\odot TPQ$ be drawn, cutting the $\odot ABC$ at P and Q .

Join TP , TQ , OP , OQ .

Proof. In the $\odot TPQ$, $\angle TPO$, $\angle TQO$, being in semi-circles, are each a right angle.

$\therefore TP$ and TQ are perps. to the radii OP , OQ , respectively, through the points P , Q on the O^e of the $\odot ABC$.

$\therefore TP$ and TQ are each a tangent to the $\odot ABC$.

Again, because a tangent TP is obtained by joining T to a point of intersection of the \odot s TPQ and ABC , and because two \odot s cannot intersect in more than two points, it follows that there can be no more than two tangents from T to the $\odot ABC$.

COR. No tangent can be drawn to a circle from a point within it.

For, if T be a point within the $\odot ABC$, the \odot on OT as diameter will not cut the $\odot ABC$.

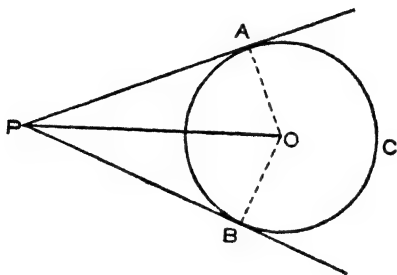
22. Definitions : When a tangent is drawn to a circle from a point outside it, the *portion of the tangent intercepted between the point and the point of contact* is often spoken of as **the tangent drawn from the point** to the circle.

Thus, in the diagram of *Th. 46*, PA , PB are called the *tangents* drawn from P to the circle.

If AB be joined, the line AB is called the **chord of contact** of the tangents from P to the circle.

THEOREM 46.

The two tangents drawn from an external point to a circle are equal and subtend equal angles at the centre.



Let PA and PB be the two tangents from an external point P to a circle ABC , whose centre is O ; and let PA and PB touch the $\odot ABC$ at A and B respectively. Join OP , OA , OB .

*It is required to prove that $PA = PB$
and the $\angle POA = \text{the } \angle POB$.*

Proof. Because PA , PB are tangents and OA , OB are radii through their points of contact,

the $\angle PAO = \text{the } \angle PBO$, each being a rt. \angle .

Now, in the right $\angle^{\text{ed}} \Delta^s \text{PAO, PBO,}$

$\therefore \begin{cases} \text{OA} = \text{OB, radii of the same } \odot \\ \text{and the hypotenuse OP is common,} \end{cases}$

\therefore the two Δ^s are congruent.

$\therefore \text{PA} = \text{PB}$

and the $\angle \text{POA} = \text{the } \angle \text{POB.}$

Q. E. D.

COR. *The two tangents drawn to a circle from an external point are equally inclined to the diameter through that point.*

EXERCISE 9

1. If two circles are concentric, prove that any chord of the outer circle which touches the inner is bisected at the point of contact.
2. If any number of equal circles touch a given straight line on the same side of it, prove that their centres all lie in one straight line.
3. If P be a point from which tangents are drawn to a circle whose centre is O, prove that OP is the perpendicular bisector of the chord of contact.
4. If any number of circles pass through the same point and touch one another at that point, prove that their centres all lie in one str. line.
5. If any number of circles touch each of two intersecting straight lines, prove that their centres all lie in one straight line.
6. If a parallelogram be described about a circle, prove that the sum of one pair of its opposite sides is equal to that of the other pair. Hence prove that any two adjacent sides of the parallelogram are equal.
7. If a quadrilateral be such that the sum of one pair of its opposite sides is equal to that of the other pair, prove that a circle which touches any three sides of this quadrilateral must also touch the fourth.
8. If the two tangents, one to each of two intersecting circles at either point of intersection, be at right angles to each other, show that the sum of the squares on their radii is equal to the square on the distance between their centres.

THEOREM 47.

If two circles touch, the point of contact lies in the straight line through the centres.

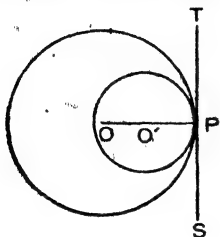


Fig. 1.

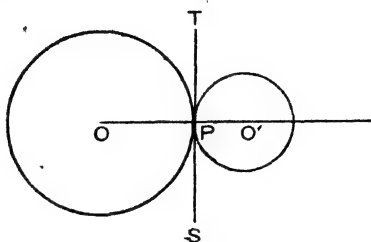


Fig. 2.

Let the \odot 's whose centres are O and O' touch at the pt. P .

It is required to prove that O , O' and P lie in the same str. line.

Proof. Because the two circles touch at P they have a common tangent at P .

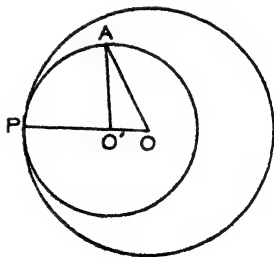
Let TPS be the common tangent ; join OP , $O'P$.

Then OP , $O'P$ being radii drawn to the pt. of contact, each of the \angle 's TPO , TPO' is a rt. \angle .

$\therefore OP$ and $O'P$ are in one and the same str. line i.e. the three pts. O , O' , P lie in one str. line. Q. E. D.

COR. I. *If two circles touch each other internally, every point on the circle of smaller radius, except the point of contact lies inside the other circle.*

Let the \odot 's whose centres are O and O' touch each other internally at P , the second \odot being of smaller radius. Then O , O' , P are in one str. line and $OP > O'P$. Take any pt. A , other than the pt. P , on the \odot of smaller radius ; join OA , $O'A$. Now, OA is less than the sum of OO' and $O'A$ and is \therefore less than OP . Thus the



distance of A from the centre of the first \odot is less than its radius ; $\therefore A$ is inside the first \odot , which proves the corollary.

COR. 2. *If two circles touch each other externally, every point on either circle, except the point of contact, lies outside the other.*

COR. 3. *The distance between the centres of two circles, which touch one another, is equal to the sum or difference of their radii according as their contact is external or internal.*

NOTE 1. The main proposition may also be proved as follows : If two circles cut each other in two points, their centres and the mid-pt. of the common chord lie in one str. line. When the circles touch, the two pts. of intersection coincide ; the common chord, therefore, becomes reduced merely to the pt. of contact, and consequently the mid-pt. of the chord also becomes identical with the point of contact. Hence, when the circles touch, their centres and the point of contact must lie in one str. line.

NOTE 2. *If two circles have a common point on the line joining their centres, the circles touch each other at the point.*

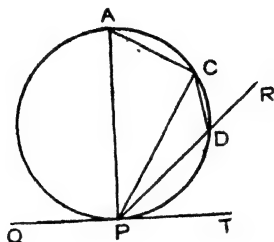
For, if the circles intersect in two distinct points, the line joining the centres passes through the mid-pt. of the common chord and never through one or other of the pts. of intersection.

NOTE 3. *If two circles have the same tangent at a common point they touch each other at the point.*

For, if the circles intersect in two distinct pts., they cannot have a common tangent at either of those pts. ; they can only have a common secant passing through the two pts. of intersection.

THEOREM 48.

If a straight line touch a circle, and from the point of contact a chord be drawn, the angles which this chord makes with the tangent are equal to the angles in alternate segments respectively.



Let QPT be the tangent, touching the \odot ACP at P, and PC be any chord which divides the \odot into two segments CAP and CDP.

It is required to prove that

- (i) *the \angle CPT = any \angle in the segment CAP.*
- (ii) *and the \angle CPQ = any \angle in the segment CDP.*

Let PA be the diameter through P. Join AC, CD, PD (D being any point in the segment CDP).

Proof. (i) \because PA is the diameter through the pt. of contact, the \angle APT = a rt. \angle .

$$\text{i.e. the } \angle \text{APC} + \text{the } \angle \text{CPT} = \text{a rt. } \angle \dots\dots\dots(1)$$

Also, the \angle PCA, being in semi- \odot , = a rt. \angle .

$$\therefore \text{ the } \angle \text{APC} + \text{the } \angle \text{PAC} = \text{a rt. } \angle \dots\dots\dots(2)$$

from (1) and (2), taking away the common \angle APC, we have,

the \angle CPT = the \angle PAC = any \angle in the segment CAP, standing on the arc CP.

- (ii) Again, $PACD$ is a cyclic quadril. ; \therefore
 \therefore the $\angle PAC +$ the $\angle CDP = 2 \text{ rt. } \angle$;
 also, the $\angle CPT +$ the $\angle CPQ = 2 \text{ rt. } \angle$.

But, the $\angle CPT =$ the $\angle PAC$ *proved*
 \therefore the $\angle CPQ =$ the $\angle CDP =$ any \angle in the segment CDP .
Q. E. D.

Proof by the method of Limits.

Proof. In the arc CDP , taken a point D close to P ; join PD and produce it to any pt. R . Join CD, AC, AP .

Now, the quadr. $PDCA$ being cyclic, the $\angle CDR =$ the $\angle CAP$;
Th. 39, Cor. 1.

and this equality holds good *however close* the point D may be to P .

Suppose the secant PR to be turned about P , so that D moves towards P ; then, ultimately, when D coincides with P , the $\angle CDR$ becomes the $\angle CPT$.

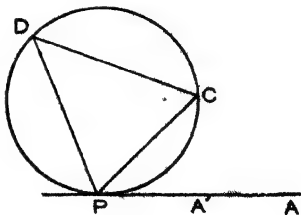
Hence the $\angle CPT =$ the $\angle CAP$.

By similar construction and reasoning, the $\angle CPQ =$ the $\angle CDP$.
Q. E. D.

COR. If PDC is a triangle, and if through P a straight line PA be drawn on the side of PC remote from D such that the angle CPA is equal to the angle CDP , then PA is the tangent at P to the circum-circle of the triangle PDC .

If PA' be the tangent at P , to the circum-circle, then the $\angle CPA' =$ the $\angle CDP$; but the $\angle CDP =$ the $\angle CPA$. *Hyp.*

\therefore the $\angle CPA' =$ the $\angle CPA$;
 hence PA' and PA coincide, i.e.,
 PA is the tangent at P to the circle PDC .



EXERCISE 10

1. P is the middle point of an arc APB of a circle. Prove that the tangent at P is parallel to the chord AB.
2. If an equilateral triangle be inscribed in a circle, prove that the tangents at its angular points will form another equilateral triangle.
3. Two circles intersect at A and B; and through P, any point on the circumference of one of them, str. lines PAC, PBD are drawn to cut the other \odot at C and D. Prove that CD is \parallel to the tangent at P.
4. ABC is a triangle right-angled at C; and from C a perpendicular CD is drawn to the hypotenuse. Prove that BC bisects the angle between CD and the tangent at C to the circum-circle of the $\triangle ABC$.
5. Construct a triangle, having given the base, the vertical angle, and the length of the str. line joining the vertex to the middle pt. of the base.
6. Two \odot 's touch each other externally. Prove that any str. line drawn through the pt. of contact cuts off similar segments from the two \odot 's.
7. ABC is a triangle, and DE is drawn parallel to BC cutting the sides in D and E. Prove that the circles circumscribed about the triangles ADE and ABC have a common tangent at A.

MISCELLANEOUS EXERCISES

(On Circles)

1. Any number of equal circles pass through a given point; show that their centres all lie on a fixed circle.
2. Show that all circles, passing through one fixed point and having their centres lying on a fixed straight line, pass through a second fixed point.
3. If two circles intersect, prove that their common chord produced bisects their common tangent.
4. Find the locus of the middle points of equal chords in a given circle.
5. Show how to place in a given circle a chord of given length parallel to a given str. line.
6. Find the chord of minimum length through a given point within a given circle.
7. Find the locus of the centres of circles which are touched by two given straight lines.
8. Of all chords drawn through a given point within a circle, the least is that which is bisected at that point.
9. A straight line drawn through one of the points of intersection of two given circles is terminated by the circumferences; show that the angle between the tangents at its extremities is equal to that between the tangents at the point of intersection.

10. Any two chords drawn, one in each, of two equal intersecting circles, through one of their points of intersection and equally inclined to the common chord are equal.

11. Two circles touch each other internally at P ; if AQ and BR be two parallel radii of the two circles drawn in the same sense, show that P, Q, R are in the same str. line.

12. Two equal circles touch one another externally, and two chords are drawn to the two circles through their point of contact at right angles to each other; show that the straight line joining the remaining extremities of the chords is equal to the diameter of either of them.

13. Parallel chords of a circle cut off equal arcs between them and conversely.

14. The oblique sides of a trapezium inscribed in a circle are equal.

15. Two circles intersect at A and B and O is any point on one of them; if OA, OB be produced to cut the other circle in K and L , show that KL is of constant length.

16. Two equal segments of circles are described on opposite sides of the same chord AB ; and through O , the middle point of AB , any str. line POQ is drawn intersecting the arcs of the segments at P and Q ; show that $OP = OQ$.

17. Circles are described on the sides of a quadrilateral as diameters; show that the common chord of any two consecutive circles is parallel to the common chord of the other two.

18. Find the locus of the middle points of chords of a circle, drawn through an external point.

19. If the sum of one pair of opposite sides of a quadrilateral be equal to the sum of the other pair, show that a circle may be inscribed within it.

20. If from an internal point, other than the centre, straight lines are drawn to the circumference of a circle, then the greatest is that which passes through the centre, and the least is the remaining part of that diameter.

And of any other two such lines the greater is that which subtends the greater angle at the centre.

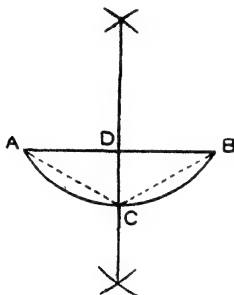
21. If from an external point straight lines are drawn to the circumference of a circle, the greatest is that which passes through the centre, and the least is that which when produced passes through the centre.

And of any other two such lines, the greater is that which subtends the greater angle at the centre.

CHAPTER V
PROBLEMS ON BISECTION OF ARCS AND
CONSTRUCTION OF CIRCLES

PROBLEM 24.

To bisect a given arc of a circle.



Let ACB be an arc of a circle.

It is required to bisect the arc ABC .

Construction. Join AB and bisect it at right angles by DC , meeting the arc at C .

Then C is the required point of bisection.

Proof. Join AC , BC .

Because C is a point on the perp. bisector of AB .

$$\therefore CA = CB.$$

Hence, \therefore the chord CA = the chord CB

\therefore the arc CA = the arc CB .

Q. E. F.

PROBLEM 25.

Given a circle, or an arc of a circle, to find the position of the centre.

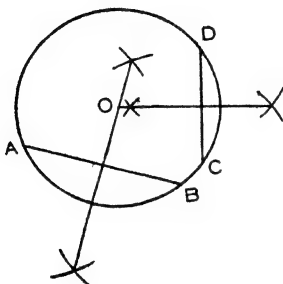


Fig. 1.

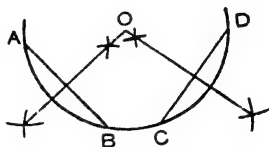


Fig. 2.

Let ABC be a circle, (fig. 1), or an arc of a circle (fig. 2).

It is required to find the position of the centre.

Construction. Let AB , CD be any two chords of the circle, or the arc.

Draw the perp. bisectors of AB and CD , and let them intersect at O .

Then O is the required centre.

Proof. Because A and B are points on the circle or the arc, the centre is equidistant from A and B .

\therefore it lies on the perp. bisector of AB .

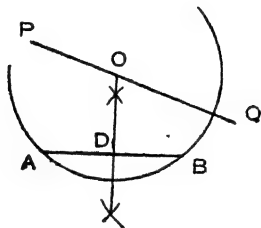
Similarly, the centre lies on the perp. bisector of CD .

\therefore the centre is at O , the point common to these perp. bisectors.

Q. E. F.

PROBLEM 26.

To construct a circle which passes through two given points and has its centre lying on a given straight line.



Let A, B be the given points and PQ , the given straight line.

It is required to draw the circle passing through A, B and having its centre lying on PQ .

Construction. Join AB and bisect it at right angles by OD .

Produce DO , to meet PQ at O .

Draw the circle with O as centre and OA as radius.

This is the required circle.

Proof. \because OD is the perp. bisector of AB , any point on OD is equidistant from A and B .

\therefore the centre of the required circle, being equidistant from A, B , must lie on OD .

Also, the centre of the required circle lies on PQ .

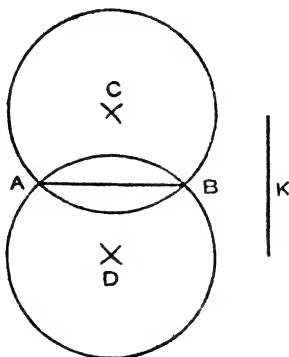
Hence, the centre of the circle, to be constructed, is at O , the point common to DO and PQ .

\therefore the circle with O as centre and OA as radius is the required one. Q. E. F.

Remark : It should be observed that the construction will fail if the given straight line, PQ , be perpendicular to that joining the given points, A, B , for in that case, PQ will be parallel to OD and will not therefore intersect.

PROBLEM 27.

To construct a circle passing through two given points and having a given radius.



Let **A** and **B** be the given points, and **K** represent the length of the given radius.

*It is required to draw a circle, through **A**, **B** having its radius equal to **K**.*

Construction. With centre **A** and radius '**K**' draw a circle ; also, with centre **B** and radius '**K**', draw another circle cutting the former in **C** and **D**.

Then, the circle, with centre **C** and radius **CA**, is the required circle.

Also, the circle with centre **D** and radius **DA**, is another circle satisfying the given conditions.

Thus, there are two solutions of the given problem.

Proof. $\because CA = K$ and $CB = K$,
 $\therefore CA = CB$, each being $= K$.

\therefore the circle whose centre is **C** and radius **CA**, i.e. **K**, passes through **A**, **B**.

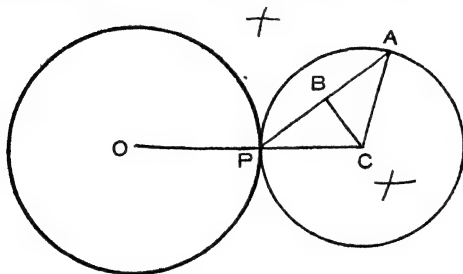
Similarly, the circle with centre **D** and radius **DA** i.e. **K**, passes through **A**, **B**.

Q. E. F.

Remark : The construction *fails* if the given radius be less than half the distance between the given points, for, in that case, the two circles described with centres A , B will not intersect.

PROBLEM 28.

To construct a circle passing through a given point, outside a given circle, and touching the given circle at a given point.



Let A be the given pt. outside the given \odot whose centre is O , and let P be the given pt. on the O^c of the given \odot .

It is required to describe a circle passing through A and touching the given circle at P .

Construction. Join AP ; and draw the \perp bisector of AP meeting OP produced in C .

Then the \odot described with C as centre and CP as radius, will be the reqd. \odot .

Proof. Join CA .

BC being the \perp bisector of AP , $CA = CP$;

and \therefore the \odot described with C as centre and CP as radius, will also pass through A .

Also, since the two \odot 's meet at P which is a pt. on the str. line joining their centres, \therefore the \odot 's touch each other at P .

Hence, the \odot described with C as centre and CP as radius is the reqd. \odot . Q. E. F.

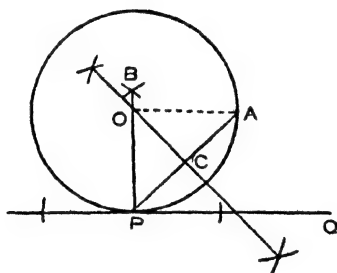
Analysis : The solution of the present problem is guessed in the following manner : Assume a circle to be described passing through A and also touching the given circle at P , and let C be its centre. Then, since the circles touch each other at P , OP produced must pass through C ; also, since $CA = CP$, C must be on the perpendicular

bisector of AP . Hence C is the pt. where the perpendicular bisector of AP meets OP produced.

The process by which the solution of a problem is discovered is called **analysis**; whilst the opposite process, that of giving the necessary construction and proving its correctness, is called **synthesis**.

PROBLEM 29.

To construct a circle which is touched by a given straight line at a given point and passes through another point outside str. line.



Let P be the point on the given str. line PQ and A , another point lying outside PQ .

It is required to draw a circle which passes through A and is touched by PQ at P .

Construction. Through P , draw $PB \perp$ to PQ .

Also, join PA and bisect it at right angles by CO . Let CQ and PB intersect at O .

Draw the circle with centre O and radius OP .

This is the required circle.

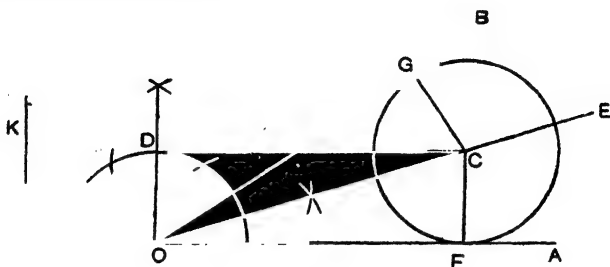
Proof. $\because O$ is a point of the perp. bisector of PA ,
 $OP = OA$.

\therefore the circle with O as centre and OP as radius passes through P and A .

Also, $\because PQ$ is \perp to the radius OP through its extremity, P , on the O^c , PQ touches the circle at P . Q. E. F.

PROBLEM 30.

To construct a circle, with a given radius, touching two given intersecting straight lines.



Let OA, OB be the two given str. lines intersecting at O , and let K be the given radius.

It is required to describe a circle which shall touch OA and OB , and have its radius equal to K .

Construction. Draw OE , the bisector of the $\angle AOB$.

Draw $OD \perp$ to OA , making it $= K$.

Through D , draw a str. line \parallel to OA meeting OE in C .

Draw $CF, CG \perp$ to OA, OB respectively. Then the \odot described with C as centre and CF as radius will be the reqd. \odot .

Proof. C being on the bisector of the $\angle AOB$, $CF = CG$.

\therefore the \odot described with C as centre and CF as radius will also pass through G .

Since OA is \perp to the radius CF at F ,

\therefore OA touches the \odot at F .

Similarly, OB touches the \odot at G .

Thus, OA and OB are both tangents to the \odot(1)

Again, since DF is a rectangle, by construction,

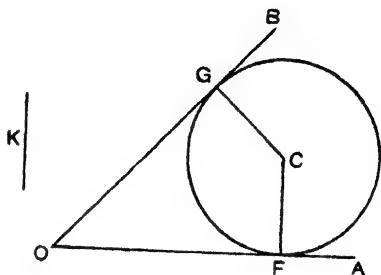
$\therefore CF = DO = K$ (2)

Hence, from (1) and (2), the circle described with C as centre and CF as radius is the reqd. \odot .

Q. E. F.

NOTE. The following is the *analysis* of the problem :—

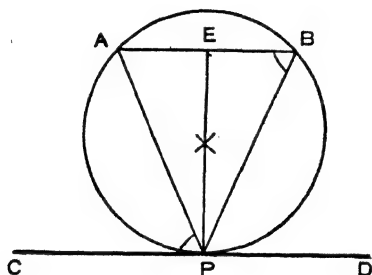
Assume a \odot to be described touching OA and OB at F and G respectively, and having its radius $=K$; and let C be the centre of the \odot . Join CF , CG . Then CF and CG , being radii drawn to the pts of contact, are respectively \perp to OA and OB . Now, since $CF=CG \therefore C$ lies on the bisector of the $\angle AOB$;



and also since $CF=K$, $\therefore C$ lies on a str. line which is \parallel to OA and at a distance $=K$ from it. Hence, if these two lines be drawn, the pt. where they intersect will be the centre of the reqd. circle.

PROBLEM 31.

To construct a circle passing through two given points, and touching a given straight line, parallel to that joining the given points.



Let A, B be the two given pts. and CD the given str. line.

It is required to describe a circle passing through A and B , and also touching the str. line CD .

Join AB . Then AB is \parallel to CD .

Construction. Draw the \perp bisector of AB meeting CD in P .

Then the \odot passing through the pts. A, B, P will be the reqd. \odot .

Proof. Join PA, PB .

Now, P being on the \perp bisector of AB , $PA = PB$;
and \therefore the $\angle PBA =$ the $\angle PAB$.

Since AB is \parallel to CD , \therefore the $\angle CPA =$ the $\angle PAB$.

Hence, the $\angle CPA =$ the $\angle PBA$, in the alt. segment ;

$\therefore CD$ touches the \odot at P .

Hence, ABP is the reqd. \odot .

Q. E. F.

REMARKS ON THE CONSTRUCTION OF CIRCLES

23. From the definition of a circle, it is clear that a circle can be described whenever we know the position of its *centre* and the *length* of its *radius*. Now, the centre is determined, as we have seen in the foregoing constructions, as the *point* of intersection of two loci *e.g.* the point of intersection of two straight lines, or, the points of intersection of two circles, or, the points of intersection of a straight line and a circle etc., and as such, requires *two* given *conditions* for its determination. When the centre is thus found out, the *radius* is obtained as the *distance* of the centre from either another given point or, another straight line, or, as the *distance* between two parallel straight lines etc. and therefore requires another condition to be fulfilled.

Hence, *three independent* conditions must always be given before a circle may be described. As for example.

(1) *To describe a circle through the vertices of a given triangle ;*

[The centre is the pt. of intersection of the perp. bisectors of any two sides and the radius is the distance of the centre from any of the vertices].

(2) *to describe a circle touching the sides of a triangle ;*

[The centre is the pt. of intersection of the bisectors of the angles and the radius is the distance of the centre from any of its sides.]

(3) *to describe a circle through two given points, having its radius equal to a given length ; and so on. See problem 27.*

It is however found that in some cases, more than one solution comes out of the same given conditions ; but in that case, too, it is seen that there is some *intermediate* solution under which the different solutions obtained combine into a *single* one.

24. To facilitate construction of problems, it is desirable that the students should be quite familiar with the following loci :—

(1) *The locus of the centres of circles passing through two fixed points.*

- (2) *The locus of the centres of circles touching two (i) intersecting straight lines, (ii) parallel straight lines.*
- (3) *The locus of the centres of circles touching (i) a given straight line at a given point, (ii) touching a given circle at a given point.*
- (4) *The locus of the centres of circles, having a given radius and touching (i) a given straight line, (ii) a given circle.*
- (5) *The locus of the middle points of chords of a circle, (i) which pass through a given point, (ii) which are of constant length, (iii) which are parallel.*
- (6) *The locus of the vertices of a triangle standing on a given base and having a given vertical angle.*

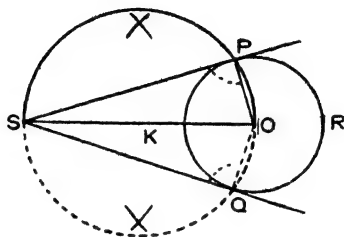
EXERCISE 11

(On Construction of Circles.)

1. Draw a circle through two given points A, B and having its centre at a distance of $2''$ from AB.
2. Describe a circle through two given points, having its centre lying on a given circle of radius $3''$. How many solutions are there?
3. Construct a circle through the points of intersection of two given circles and having its centre lying on a given straight line.
4. Describe a circle touching two given parallel straight lines, and passing through a given point within those lines.
5. Describe a circle touching each of three given straight lines, two of which are parallel and the other intersecting them.
6. Show how to draw a circle touching each of three given straight lines which intersect each other, two by two. How many solutions are possible?
7. Construct a circle touching a given circle and having its centre at a given point.
8. Describe a circle whose centre lies on a given straight line and which touches a given circle at a given point on it.
9. Draw a circle of given radius to touch a given circle and to pass through a given point outside the given circle.
10. Describe a circle of given radius touching two given intersecting circles. How many solutions are there?

PROBLEM 32.

To draw a tangent to a given circle from a given external point.



Let PQR be the given circle whose centre is O , and S , the given external point.

It is required to draw a tangent from S to the circle PQR .

Construction. Join SO and bisect it at K . With K as centre and KO as radius draw a circle to cut the $\odot PQR$, at P .

Join SP .

Then SP is the required tangent.

Proof.

Join PO .

Evidently, SO is the diameter of the $\odot SPO$,

\therefore the $\angle SPO = \text{a rt. } \angle$.

Hence, \because SP is at right angles to the radius OP through a point, P , on the circle PQR , SP is a tangent at P to the $\odot PQR$.

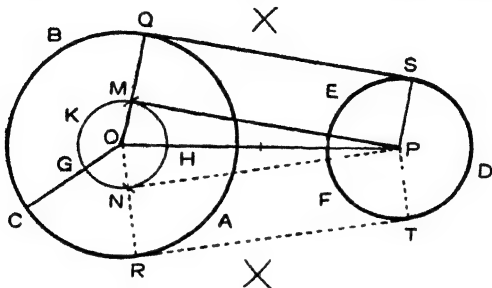
Obs. Since S is without and O is within the $\odot PQR$, the $\odot SPQ$, described on SO as diameter, must intersect the $\odot PQR$ in two different points P and Q . Thus, SQ is also a tangent to the $\odot PQR$, because the $\angle SQO$, being in a semi- \odot , is a rt. angle.

Hence, SP and SQ are the two tangents drawn from S to the $\odot PQR$.

Of. Th. 45A.

PROBLEM 33.

To draw a common tangent to two given circles.



Let ABC and DEF be two given \odot 's whose centres are O and P respectively, the radius of the first \odot being greater than the radius of the second.

It is required to draw a common tangent to the \odot 's ABC and DEF .

Construction. Draw any radius OC of the $\odot ABC$

(i) From CO cut off $CG =$ the radius of the $\odot DEF$.

With O as centre and OG as radius, describe the $\odot GKH$.

Draw PM, PN tangents to the $\odot GKH$, from P

Join OM, ON and produce them to meet the $\odot ABC$ at Q, R respectively.

In the $\odot DEF$, draw the radius $PS \parallel$ to OQ , and the radius $PT \parallel$ to OR .

Join QS, RT .

Then QS as well as RT are common tangents to the \odot 's ABC and DEF .

Proof. Since PM touches the $\odot GKH$ at M ,

\therefore the $\angle OMP$ is a rt. \angle ;

and \therefore the $\angle PMQ$ is also a rt. \angle .

Now, $OQ = OC$, and of these the parts OM, OG are equal;

$\therefore MQ = CG$.

Hence $PS = MQ$; and PS is also \parallel to MQ , by construction;

$\therefore PSQM$ is a parallelogram.

Also, since the $\angle PMQ$ of this parallelogram is a rt. \angle .

\therefore all its \angle 's are rt. \angle 's.

Thus the \angle 's OQS and PSQ are each a rt. \angle ;

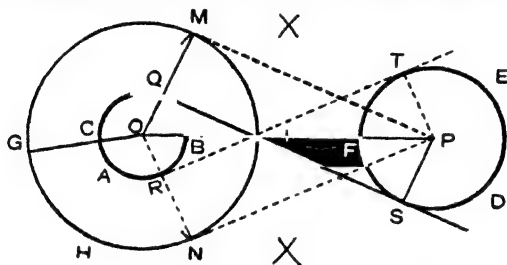
$\therefore QS$ is a tangent to the $\odot ABC$ as well as to the $\odot DEF$.

In the same way it may be proved that RT is a tangent to both the given \odot 's.

Q. E. F.

(ii) From OC produced cut off $CG =$ the radius of the $\odot DEF$.

With O as centre and OG as radius describe the $\odot GMH$.



Draw PM, PN tangents to the $\odot GMH$.

Join OM, ON cutting the $\odot ABC$ at Q and R respectively.

In the $\odot DEF$, draw the radius $PS \parallel$ to MO , and the radius $PT \parallel$ to NO .

Join QS, RT .

Then QS as well as RT are common tangents to the \odot 's ABC and DEF .

[The proof is left as an exercise for the student.]

25. Definition : It is clear that there are *four common tangents* to two given \odot 's, if the \odot 's do not cut each other. A common tangent whose pts. of contact are on the same side of the line joining the centres is called a **direct common tangent**; whilst a common tangent whose pts. of contact are on opposite sides of the line joining the centres is called a **transverse common tangent**. We have *direct common tangents* in the first diagram, and *transverse common tangents* in the second.

Hence the segment of the \odot described with O as centre and OA as radius will pass through B , and contain an angle equal to the $\angle C$.

Proof. Now, since AD is \perp to the radius OA ,
 $\therefore AD$ touches the \odot at A .

Hence the $\angle AFB$ in the segment AFB = the $\angle BAD$ = the $\angle C$.

Thus, AFB is the required segment.

Q. E. F.

EXERCISE 12

1. Place a chord of length $2''$ through a given point on the circumference of a circle of radius $2''$.

2. Draw in a circle a chord of given length, making an angle of 45° with another given chord.

3. Describe a circle of radius equal to 6 centimetres and place in it two chords, each of length 7 centimetres. Measure the distances of their middle points from the centre of the circle and verify that they are equal.

4. AB is a chord of length $2''$ in a circle whose radius is $2''$ and centre is O ; through A , AC is drawn at right angles to AB to meet the circle at C . Verify that the points B , O , C lie in one straight line.

5. Describe a circle of radius 13 cm., and from the centre draw a straight line 5 cm. in length. At the other extremity of this line erect a perpendicular chord, and show that its length is 24 cm.

6. Describe two circles each of one inch radius, and place in each a chord one inch long. Verify that the angles subtended by the chords at the respective centres are equal.

7. Describe two circles, each of $2''$ radius, and in each draw a pair of radii containing an angle of 120° . Verify that the chords subtending these angles are equal, and that their distances from the respective centres are equal.

8. In a circle of $3''$ radius place two chords, each measuring $2''$, and verify by actual measurement with the help of a protractor, that the angles which they subtend at the centre, are equal.

9. A pair of tangents is drawn to a circle of $3''$ radius from a point distant $5''$ from the centre. Show by actual measurement that

their lengths as also the length of the chord of contact are $4''$ and $4\frac{1}{2}''$ respectively.

10. Draw a tangent to a circle, of diameter $6''$, from a given point, distant $4''$ from the centre; how many solutions are there?

11. Draw a tangent to a circle of $2''\cdot 5$ radius from a point, distant $6''\cdot 5$ from the centre, and verify that its length is equal to $6''$; also that the length of the chord of contact is $4''\cdot 6$ nearly.

12. Describe two circles of radii equal to $2''$ and $3''$ respectively, touching each other externally, at a given point.

13. Describe three equal circles of radius $1''$ touching one another externally.

14. Describe three circles of given radii touching one another externally.

15. The centres of two circles are $6\frac{1}{2}$ inches apart, and radii are $3\frac{1}{2}''$ and $1''$ respectively. Draw their direct common tangents, and show that their lengths are each equal to $6''$.

16. Describe two circles of $2\frac{1}{2}''$ and $1\frac{1}{2}''$ radius respectively, having their centres $5''$ apart. Draw their direct common tangents. Verify that they meet, when produced, on the line of centres.

17. In the circles of ex. 16, draw the transverse common tangents and show that they intersect on the line of their centres.

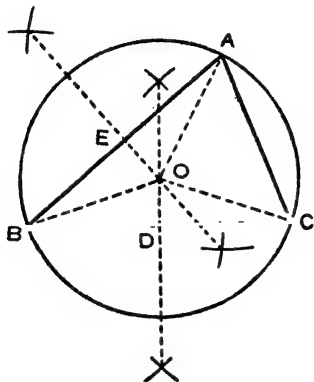
18. The centres of two circles are $5''$ apart, and their radii are $3\frac{1}{4}''$ and $1\frac{1}{4}''$ respectively. Draw their direct common tangents. Are there *two* transverse common tangents?

19. On a straight line, $2''$ long, describe a segment of a circle containing an angle of (i) 45° , (ii) 60° .

20. Construct a circle circumscribing a triangle one of whose angles is equal to a given angle.

PROBLEM 35.

To circumscribe a circle about a given triangle.



Let ABC be the given triangle.

It is required to draw a circle about the $\triangle ABC$.

Construction. Bisect the sides AB and BC at rt. angles by OE and OD respectively and let them meet at O . Join OB . With centre O and radius OB draw a circle.

This circle will pass through A, B, C and is, therefore, the required one.

Proof. Because O is a point on the perp. bisector of BC ,
 $\therefore OB = OC$.
 Similarly, $OB = OA$.
 $\therefore OA = OB = OC$.

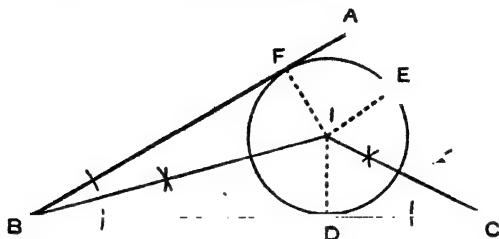
\therefore the \odot with centre O and radius OB will pass through A and C , and is, therefore, the required circum-circle. Q. E. F.

NOTE 1. The circum-centre of a triangle lies *within* or *without* the triangle according as it is *acute-angled* or *obtuse-angled*. When the triangle is a *right-angled* one, the circum-centre is the middle point of the hypotenuse.

NOTE 2. It may be easily seen that if O be joined to the middle point F of AC , OF is perp. to AC . Thus, *the three perp. bisectors of the sides of a triangle meet in a point, which is the circum-centre of the triangle.*

PROBLEM 36.

To inscribe a circle in a given triangle.



Let ABC be the given triangle.

*It is required to draw a circle which will be touched by all the sides **internally**.*

Construction. Bisect the \angle^s ABC , ACB by BI and CI , which meet at I .

From I , draw $ID \perp$ to BC .

Then, the \odot with centre I and the radius ID is the required one.

Proof. From I draw IE and IF perp^s on CA and AB respectively.

Because I is on the bisector BI , of the $\angle ABC$,

$$ID = IF.$$

Similarly, $ID = IE$, [$\because I$ lies on CI .]

$$\therefore ID = IE = IF.$$

\therefore the \odot drawn with the centre I and the radius ID passes through E and F .

Again, because BC is perp. to the radius ID , BC touches the circle at D .

Similarly, CA and AB touch the \odot at E and F respectively.

\therefore the \odot DEF is inscribed in the $\triangle ABC$.

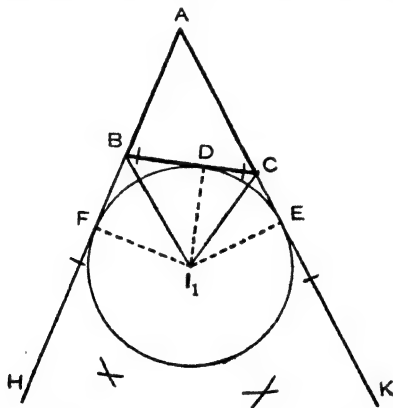
Obs. It may be easily shown by joining A to I that AI bisects the $\angle BAC$. Thus, the three bisectors of the angles of a triangle meet in a point, which is the centre of the circle inscribed in the triangle.

26. Definitions : (1) The circle inscribed in a triangle is called the **in-circle**, its centre, the **in-centre** and its radius, the **in-radius**, of the triangle.

(2) The circle which is touched by *only one* side of a triangle and two other *sides produced* is called an **escribed circle**, shortly an **ex-circle**, of the triangle; and its centre and radius are respectively called an **ex-centre** and an **ex-radius** of the triangle.

PROBLEM 37.

To draw an escribed circle of a given triangle.



Let ABC be the given triangle, of which the sides AB and AC are produced to H and K respectively.

It is required to draw the circle touching BC , and AB , AC produced.

Construction. Bisect the $\angle HBC$, KCB by BI_1 and CI_1 respectively, which intersect at I_1 . Draw I_1D , I_1E , I_1F perp. on BC , AK , AH respectively. The circle drawn with the centre I_1 and radius I_1F is the required one.

Proof. Because I_1 is a point on BI_1 , $I_1D = I_1F$; similarly, $I_1D = I_1E$, $\therefore I_1$ lies on CI_1 .

$\therefore I_1D = I_1E = I_1F$. Hence, the \odot with I_1 as centre and I_1F as radius passes through D and E .

Again, since BC , CK , BH are perpⁿ to the radii I_1D , I_1E , I_1F , the \odot is touched by BC , CK , BH . Q. E. F.

Obs. 1. It may be shown that AI_1 bisects the $\angle BAC$; thus, the internal bisector of one angle of a triangle and the external bisectors of the other two, meet in a point, which is an ex-centre of the triangle.

Obs. 2. By producing the sides BC , BA , another ex-circle may be drawn touching the side CA and BC , BA , produced. Similarly, there is another ex-circle touching AB and CB , CA produced. Thus, there are three ex-circles of a triangle each one touching one of its sides and the two others produced.

EXERCISE 13

1. Draw a circle to touch each of two given parallel straight lines and a transversal intersecting them.

2. Two straight lines are *almost* parallel. Bisect the angle between them, giving all lines of construction.

3. If I be the in-centre of a triangle ABC , prove that

$$\angle BIC = 90 + \frac{A}{2}.$$

4. If I_1 , be the ex-centre of the triangle ABC opposite to the angle A , prove that

$$\angle BI_1C = 90 - \frac{A}{2}.$$

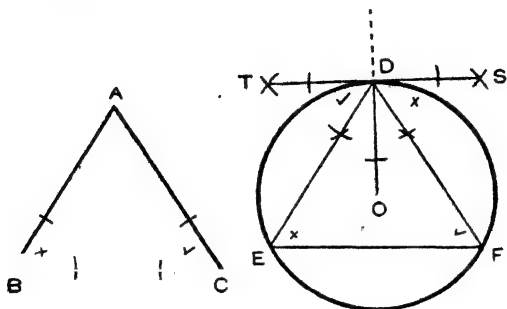
5. The inscribed circle of the triangle ABC touches BC at D , and the circle escribed to the triangle, opposite to A , touches BC at D_1 . If $AB > AC$ and X is the middle point of BC , prove that

$$XD = XD_1 = \frac{1}{2}(AB - AC).$$

6. Show that the bisectors of the vertical angles of triangles standing on a given base and having the sum of their base angles equal to a given angle are concurrent.

PROBLEM 38.

In a given circle to inscribe a triangle equiangular to a given triangle.



Let be O the centre of the given \odot , and ABC the given Δ .

It is required to inscribe in the circle (O) a triangle equiangular to the triangle ABC .

Construction. Take any radius OD , and through D draw $TS \perp$ to OD ; then TS is the tangent at D .

Draw the chord DE making the $\angle TDE =$ the $\angle ACB$; and draw the chord DF making the $\angle SDF =$ the $\angle ABC$.

Join EF .

Then DEF is the reqd. Δ .

Proof. Since TS touches the \odot at D ,

\therefore the $\angle TDE =$ the $\angle DFE$, in the alt. segment;

and the $\angle SDF =$ the $\angle DEF$, in the alt. segment.

Hence the $\angle DFE =$ the $\angle ACB$.

and the $\angle DEF =$ the $\angle ABC$;

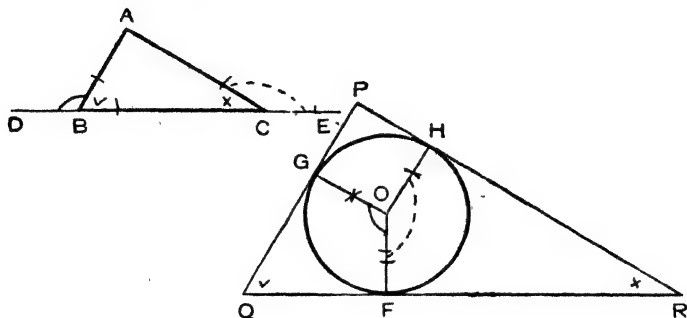
\therefore the remaining $\angle EDF =$ the remaining $\angle BAC$.

Thus, the ΔDEF inscribed in the given \odot is equiangular to the ΔABC . Q. E. F.

NOTE. To inscribe an equilateral triangle in a given circle, all that we have to do is to construct an equilateral triangle outside the circle and then to inscribe in the circle a triangle equiangular to the triangle constructed, in the manner indicated above. In this case therefore, each of the angles TDE and SDF would be equal to an angle of an equilateral triangle, i.e. equal to one-third of two right angles.

PROBLEM 39.

About a given circle to circumscribe a triangle equiangular to a given triangle.



Let O be the centre of the given \odot , and ABC the given Δ .

It is required to circumscribe about the circle (O) a triangle equiangular to the triangle ABC .

Construction. Produce BC both ways to D and E .

Take any radius OF of the \odot .

Draw the radius OG making the $\angle FOG = \text{the ext. } \angle ABD$; and draw the radius OH making the $\angle FOH = \text{the ext. } \angle ACE$.

Draw tangents to the \odot at the pts. F, G, H , forming the ΔPQR .

Then PQR is the reqd. Δ .

Proof. The $\angle OFQ$ and OGQ being rt. \angle 's, the remaining $\angle FOG$ and GQF of the quadl. $OFQG$ are supplementary.

Now, the $\angle ABC$ is the supplement of the $\angle ABD$, and the $\angle GQF$ is the supplement of the $\angle FOG$;

but the $\angle ABD = \text{the } \angle FOG$;

\therefore the $\angle ABC = \text{the } \angle PQR$.

Similarly, the $\angle ACB = \text{the } \angle PRQ$.

\therefore the remaining $\angle QPR = \text{the remaining } \angle BAC$.

Thus, the ΔPQR circumscribed about the given \odot is equiangular to the ΔABC .

Q. E. F.

NOTE 1. To circumscribe an equilateral triangle about a given circle, all that we have to do is to construct an equilateral triangle outside the circle and then circumscribe about the circle a triangle equiangular to the triangle constructed, in the manner indicated above. In this case, therefore, each of the angles FOG, FOH would be equal to the supplement of an angle of an equilateral triangle, i.e., equal to two-thirds of two right angles.

NOTE 2. An equilateral triangle is evidently a *regular* figure of three sides, for an equilateral Δ is also equiangular. Hence, we know how to construct a regular figure of three sides in or about a given \odot .

EXERCISE 14

(On Circles in connection with triangles.)

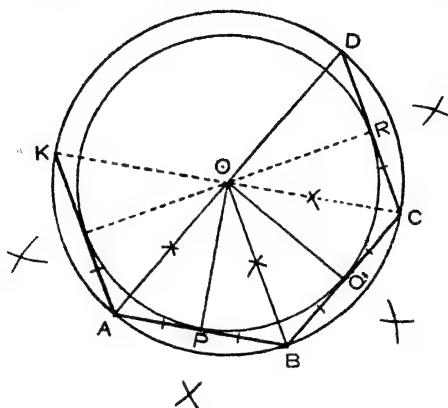
1. Draw a circle of 1" radius and inscribe an equilateral triangle in it. Show that the length of a side of the triangle is 1.73 inches.
2. Circumscribe a circle about a triangle whose sides are 3", 4" and 5". Measure the length of its radius.
3. Explain how to construct a triangle, having given the length of its circum-radius and two of its angles.
4. ABC is an equilateral triangle, whose sides are each 2" in length. Draw the escribed circle touching the side CA. Measure the length of its radius.
5. Draw a circle of radius 1" and describe an equilateral triangle about it. Show that the length of a side of the triangle is 3.46".
6. Compare the areas of the triangles in Ex. 1 and Ex. 5.
7. Draw a circle of 1" radius. Inscribe in it, and describe about it, triangles equiangular to a triangle whose sides are 1.3", 1.4" and 1.5". Show that the greatest sides of the triangles so drawn, are 1.84" and 3.75", respectively.
8. If I, I_1, I_2, I_3 be the in-centre and the three ex-centres opposite respectively to the angles A, B, C of a triangle ABC, and the sides opposite to these angles in order be a, b, c , verify that I_2, A, I_1 ; I_3, B, I_1 ; I_3, C, I_2 are collinear.

ON CONSTRUCTION OF CIRCLES IN CONNECTION WITH REGULAR POLYGONS

Definition. A *polygon* is said to be **regular** when all its sides and angles are equal.

PROBLEM 40.

To draw a circle (i) *in*, or (ii) *about*, a regular polygon



Let ABCD.....K be a regular polygon of n sides.

(i) It is required to inscribe a circle about it ;
and (ii) to circumscribe a circle about it.

Construction. Bisect the \angle 's A, B by AO, BO which meet at O, suppose.

Join OC, OD,...OK.

Also, from O, draw OP, OQ, OR,.....perp^s on AB, BC, CD,.....respectively.

Then, (i) the circle with O as centre and OP as radius is the required inscribed circle ;

and (ii) the circle with the centre O and radius OA is the required circumscribed circle.

Proof. Because, in the Δ 's OBA, OBC,

OB, BA=OB, BC and the \angle OBA=the \angle OBC,

\therefore OA=OC ;

and the \angle OCB=the \angle OAB= $\frac{1}{2}$ the \angle KAB= $\frac{1}{2}$ the \angle BCD.

\therefore OC bisects the \angle BCD.

Similarly, OD bisects the \angle D, and so on.

Thus, the bisectors of all the angles meet at O.

Hence, \therefore the $\angle A =$ the $\angle B =$ the $\angle C, \dots$
we have $OA = OB = OC = \dots$

Also, since O lies on the bisectors of the $\angle A, B, C, \dots$
it is equidistant from the sides.

$\therefore OP = OQ = OR = \dots$

\therefore (i) the circle with O as centre and OP as radius passes through Q, R, and touches the sides AB, BC, because AB, BC, ... are perp^s to the radii OP, OQ, ...

and (ii) the circle with O as centre and OA as radius passes through B, C,

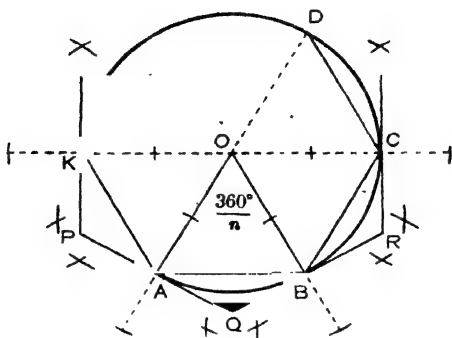
Q. E. F.

EXERCISE 15

1. The base of an isosceles triangle is 14" and each side is 25" show that the length of the in-radius is 5.25".
2. Prove that the in-radius of an equilateral triangle is equal in length to one-third of its height.
3. Inscribe a circle in a given square and verify that the diameter of the circle is equal to a side of the square.
4. Inscribe a circle in a given rhombus and show that the diameter of the circle is equal to the height of the rhombus.
5. Show that the circum-radius of an equilateral triangle is two-thirds of its height.
6. Construct the circum-circle of a triangle whose sides are 7, 8, 9 yds. Verify that the length of the radius of the circle is 4 yds. 2 ft. 1.04 in.

PROBLEM 41.

To draw a regular polygon (i) *in*, or (ii) *about*, a given circle.



Let ABC be a given circle whose centre is O .

(i) To inscribe a regular polygon of n sides in the circle, and (ii) to circumscribe a regular polygon of n sides about the circle.

(i) **Analysis.** Suppose $ABCD\dots$ to be a regular polygon inscribed in the \odot , so that the sides AB, BC, CD, \dots are the consecutive chords of the circle.

Hence, since $AB = BC = CD = \dots$,

$$\angle AOB = \angle BOC = \angle COD = \dots$$

Thus, the angle at O is divided into as many equal parts as the polygon has sides.

$$\therefore \angle AOB = \angle BOC = \angle COD = \dots = \frac{360^\circ}{n}, n \text{ being the no. of sides.}$$

Hence the following construction :—

Construction. Join O to any point A , on the \odot ; at O , draw a radius OB , making the $\angle AOB = \frac{360^\circ}{n}$; join AB .

Place consecutive chords BC, CD, \dots , each equal to AB , round the whole \odot .

The figure, so formed, is the required regular polygon.

(ii) Join O to any pt. A on the \odot^{ee} .

At O , draw radii OB, OC, OD, \dots round the whole \odot^{ee} , making the $\angle AOB = \text{the } \angle BOC = \text{the } \angle COD = \dots = \frac{360^\circ}{n}$.

At A, B, C, D, \dots draw tangents to the \odot meeting each other at P, Q, R, S, \dots

Then $PQRS, \dots$ is the reqd. regular polygon circumscribing the \odot .

[The proof is obvious and is left as an exercise to the student.]

Obs. It is to be observed that such constructions are not *possible* purely with the help of a *ruler* and a *compass* except for certain *special* values of n . As for example, as there is no method of constructing an angle equal to $\frac{1}{4}$ of 360° , purely with *ruler* and *compass*, a regular *heptagon* (*i.e.* of seven sides) can neither be inscribed in or circumscribed about a given circle, except with the use of a protractor.

EXERCISE 15A

1. Construct a square (i) *in* or (ii) *about* a given circle.

[Let O be the centre of the \odot . Take any diameter and draw another diameter \perp to the former. The figure obtained by joining the extremities is a square inscribed in the circle. Again, the figure formed by the tangents at the extremities is a circumscribing square.]

2. Construct a regular hexagon *in* or *about* a given circle.

[$\angle AOB$ in this case $= 60^\circ$; hence, place consecutive chords AB, BC, CD, \dots each equal to the radius. The fig. $ABCD, \dots$ is the reqd. inscribed hexagon. Draw tangents at A, B, C, D, \dots to construct the circumscribing hexagon.]

3. Construct a regular polygon (*i.e.* of 8 sides) *in* or *about* a given circle.

4. Construct a regular dodecagon (*i.e.* of 12 sides) *in* or *about* a given circle.

5. Construct a regular polygon of (i) 16, (ii) 24, sides *in* or *about* a given circle.

6. Show by actual measurement that the perimeter of a regular hexagon inscribed in a circle of radius 4" is 2 ft.

7. About a circle, 2" in diameter, describe a regular hexagon; verify, by actual measurement and calculation, that the area of the hexagon is 3.46 sq. inches.

8. Compare the areas of inscribed and circumscribed regular hexagons of a given circle.

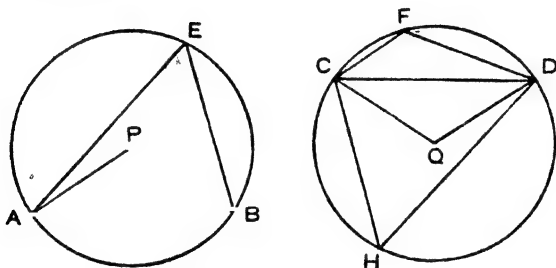
9. Each side of an octagonal field is 100 yds.; show that the price of the field at Rs. 225 per acre is Rs. 2244. 9a. 9p.

CHAPTER VI

MISCELLANEOUS PROPOSITION

I. On Circles and Triangles.

If two triangles standing on equal bases have vertical angles that are either equal or supplementary, then their circum-circles are equal.



Let the Δ° AEB, CFD standing on equal bases AB, CD have their vertical \angle° AEB, CFD supplementary.

Let P, Q be the centres of the \odot° circumscribed about the Δ° AEB, CFD respectively.

It is required to prove that these two circles have equal radii.

Proof. Join PA, PB, QC, QD.

Take any pt. H on the arc conjugate to the arc CFD. Join CH, DH.

Then the \angle CHD = the \angle AEB,
each of them being supplementary to the \angle CFD ;
 \therefore the \angle CQD = the \angle APB, (double of equal \angle°).

Now, since the \angle PAB = the \angle PBA, each of them = $\frac{1}{2}$ their sum = $\frac{1}{2}$ the supplement of the \angle APB.

Similarly, each of the \angle° QCD, QDC
= $\frac{1}{2}$ the supplement of the \angle CQD.

Hence, each of the Δ° PAB, PBA = each of the \angle° QCD, QDC.

Thus, the two isos. $\triangle PAB$, QCD , have their bases equal, and also the \angle ' at the base of the one = the \angle ' at the base of the other ;

\therefore these two \triangle ' are congruent.

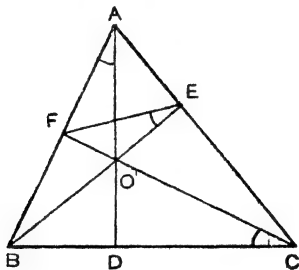
Hence, each of the sides PA , PB = each of the sides QC , QD .

Thus, the radii of the two \odot ' are equal, which proves the proposition. Q. E. D.

NOTE. It is obvious, from the foregoing demonstration, how to deal with the case when the two triangles have their vertical angles equal.

II. Ortho-centre : Pedal Triangle.

1. *The perpendiculars drawn from the vertices of a triangle to the opposite sides are concurrent.*



Let BE , CF be \perp ' to the sides, CA , AB respectively, of the $\triangle ABC$; and let them intersect at O .

Join AO and produce it to meet BC at D .

It is required to prove that AD is \perp to BC .

Proof.

Join FE .

The \angle ' OFA , OEA are supplementary, each of them being a rt. \angle ;

\therefore the quadl. $AFOE$ is cyclic,

\therefore the $\angle FAO$ = the $\angle FEO$, in the same segment.... (α)

Again, the $\angle BFC = \text{the } \angle BEC$, each being a rt. \angle ;

\therefore the four pts. B, F, E, C are concyclic,

\therefore the $\angle FEB = \text{the } \angle FCB$, in the same segment.... (β)

Hence, from (α) and (β),

the $\angle BAD = \text{the } \angle BCF$.

Now in the Δ ' BAD, BCF, the \angle at B is common, and the $\angle BAD = \text{the } \angle BCF$;

\therefore the remaining $\angle ADB = \text{the remaining } \angle CFB = \text{a rt. } \angle$.

Hence, AD is \perp to BC.

Q. E. D.

NOTE. For an alternative proof, see Book I, p. 110.

27. Definitions. (i) The point of intersection of the perpendiculars from the vertices of a triangle to the opposite sides is called the **ortho-centre** of the triangle.

Thus, in the preceding diagram, the point O is the *ortho-centre* of the triangle ABC.

(ii) The triangle formed by joining the feet of the perpendiculars drawn from the vertices of any given triangle to the opposite sides is called the **pedal triangle** of the given triangle.

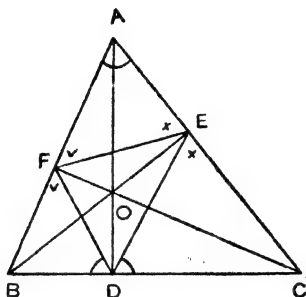
In the preceding diagram, the triangle DEF is the *pedal triangle* of the triangle ABC.

COR. If O is the ortho-centre of a triangle ABC, the circum-circles of the four triangles ABC, BOC, COA, AOB are equal to one another.

In the preceding diagram the quadl. AFOE being cyclic, the $\angle FAE$ is supplementary to the $\angle FOE$ and is \therefore supplementary to the $\angle BOC$. Thus, the Δ ' BAC, BOC stand on the same base and have their vertical Δ ' supplementary ;

\therefore the circum- \odot of the Δ BOC is = that of the Δ ABC. Similarly, the circum- \odot of each of the Δ ' COA, AOB is = that of the Δ ABC. Hence the four circum- \odot ' are equal to one another.

2. In an acute-angled triangle the perpendiculars drawn from the vertices to the opposite sides bisect the angles of the pedal triangle.



Let O be the ortho-centre, and DEF the pedal Δ , of the acute-angled ΔABC .

It is required to prove that AD , BE , CF bisect the \angle 's D , E , F of the ΔDEF , respectively.

Proof. The $\angle ADB =$ the $\angle AEB$, each being a rt. \angle .

\therefore the quadl. $AEDB$ is cyclic.

Hence, the $\angle EDC =$ the $\angle BAE$;
and similarly, the $\angle FDB =$ the $\angle CAF$,

\therefore the $\angle EDC =$ the $\angle FDB$;
and the whole $\angle ADC =$ the whole $\angle ADB$, each $= 90^\circ$.
 \therefore the remaining $\angle ADE =$ the remaining $\angle ADF$.

Thus, AD bisects the $\angle EDF$.

Similarly, BE and CF bisect the \angle 's DEF and DFE respectively. Q. E. D.

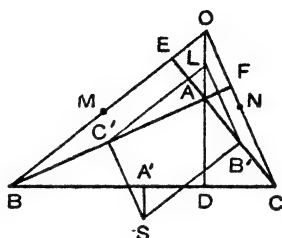
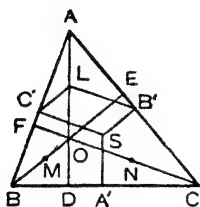
COR. 1. The sides of the pedal triangle are equally inclined to that side of the original triangle on which they meet.

[See proof of the Theorem.]

COR. 2. The triangles AFE , BDF , CDE are equiangular to one another and to the original triangle.

[See proof of the Theorem.]

3. The distance of each vertex of a triangle from the ortho-centre is double the distance of the circum-centre from the opposite side.



Let O be the ortho-centre of the $\triangle ABC$; AD , BE , CF being the \perp^s from A , B , C on the opposite sides.

Let S be the circum-centre of the $\triangle ABC$, and A' , B' , C' the mid-pts. of the sides opposite to A , B , C respectively.

Then SA' , SB' , SC' are \perp^s respectively to BC , CA , AB .

It is required to prove that $AO = 2SA'$, $BO = 2SB'$, $CO = 2SC'$.

Proof. SA' is \parallel to AD , because both of them are \perp^s to BC .

Similarly, SB' is \parallel to BE , and SC' is \parallel to CF . Let L , M , N be the mid-pts. of AO , BO , CO respectively.

Join LB' , LC' .

Now, $B'L$ passes through the mid-pts. of CA and OA ;

$\therefore B'L$ is \parallel to CO and \therefore to SC' ;
similarly, $C'L$ is \parallel to BO and \therefore to SB' ;

Hence the quadl. SL is a par^m;

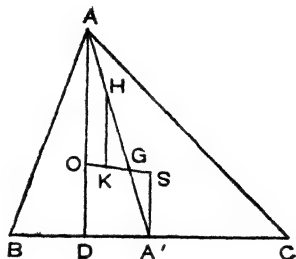
$\therefore SB' = C'L = \frac{1}{2}BO$,
and $SC' = B'L = \frac{1}{2}CO$.

Similarly, by joining MC' , MA' , (or NA' , NB'), it can be shewn that $SA' = \frac{1}{2}AO$. Q. E. D.

NOTE. If O is the ortho-centre of any given $\triangle ABC$, the following constructions for the circum-centre should be carefully noted. Through A' , the mid-pt. of the side opp. to A , draw $A'S \parallel$ to, and in the same sense as, OA ; make $A'S = \frac{1}{2}OA$. Then S is the circum-centre of the given \triangle .

OO. *The circum-centre, the centroid and the ortho-centre of a triangle are collinear.*

Let S be the circum-centre, and O the ortho-centre, of the $\triangle ABC$; and let A' be the mid-pt. of the side BC . Join SA' and SO ; also join AA' , cutting OS in G . Let H, K be the mid-pt. of AG and OG respectively; join HK . Now



HK is \parallel to AO and $=\frac{1}{2}AO$; $\therefore HK$ is equal and \parallel to SA' , and \therefore the quadr. $HKA'S$ is a par^m. But the diagonals of a par^m bisect each other; $\therefore A'G=GH=\frac{1}{2}AG$. Hence, G is the centroid of the $\triangle ABC$, and it lies on the line SO , which proves the corollary.

EXERCISE 16

1. If O be the ortho-centre of a triangle ABC and if AO be produced to meet the circum-circle at P , show that OP is bisected at right angles by BC .

2. If O be the in-centre of a triangle ABC , and if AO, BO, CO be produced to meet the circum-circle in P, Q, R respectively, then O is the ortho-centre of the triangle PQR .

[$\angle PRC = \angle PAC = \frac{1}{2}\angle A$; similarly, $\angle CRQ = \frac{1}{2}\angle B$ and $\angle RPA = \frac{1}{2}\angle C$; hence, if QR meet AO in D , $\angle PRD + \angle RPD = \frac{1}{2}\angle A + \frac{1}{2}\angle B + \frac{1}{2}\angle C = \text{one rt. } \angle$; $\therefore \angle PDR = \text{one rt. } \angle$; hence etc.]

3. If O be the ortho-centre of a triangle ABC , show that A, B, C are the ortho-centres of the triangles BOC, COA and AOB respectively.

4. Deduce from Ex. 3 that the circum-circles of the triangles BOC, COA, AOB are equal, each being equal to that of the triangle ABC .

[Let S be the circum-centre and A' , the mid-pt. of BC . Then, SA' is \perp to BC and $=\frac{1}{2}AO$. Produce SA' to P , making $A'P=SA'$ ($=\frac{1}{2}AO$); then P is the circum-centre of the $\triangle BOC$. Also, $POAS$ being evidently a par^m, $PO=SA=\text{circum-radius of } \triangle ABC$; hence etc.]

5. If O is the ortho-centre and S the circum-centre of the triangle ABC and if A', B', C' are the circum-centres of the triangles OBC, OCA, OAB , show that O is the circum-centre and S the ortho-centre of the triangle $A'B'C'$. [Apply *Ex* 3, 4.]

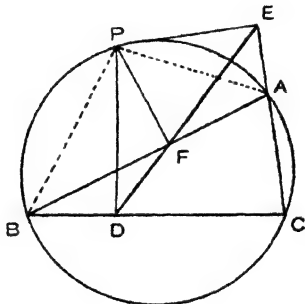
6. Show that the angles of the pedal triangle of the triangle ABC are supplements of the angles $2A, 2B, 2C$.

7. Construct a triangle having given a vertex, the circum-centre and the ortho-centre.

8. Construct a triangle having given the circum-centre, the ortho-centre and the middle point of the base.

III. Simson's Line or the Pedal Line.

If perpendiculars be drawn to the sides of a triangle from any point on the circum-circle, then the feet of these perpendiculars lie in one straight line.



From any pt. P on the circum- \odot of the $\triangle ABC$, let PD, PE, PF be drawn \perp to BC, CA, AB respectively.

Join DF, FE .

It is required to prove that DF, FE are in one str. line.

Proof. Join PA, PB .

Since the $\angle PDB = \angle PFB$, each being a rt. \angle , the quadl. $PFDB$ is cyclic.

Also, since the $\angle^* \text{PEA}$ and PFA are supplementary, each being a rt. \angle , the quadl. PFAE is cyclic.

Now, the quadl. PBCA being cyclic, the $\angle \text{PBC} = \text{the } \angle \text{PAE}$;

and, the quadl. PFAE being cyclic, the $\angle \text{PAE} = \text{the } \angle \text{PFE}$.

Hence, the $\angle \text{PBD} = \text{the } \angle \text{PFE}$.

But, the quadl. PFDB being cyclic, the $\angle^* \text{PBD}$ and PFD are supplementary :

\therefore the $\angle^* \text{PFE}$ and PFD are supplementary; $\therefore \text{DF, FE}$ are in one str. line.

Q. E. D.

23. Definition. The line DFE is called **pedal line** of the point P with respect to the triangle ABC .

EXERCISE 17

1. If the feet of the perpendiculars from a point to the sides of a triangle be collinear, prove that the point lies on the circum-circle of the triangle.

2. From a point P on the circum-circle of a triangle ABC , PL and PM are drawn perps. to the sides BC and CA ; if LM , produced, meets AB (produced if necessary) at N , show that PN is perp. to AB .

3. From a point P on the circum-circle of a triangle ABC , PL is drawn perp. to the side BC and is produced to meet the circum-circle at Q ; show that AQ is parallel to the *pedal line* of P .

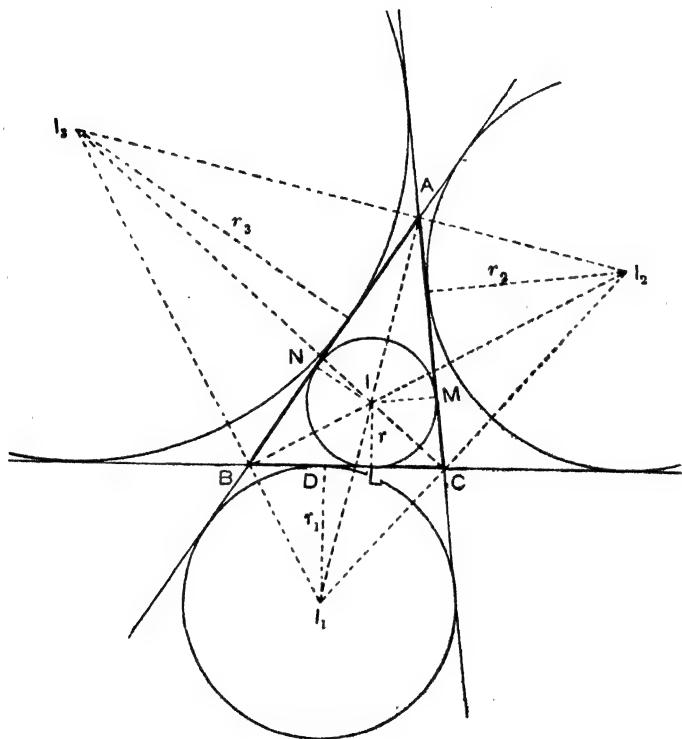
4. If, in a triangle ABC , the *pedal line* of a point P meets the side AC , the angle which the *pedal line* makes with AC is complementary to what the arc BP subtends at any point on the circumference.

5. The angle between the *pedal lines* of any two points P and Q on the circum-circle of a triangle is equal to the angle subtended by the arc PQ at the circumference.

EXERCISE 18

(On the Inscribed and Escribed Circles of a Triangle.)

1. If I be the in-centre and I_1, I_2, I_3 be the three ex-centres of a triangle ABC ,



prove that

- (i) A, I, I_1 are collinear ;
- (ii) B, I, I_2 „ „
- (iii) C, I, I_3 „ „

2. Prove that

- (i) I_3, A, I_2 lie on a str. line;
- (ii) I_2, C, I_1 " " " " ;
- (iii) I_1, B, I_3 " " " " .

3. Show that I_1A, I_2B, I_3C are at right angles to I_2I_3, I_3I_1, I_1I_2 respectively.

4. Show that the triangle ABC is the pedal triangle of the $\Delta I_1I_2I_3$.

5. Show that the angles of the triangle $I_1I_2I_3$ are

$$90^\circ - \frac{A}{2}, 90^\circ - \frac{B}{2}, 90^\circ - \frac{C}{2}.$$

6. If the in-circle of the ΔABC touch the sides BC, CA, AB at L, M, N respectively, and if $2s$ represent the perimeter of the triangle, prove that

- (i) $AN = AM = s - a$;
- (ii) $BN = BL = s - b$;
- (iii) $CL = CM = s - c$, where a, b, c denote the lengths of the sides BC, CA, AB respectively.

7. If the escribed circle opposite to the vertex A touch BC at D and AB and AC produced at F and E respectively, show that $AF = AE =$ semi-perimeter of the triangle.

8. If S represent the area of the triangle ABC , and r, r_1, r_2, r_3 denote the in and ex-radii of the triangle in order, prove that

$$(i) \ r = \frac{S}{s}; (ii) \ r_1 = \frac{S}{s-a}; (iii) \ r_2 = \frac{S}{s-b}; (iv) \ r_3 = \frac{S}{s-c}.$$

Prove that

$$\frac{1}{r_1} + \frac{1}{r_2} + \frac{1}{r_3} = \frac{1}{r}.$$

9. Show that the ortho-centre of a triangle is the in-centre of its pedal triangle.

10. Given the base and the magnitude of the vertical angle, find the locus of the ex-centre opposite to the vertex.

11. In the diagram of Ex. 1, show that I_1, I_2, I_3 are each bisected by the circum-circle of the triangle.

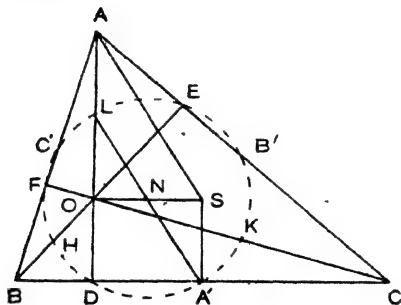
12. Construct a triangle of which the three ex-centres are given in position.

13. Given the vertical angle, perimeter and radius of the inscribed circle; construct the triangle.

14. Given the vertical angle, the in-radius, and the length of the perpendicular from the vertex to the base, construct the triangle.

IV. Nine-point Circle.

In any triangle, the middle points of the sides, the feet of the perpendiculars from the vertices to the opposite sides, and the middle points of the lines joining the ortho-centre to the vertices are concyclic.



In the above diagram, O is the ortho-centre and S the circum-centre of the $\triangle ABC$; A', B', C' are the mid-pts. of the sides opp. to A, B, C; AD, BE, CF are the \perp 's from A, B, C to the opp. sides; and L, H, K are the mid-pts. of the lines OA, OB, OC.

It is required to prove that the nine points $A', B', C', D, E, F, L, H, K$ are concyclic.

Proof. Join SA, SA', SO, and LA' cutting SO at N.

Now, SA' is \parallel to AO and $= \frac{1}{2}AO$;

\therefore SA' is equal and \parallel to LO.

Hence L, O, A', S are the consecutive angular pts. of a parallelogram.

Hence LA' and OS bisect each other at N.

Thus LA' is bisected at the mid-pt. of OS; and similarly, HB' and KC' are each bisected at the mid-pt. of OS.

Now, $\angle LDA'$ being a rt. \angle , the \odot described on LA' diameter passes through D.

$\therefore ND = NL = NA'$, each of them being a radius of this \odot .

Again, since SA' is equal and \parallel to AL .

$$\therefore SA = A'L.$$

Hence, if R stands for "the circum-radius" of the $\triangle ABC$, we have $ND = NL = NA' = \frac{1}{2}R$. (SA' being R .)

$$\begin{aligned} \text{Similarly, } NE = NH = NB' = \frac{1}{2}R, \} \\ \text{and } NF = NK = NC' = \frac{1}{2}R. \} \end{aligned}$$

Thus, the nine pts. $D, L, A', E, H, B', F, K, C'$ are each at a distance $= \frac{1}{2}R$ from N , the mid-pt. of OS ;

and \therefore they all lie on the \odot^{re} of the \odot whose centre is the mid-pt. of OS and radius $= \frac{1}{2}R$. Q. E. D.

29. Definition. The circle passing through the mid-points of the sides of a triangle is called the **nine-point circle** of the triangle, from its property of passing through *nine* particular points connected with the triangle. The centre of the nine-point circle may also be conveniently called the "**nine-point centre**."

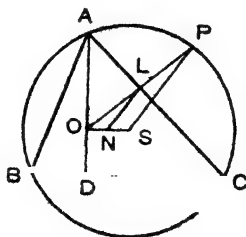
Obs. It may be easily seen from the above theorem that

- (i) the *nine-point centre* is the middle point of the line joining the circum-centre to the ortho-centre;
- (ii) the *radius* of the *nine-point circle* is equal to half the circum-radius.

COR. 1. *The nine-point circle of each of the triangles BOC , COA , AOB is the same as that of the triangle ABC .*

COR. 2. *If P is any point on the circum-circle of the triangle ABC , the mid-point of OP is on the nine-point circle.*

If L is the mid-pt. of OP , join NL . Then NL is \parallel to SP , and $= \frac{1}{2}SP = \frac{1}{2}R$. Thus NL is $=$ a radius of the nine-pt. \odot , and \therefore the pt. L lies on that \odot .



COR. 3. *Given the base and the vertical angle of a triangle ; as the triangle changes its position the centre of the nine-point circle moves along the circumference of a circle whose centre is the mid-point of the given base.*

In the figure of the proposition, suppose XBC to be *any other* position of the triangle, the base BC remaining fixed and the vertical $\angle BXC$ being = the $\angle BAC$. Then X must be on the arc BAC of the circum- \odot of the $\triangle ABC$. Now, if N' be the nine-pt. centre of the $\triangle XBC$, we must have $N'A' = \frac{1}{2}SX = \frac{1}{2}SA$. Thus, N and N' are both at the same distance from A' , which proves the corollary.

EXERCISE 19

1. Show that the circum-centre, the centroid, the ortho-centre and the nine-point centre are collinear.

2. If I, I_1, I_2, I_3 be the centres of the inscribed and escribed circles of the triangle ABC , prove that the circum-circle of the triangle ABC is the nine-point circle of each of the triangles

$$II_1I_2, II_2I_3, II_3I_1, I_1I_2I_3.$$

3. If O be the ortho-centre of the triangle ABC , in which $AB > AC$ and L, U, M be the middle points of BC, AO, AC , prove that

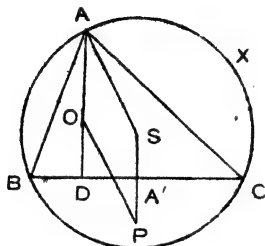
$$\angle LUD = \angle LMD = C - B,$$

4. Lines are drawn through the middle points of the sides of a triangle ABC perpendicular to the bisectors of the opposite angles. Prove that the triangle $A'B'C'$ formed by these lines has the same nine-point circle as the original triangle.

[If L, M, N be the mid-pts. of BC, CA, AB , prove that LMN is the pedal triangle of $A'B'C'$].

V. Locil.

1. Given the base and the vertical angle of a triangle, prove that the locus of its ortho-centre is a circle of which the centre is a known point on the perpendicular bisector of the given base.



Let BC be the given base of a triangle ABC having its vertical $\angle A$ of given magnitude.

It is required to find the locus of the ortho-centre, O .

Proof. Let AD be the \perp on BC , O the ortho-centre, S the circum-centre, and A' the mid-pt. of BC .

Join SA' and produce it to P making $A'P = SA'$.

Join SA , PO .

Now, SA' is \parallel to AO and $= \frac{1}{2}AO$;

$\therefore SP$ is equal and \parallel to AO .

Hence, $PO = SA$.

Now, the base BC and the vertical $\angle BAC$ being given, the circum-centre and the circum-radius are the same for all triangles described on BC and having the vertical angle equal to the $\angle BAC$.

$\therefore S$ is a fixed point, and therefore, also, P , for BC is fixed.

Also, $PO = SA$ = the circum-radius, which is also of constant length.

Hence, the locus of O is a circle whose centre is the fixed point, P on the perp. bisector of BC and whose radius is equal to the constant circum-radius.

Q. E. D.

Second Method.

Join BO , CO , and produce them to meet the opp. sides CA , AB at E , F respectively.

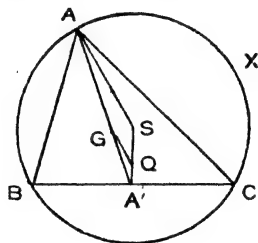
Then $\angle BOD = 90^\circ - \angle OBD = 90^\circ - \angle EBC = \angle C$;

similarly, $\angle COD = \angle B$.

$\therefore \angle BOC = \angle B + \angle C = 180^\circ - \angle A$, and \therefore known.

Hence, the locus of O is a circle passing through B and C and having its centre on the \perp . bisector of BC . Q. E. D.

2. *Given the base and the vertical angle of a triangle, to find the locus of the centroid of the triangle.*



Let ABC be any Δ standing on the given base BC and having the vertical $\angle BAC$ of a given magnitude.

It is reqd. to find the locus of G , the centroid of the ΔABC .

Proof. Let A' be the mid-pt. of BC , and G the centroid; then G is a pt. on AA' such that $AA' = 3GA'$.

Let S be the circum-centre; join SA' , SA .

Draw $GQ \parallel$ to AS , meeting SA' in Q .

Now, since AS is par^r to GQ and $AA' = 3A'G$.

$$\therefore AS = 3GQ.$$

$$\therefore GQ = \frac{1}{3}AS.$$

Let XBC be any other position of the Δ , the base BC remaining fixed and the vertical $\angle BXC$ being = the $\angle BAC$.

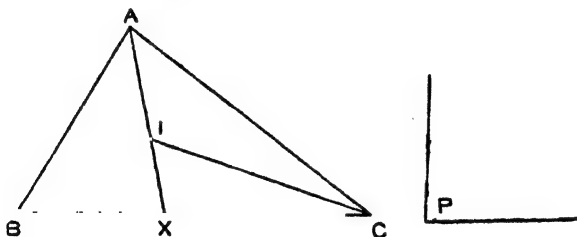
Then, X must be on the arc BAC of the circum- \odot of the ΔABC .

Now, if G' be the centroid of the $\triangle XBC$, it can be shown, as before, that $G'Q = \frac{1}{3}XS$.

Thus, $GQ = G'Q$ (each of them being $= \frac{1}{3}SA$), which shows that G and G' are on the \odot^e of a \odot of which the centre is the pt. Q , and the radius $= \frac{1}{3}SA$.

Thus, the reqd. locus is a circle whose centre is Q and radius equal to $\frac{1}{3}SA$. Q. E. D.

3. *Given the base and the vertical angle of a triangle, to find the locus of its in-centre.*



Let ABC be any triangle standing on the given base BC and having the vertical $\angle BAC =$ a given $\angle P$; also, let I be the in-centre of the $\triangle ABC$. Join BI , CI and AI ; produce AI to meet BC at X .

It is required to find the locus of I .

Proof. The $\angle BIC =$ the $\angle BIX +$ the $\angle CIX$.

Now, the $\angle BIX = \frac{1}{2}A + \frac{1}{2}B$; and the $\angle CIX = \frac{1}{2}A + \frac{1}{2}C$;

$$\therefore \text{ the } \angle BIC = \frac{1}{2}A + \frac{1}{2}B + \frac{1}{2}A + \frac{1}{2}C = A + \frac{1}{2}(B + C)$$

$$= A + \frac{1}{2}(180^\circ - A)$$

$$= 90^\circ + \frac{1}{2}A = \text{a constant angle, for}$$

the $\angle A =$ the $\angle P =$ a constant angle.

\therefore the $\triangle BIC$ stands on a fixed base and has a constant vertical angle.

\therefore the locus of I is a circle passing through B and C and having its centre lying on the perp. bisector of BC .

Q. E. D.

EXERCISE 20

1. Given the base and the sum of the base angles of a triangle, find the locus of its ortho-centre.
 2. Find the locus of the centroid of a triangle which stands on a given base and has the sum of its base angles equal to a given angle.
 3. Given the base and the sum of the base angles of a triangle, find the locus of its in-centre.
 4. Given the base and the vertical angle of a triangle, find the locus of its ex-centre which is opposite to its vertex.
 5. Show that the locus of the middle points of a system of chords of a circle drawn through a fixed point, outside the circle, is another circle intersecting the given one.
 6. Show in Ex. 5 that the locus will touch, or will not cut, the given circle according as the fixed point is on, or within the given circle.
 7. Show that the points of contact of tangents to a series of concentric circles drawn from a given point outside the circles all lie on a circle.
 8. BAC is any triangle described on the fixed base BC and having a constant vertical angle; and BA is produced to P , so that BP is equal to the sum of the sides containing the vertical angle. Find the locus of P .
-

BOOK IV

THEOREMS ON RECTANGLE AND SQUARE IN RELATION TO THE SEGMENTS OF A STRAIGHT LINE

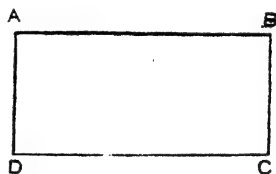
CHAPTER I

GEOMETRICAL THEOREMS CORRESPONDING TO ALGEBRAICAL IDENTITIES

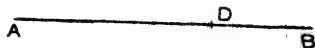
DEFINITIONS AND NOTATIONS

1. A rectangle, of which the adjacent sides are AB and BC , is said to be the **rectangle contained by AB and BC** because on these sides alone, its size and shape depend.

The "*rectangle contained by AB and BC* " is written as "*rect. AB, BC* ", or, more briefly as " *$AB.BC$* ", or, as *rect. AC* ." Likewise, "the *square* described on a straight line AB " is briefly written as "*sq. on AB* ," or as AB^2 .



2. If D be a point on a straight line, AB , and *within* its extremities, then D is said to **divide AB internally**, the parts AD and DB , being called the **segments** of the line AB .

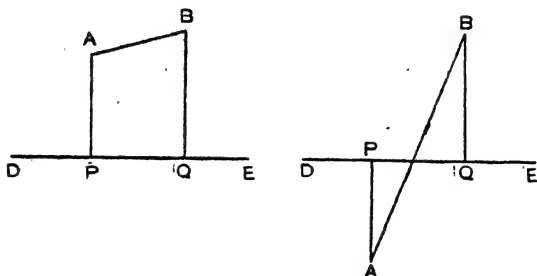


, Similarly, if D be on the straight line AB , *produced*, it is said to **divide AB externally**, AD and DB being called the **segments** of the line AB .

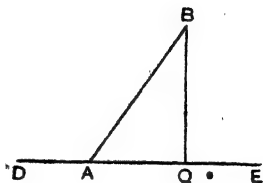


Thus, it is clear that when D is a point of **internal division**, AB is equal to the *sum* of the segments; whereas in case of D being a point of **external division**, AB is equal to the **difference** of the segments.

3. If from the extremities of a straight line AB , perpendiculars AP and BQ be drawn to an unlimited straight line DE , then PQ is said to be the **projection** of AB on DE .



NOTE. If A is on the straight line DE , then AQ becomes the projection.

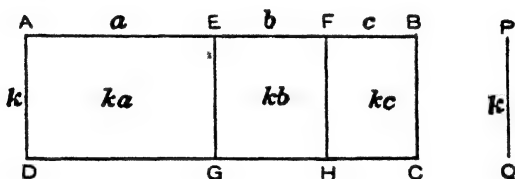


CHAPTER II

RECTANGLES AND SQUARES

THEOREM 49.

If there be two straight lines one of which is divided into any number of parts, the rectangle contained by the two lines is equal to the sum of the rectangles contained by the undivided line and several parts of the divided line.



Let AB and PQ be two straight lines, of which AB is divided into any number of parts, say three, viz. AE , EF , FB ; and let PQ , AE , EF , FB contain k , a , b , c units of length respectively; then AB contains $a+b+c$ units.

It is required to prove that

$\text{rect. } AB, PQ = \text{rect. } AE, PQ + \text{rect. } EF, PQ + \text{rect. } FB, PQ$

or, $AB.PQ = AE.PQ + EF.PQ + FB.PQ$,

i.e. to prove that $(a+b+c)k = ak + bk + ck$.

Through A , draw $AD \perp$ to AB ; from it cut off $AD = PQ$; complete the rectangle $DABC$ having AB and AD as adjacent sides,

Draw EG , FH par^l to AD meeting DC at G and H respectively.

$\therefore FH = EG = AD = PQ$.

Proof. The fig. AC = the fig. AG + the fig. EH + the fig. FC... (1)

But, by construction,

fig. AC = rect. AB, AD

i.e. = AB.PQ and contains $(a+b+c)k$ units of area ;

fig. AG = rect. AE, AD = rect. AE, PQ

i.e. = AE.PQ and contains ak units of area ;

fig. EH = rect. EF, EG = rect. EF, PQ

i.e. = EF.PQ and contains bk units of area ;

fig. FC = rect. FB, FH = rect. FB, PQ

i.e. = FB.PQ and contains ck units of area.

Hence, from (1),

rect. AB, PQ = rect. AE, PQ + rect. EF, PQ + rect. FB, PQ

or, AB.PQ = AE.PQ + EF.PQ + FB.PQ

i.e., $(a+b+c)k = ak + bk + ck$.

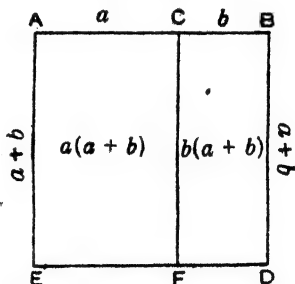
Q. E. D.

COR. If a straight line be divided internally into any two parts, the square on the whole line is equal to the sum of the rectangles contained by the whole line and each of the parts.

Let AB be the str. line, divided internally at C into AC and CB, which contain a and b units of length respectively.

Describe the sq. ABDE on AB and draw CF, through C, parallel to AE or BD, meeting DE at F.

Proof. Evidently, the figures AF, CD are each a rectangle,



\therefore the sq. on AB = rect. AC, AE + rect. CB, CF

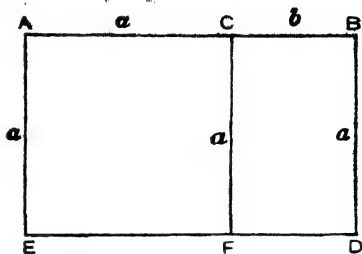
= AC. AB + CB.AB [\because CF = AE = AB]

or, $AB^2 = AC.AB + CB.AB$,

i.e., $(a+b)^2 = a(a+b) + b(a+b)$.

COR. 2. *If a straight line be divided internally into any two parts, the rectangle contained by the whole line and one of the parts is equal to the square on that part together with the rectangle contained by the two parts.*

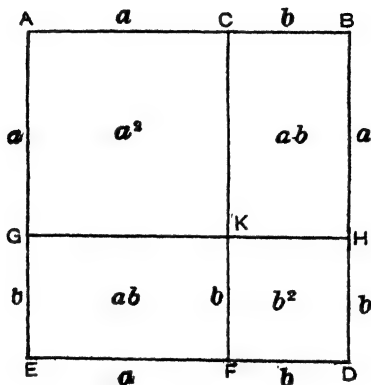
Let AB be the str. line, divided internally at C , into two parts AC , CB , containing a and b units of length respectively. Describe a square $ACFE$ on AC ; draw $BD \perp$ to AB , meeting EF produced at D .



Then, the fig. CD = the rect. CF , CB
 = the rect. AC , CB and contains ab units of area ;
 the fig. AF = the sq. on AC and „ a^2 „ „ „ ;
 and the fig. AD = the rect. AE , AB
 = „ „ AC , AB and „ $a(a+b)$ „ „ .
 Hence, \therefore the fig. AD = the fig. AF + the fig. CD ,
 $AC \cdot AB = AC^2 + AC \cdot CB$
 i.e., $a(a+b) = a^2 + ab$.

THEOREM 50.

*If a straight line be divided **internally** at any point, the square on the whole line is equal to the sum of the squares on the two parts **together with** twice the rectangle contained by the parts.*



Let AB be a str. line which is divided internally, at C ; and let the parts AC , CB contain a and b units of length respectively, so that AB contains $a+b$ units.

It is required to prove that

$$AB^2 = AC^2 + CB^2 + 2AC.CB,$$

$$\text{i.e., } (a+b)^2 = a^2 + b^2 + 2ab.$$

Suppose $ABDE$ to be the square described on AB ; from AE cut off $AG=AC$ or a , so that $GE(=CB)$ contains b units of length. Through C and G , draw CF and GH , parallel respectively to AE and AB ; and let CF and GH intersect at K . Then, evidently $HD=KF=GE=FD=KH=CB$, each containing b units of length.

Proof. The fig. AD = the fig. AK + the fig. KD + the fig. CH
 : 1 + the fig. GF.....(1)

By construction,

the fig. AD = AB ² ,	containing (a+b) ² units of area;	}
" " AK = AC ² ,	a ² " " " ;	
" " KD = KH ² = CB ² ,	b ² " " " ;	
" " CH = CK.CB		
" " = AC.CB	ab " " " ;	
and " " GF = GK.GE		
" " = AC.CB,	ab " " " .	

$$\begin{aligned} \text{Hence, from (1), } AB^2 &= AC^2 + CB^2 + AC.CB + AC.CB \\ &= AC^2 + CB^2 + 2AC.CB, \end{aligned}$$

$$\text{i.e. } (a+b)^2 = a^2 + b^2 + 2ab.$$

COR. If a str. line be bisected, the square on half the line is equal to one-fourth of the square on the whole.

EXERCISE 1

(Numerical.)

1. Establish the following identities geometrically:—

(i) $(3+5)7 = 3 \times 7 + 5 \times 7.$

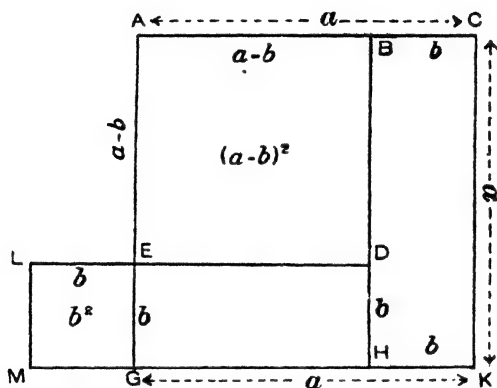
(ii) $5(5+9) = 5^2 + 5 \times 9.$

(iii) $(3+4)^2 = 3^2 + 2 \times 3 \times 4 + 4^2.$

2. The length and breadth of a garden are respectively 100 ft. and 75 ft.; if the garden be divided into two equal parts, lengthwise, find geometrically, the area of each.

THEOREM 51.

If a straight line be divided *externally* at any point, the square on the line is equal to the sum of the squares on the two parts *diminished* by twice the rectangle contained by the parts.



Let AB be the straight line which is divided *externally* at C ; and let the parts AC, CB contain a and b units of length respectively ; then AB contains $a-b$ units.

It is required to prove that

$$AB^2 = AC^2 + CB^2 - 2AC.CB,$$

i.e., $(a-b)^2 = a^2 + b^2 - 2ab.$

Suppose ABDE to be the square described on AB ; from AE produced, cut off $EG = CB = b$; through C and G, draw CK, GK, par' to AG, AC respectively, intersecting each other at K ; produce BD to meet GK, at H. Also produce DE, HG to L and M respectively, making $EL = GM = EG = CB$, or b . Then, $DL = DE + EL = AB + BC = AC$, or a ; and similarly, $HM = AC$, or a .

Proof. The fig. AD = the fig. AK + the fig. ME
 - the fig. MD - the fig. HC.....(1)

By construction,

fig. AD = sq. on AB = AB^2 and contains $(a-b)^2$ units of area ;

fig. AK = sq. on AC = AC^2 " " a^2 " " " ;

fig. ME = sq. on EG

= sq. on CB = CB^2 " " b^2 " " " ;

fig. MD = rect. DL, LM

= rect. AC, CB = AC.CB and contains ab " " " ;

fig. HC = rect. HB, CB = AC.CB " " ab " " " .

Hence, from (1), $AB^2 = AC^2 + CB^2 - AC.CB - AC.CB$

$$= AC^2 + CB^2 - 2AC.CB,$$

$$\text{i.e., } (a-b)^2 = a^2 + b^2 - 2ab.$$

COR. 1. The square on the sum of two straight lines together with the square on their difference is equal to twice the sum of the squares on the given straight lines.

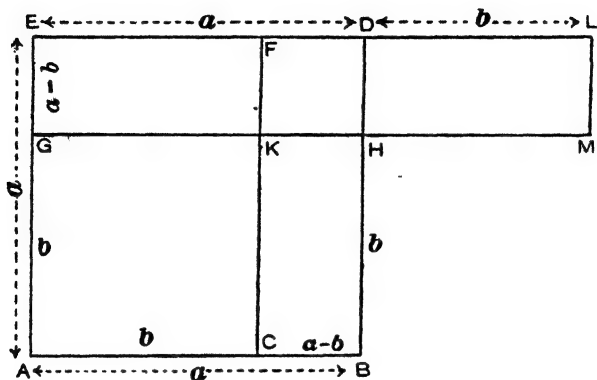
COR. 2. The square on the sum of two str. lines exceeds the square on their difference by four times the rectangle contained by the lines.

Obs. The two enunciations of Theorems 50 and 51 may be combined into a single one as :

"If a straight line be divided at a point, the square on the given line is equal to the sum of the squares on the two parts, so formed, **increased or diminished** by twice the rectangle contained by the parts according as the point of division is **internal or external**."

THEOREM 52.

The difference of the squares on any two straight lines is equal to the rectangle contained by their sum and difference.



Let two str. lines AB and AC (AB being greater than AC) be so placed, *one along the other*, that one extremity of the one is coincident with one extremity of the other; and let them contain a and b units of length respectively.

It is required to prove that

$$AB^2 - AC^2 = (AB + AC)(AB - AC).$$

$$\text{i.e. } a^2 - b^2 = (a + b)(a - b).$$

Suppose ABDE to be the square described on AB; from AE, cut off AG=AC or b ; through G and C draw GH, CK par^a to AB and AE respectively, intersecting each other at K. Produce GK to meet BD at H. Produce ED to L, making DL=AC or b . Complete the rectangle HDLM. Then, evidently, GE=AE-AG=AB-AC=CB or $a-b$; also, the fig. AK=the sq. on AC.

Proof. The rect. $HL = DL.LM = AC.CB$;

also the rect. $CH = CK.KH = AC.CB$.

\therefore the rect. $HL =$ the rect. CH .

$$\begin{aligned} AB^2 - AC^2 &= \text{the fig. AD} - \text{the fig. AK} \\ &= \text{the rect. EH} + \text{the rect. CH} \\ &= \text{the rect. EH} + \text{the rect. HL} = \text{the rect. EM} \\ &= EL.EG = (ED + DL)(AE - AG) \\ &= (AB + AC)(AB - AC), \end{aligned}$$

$$\text{i.e. } a^2 - b^2 = (a + b)(a - b).$$

COR. 1. *If a straight line be bisected, and also divided into two unequal segments either internally or externally then the rectangle contained by the unequal segments is equal to the difference of the squares on half the line and on the line between the points of section.*

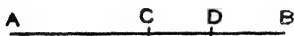


Fig. 1.



Fig. 2.

For, if the str. line AB be bisected at C and also divided into two unequal segments at D , then in fig. (1), we have

$$\begin{aligned} AD.DB &= (AC + CD)(CB - CD) \\ &= (AC + CD)(AC - CD), \quad \because AC = CB; \\ &= AC^2 - CD^2; \end{aligned}$$

and in fig. (2),

$$\begin{aligned} AD.DB &= (CD + AC)(CD - CB) \\ &= (CD + AC)(CD - AC), \quad \because AC = CB; \\ &= CD^2 - AC^2. \end{aligned}$$

COR. 2. *If a straight line be bisected, and also divided into two unequal segments, either internally or externally, the difference of the squares on the two segments is equal to twice the rectangle contained by the whole line and the line between the points of section.*

$$\begin{aligned} \text{In fig. 1, Cor. 1, } AD^2 - DB^2 &= (AD + DB)(AD - DB) \\ &= AB(AD - DB) \end{aligned}$$

$$\begin{aligned}
 &\text{Now } AD = AC + CD \\
 &\text{and } DB = CB - CD \\
 \therefore &AD - DB = 2CD, \quad \because AC = CB. \\
 \therefore &AD^2 - DB^2 = AB \cdot 2CD = 2AB \cdot CD.
 \end{aligned}$$

Similarly, in fig. 2, *Cor. 1*, since

$$\begin{aligned}
 AD + DB &= (AC + CD) + (CD - CB) \\
 &= 2CD, \quad [\because AC = CB] \\
 AD^2 - DB^2 &= (AD + DB)(AD - DB) \\
 &= 2CD \cdot AB = 2AB \cdot CD.
 \end{aligned}$$

EXERCISE 2

1. Illustrate and explain the geometrical theorem corresponding to the identity

$$(2a)^2 = 4a^2.$$

2. Illustrate and explain the geometrical theorem corresponding to the identity

$$(3a)^2 = 9a^2.$$

3. Prove geometrically that

$$(a+b)(c+d) = ac + ad + bc + bd.$$

4. Prove geometrically that

$$(a+b+c)^2 = a^2 + b^2 + c^2 + 2ab + 2bc + 2ca.$$

5. Prove geometrically that

$$(a-b)(a-c) = a^2 - ac + bc - ab.$$

6. Illustrate and explain the geometrical theorem corresponding to the identity

$$(a+b)(b+c) = ac + b(a+b+c).$$

7. If AD be the perpendicular to the hypotenuse BC of a right-angled triangle ABC , prove that

$$AD^2 = BD \cdot DC.$$

Hence prove that (i) $AB^2 = BC \cdot BD$, and (ii) $AC^2 = BC \cdot CD$.

8. ABC is a triangle, and AD is perpendicular to BC . If $AD^2 = BD \cdot DC$, prove that $\angle BAC$ is a right angle.

9. C is any point in a given straight line AB . Deduce from *Cor. 2*, *Th. 49* and *Th. 50* that

$$AB^2 + BC^2 = AC^2 + 2AB \cdot BC.$$

10. If C be the mid-point of a given straight line AB, and if D is any point in CB, prove that

$$AD^2 + DB^2 = 2AC^2 + 2CD^2.$$

11. If C is the mid-point of a given straight line AB, and if D is any point in CB produced, prove that

$$AD^2 + DB^2 = 2AC^2 + 2CD^2.$$

12. C is the mid-point of a given straight line AB. If a point D moves from B to A, prove that the area of the rect. AD.DB gradually *increases* until D coincides with C, when it has its *greatest* value, and thereafter gradually *diminishes*.

13. In the previous case, prove that $AD^2 + DB^2$ gradually *diminishes* until D coincides with C, when it has its *least* value, and thereafter gradually *increases*.

Hence show that if the sum of two straight lines be given, the least value of the sum of the squares on the lines is equal to half the square on the given sum.

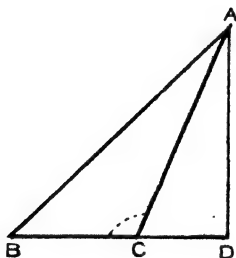
14. AB is a given straight line. If a point C moves from B to A, prove that $AB^2 + BC^2$ is always *greater than* $2AB.BC$, except when C coincides with A; and that in this case $AB^2 + BC^2 = 2AB.BC$.

CHAPTER III

RECTANGLES AND SQUARES IN RELATION TO TRIANGLES

THEOREM 53.

In an obtuse-angled triangle, the square on the side opposite to the obtuse angle is equal to the sum of the squares on the other two sides together with twice the rectangle contained by one of these two sides and the projection on it of the other.



Let ABC be a Δ , obtuse-angled at C ; and let AD be \perp to BC produced, so that CD is the projection of AC on BC .

It is required to prove that

$$AB^2 = BC^2 + CA^2 + 2BC \cdot CD.$$

Proof. $BD^2 = (BC + CD)^2 = BC^2 + CD^2 + 2BC \cdot CD.$ *Th. 50.*

To each of these equals add DA^2 .

$$\text{Then, } BD^2 + DA^2 = BC^2 + CD^2 + DA^2 + 2BC \cdot CD.$$

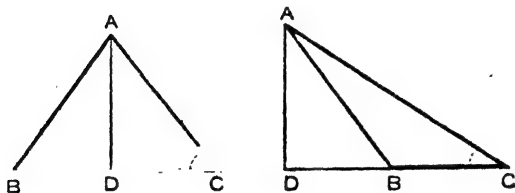
$$\left. \begin{array}{l} \text{But } BD^2 + DA^2 = AB^2, \\ \text{and } CD^2 + DA^2 = AC^2, \end{array} \right\} \quad \text{Th. 31.}$$

$$\therefore AB^2 = BC^2 + CA^2 + 2BC \cdot CD.$$

Q. E. D.

THEOREM 54.

In any triangle the square on the side opposite to an acute angle is equal to the sum of the squares on the other two sides diminished by twice the rectangle contained by one of these two sides and the projection on it of the other.



Let ABC be any Δ , acute-angled at C ; and let AD be \perp to CB , or CB produced, so that CD is the projection of AC on BC .

It is required to prove that

$$AB^2 = BC^2 + CA^2 - 2BC \cdot CD.$$

Proof. Since BD is the difference of the two str. lines BC , CD , we have

$$BD^2 = BC^2 + CD^2 - 2BC \cdot CD. \quad \text{Th. 51.}$$

To each of these equals add DA^2 .

$$\text{Then } BD^2 + DA^2 = BC^2 + CD^2 + DA^2 - 2BC \cdot CD.$$

$$\text{But } BD^2 + DA^2 = AB^2, \quad \text{Th. 31.}$$

$$\text{and } CD^2 + DA^2 = AC^2, \quad \}$$

$$\therefore AB^2 = BC^2 + CA^2 - 2BC \cdot CD.$$

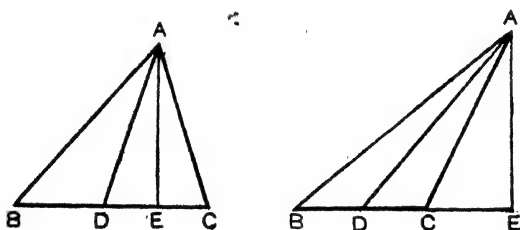
Q. E. D.

NOTE. Comparing Theorems 31, 53 and 54, we come to the following conclusion :—

The square on a side of a triangle is greater than, equal to, or less than, the sum of the squares on the other two sides, according as the angle contained by those sides is obtuse, right, or acute; the difference in the cases of inequality being twice the rectangle contained by one of the two sides and the projection on it of the other.

Apollonius' Theorem.**THEOREM 55.**

The sum of the squares on any two sides of a triangle is equal to twice the square on half the third side together with twice the square on the median that bisects the third side.



Let AD be the median which bisects the side BC of a $\triangle ABC$.

It is required to prove that $AB^2 + AC^2 = 2BD^2 + 2DA^2$.

Proof. Let AE be \perp to BC, or BC produced; then in the above diagrams, if the $\angle ADB$ is obtuse, then the $\angle ADC$ is acute.

Hence in the $\triangle ABD$,

$$AB^2 = BD^2 + DA^2 + 2BD.DE; \quad \text{Th. 53.}$$

and in the $\triangle ADC$,

$$\begin{aligned} AC^2 &= CD^2 + DA^2 - 2CD.DE && \text{Th. 54.} \\ &= BD^2 + DA^2 - 2BD.DE, \because CD = BD. \end{aligned}$$

Hence by addition,

$$AB^2 + AC^2 = 2BD^2 + 2DA^2.$$

Q. E. D.

Pappus' Theorem.

THEOREM 56.

If a straight line is drawn from the vertex of an isosceles triangle to any point in the base, or the base produced, the difference between the squares on this line and one of the equal sides of the triangle is equal to the rectangle contained by the segments of the base.

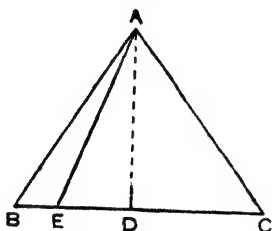


Fig. 1.

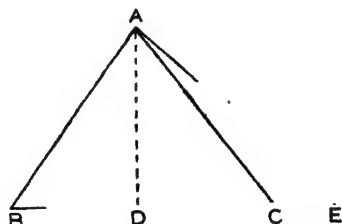


Fig. 2.

Let ABC be an isos. Δ and E be a point on the base BC , or BC produced.

It is required to prove that $AB^2 - AE^2 = BE \cdot EC$.

From A draw $AD \perp$ to BC .

Proof. $AB^2 = AD^2 + BD^2$ and $AE^2 = AD^2 + DE^2$.

\therefore if E be an internal point as in fig. 1,

$$\begin{aligned} AB^2 - AE^2 &= BD^2 - DE^2 = (BD - DE)(BD + DE) \\ &= BE(CD + DE). \quad [\because BD = CD] \\ &= BE \cdot CE. \end{aligned}$$

Again, if E be an external point as in fig. 2,

$$\begin{aligned} AE^2 - AB^2 &= DE^2 - BD^2 = (DE + BD)(DE - BD) \\ &= BE(DE - CD) \\ &= BE \cdot CE. \end{aligned}$$

COR. 1. *The difference of the squares on the two sides of any triangle is equal to twice the rectangle contained by the base and the projection on the base of the median to it.*

EXERCISE 3

1. The numerical measures of the sides of a triangle are 7, 9 and 11; prove that the angle opposite to the greatest side is neither right nor obtuse.

Construct the triangle, taking one-tenth of an inch as the unit of length.

2. The numerical measures of the sides of a triangle are 8, 13 and 17; show that the angle, opposite to the greatest side must be obtuse.

Construct the triangle, taking three-tenths of a centimetre as the unit of length.

3. ABC is an acute-angled triangle. The perpendiculars from A, B, C upon the opposite sides meet at O . Prove that

$$OA^2 + OB^2 + OC^2 < \frac{1}{2}(AB^2 + BC^2 + CA^2).$$

4. The numerical measure of a side of an equilateral triangle ABC is a . BC is produced to D so that $CD = 2BC$. If x be the numerical measure of AD , prove that $x^2 = 7a^2$.

5. ABC is an acute-angled triangle; and BE, CF are perpendiculars upon CA, AB . Prove that $AB \cdot AF = AC \cdot AE$.

6. D is the mid-point of the side BC of a triangle ABC ; and AE is perpendicular to BC , or BC produced. Use Theorems 53 and 54 to prove that the difference of the squares on AB, AC is equal to twice the rect. $BC \cdot DE$.

7. C is the mid-point of a given straight line AB . If a point P moves on the circumference of a circle of which the centre is C , prove that $PA^2 + PB^2$ is always the same.

8. The distance between two fixed points A and B is 6 inches. If a point P moves so that $PA^2 + PB^2$ is always = 50 square inches, find the locus of P .

9. Prove that the sum of the squares on the two equal sides of an isosceles triangle is less than the sum of the squares on the two sides of any other triangle on the same base and between the same parallels.

10. $ABCD$ is a rectangle; and P is any point, either inside or outside it. Prove that $PA^2 + PC^2 = PB^2 + PD^2$.

11. Prove that three times the sum of the squares on the sides of a triangle is equal to four times the sum of the squares on the medians.

12. If O is the centroid of a $\triangle ABC$, prove that

$$3(OA^2 + OB^2 + OC^2) = AB^2 + BC^2 + CA^2.$$

13. Prove that the sum of the squares on the sides of a quadrilateral is equal to the sum of the squares on its diagonals together with four times the square on the line joining the middle points of the diagonals.

Hence prove that if the sum of the squares on the sides of a quadrilateral is equal to the sum of the squares on the diagonals, the quadrilateral must be a parallelogram.

CHAPTER IV

RECTANGLES AND SQUARES IN RELATION TO CIRCLES

THEOREM 57.

If two chords of a circle intersect either inside or outside the circle, the rectangle contained by the parts of the one is equal to the rectangle contained by the parts of the other.

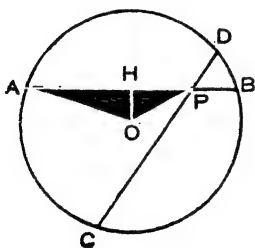


Fig. 1.

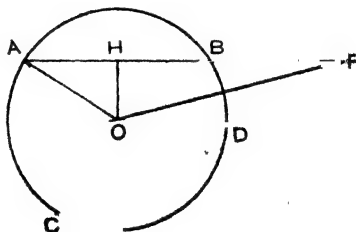


Fig. 2.

Let the chords AB , CD of the \odot , whose centre is O , intersect inside or outside the \odot at P .

It is required to prove that $AP.PB = CP.PD$.

Proof. Let OH be the \perp from O upon AB .

Join OP , OA .

Since OH is \perp to AB , $\therefore AH = HB$.

CIRCLES

- (i) When P is inside the \odot , as in fig. (1),

$$\begin{aligned} AP \cdot PB &= (AH + HP)(BH - HP) \\ &= (AH + HP)(AH - HP), \quad \because AH = BH. \\ &= AH^2 - HP^2 \\ &= (AH^2 + HO^2) - (HP^2 + HO^2), \text{ adding and} \\ &\hspace{15em} \text{subtracting } HO^2, \\ &= OA^2 - OP^2. \end{aligned}$$

Similarly, $CP \cdot PD = OC^2 - OP^2$.

Hence, $\because OA = OC$, i.e. $OA^2 = OC^2$,
we have, $AP \cdot PB = CP \cdot PD$.

- (ii) When P is outside the \odot , as in fig. (2),

$$\begin{aligned} AP \cdot PB &= (AH + HP)(HP - HB) \\ &= (HP + AH)(HP - AH), \quad \because AH = HB; \\ &= HP^2 - AH^2 \\ &= (HP^2 + OH^2) - (AH^2 + OH^2), \text{ adding and} \\ &\hspace{15em} \text{subtracting } OH^2, \\ &= OP^2 - OA^2. \end{aligned}$$

Similarly, $PC \cdot PD = OP^2 - OC^2$.

Since $OA^2 = OC^2$,

$$\therefore AP \cdot PB = PC \cdot PD.$$

Q. E. D.

THEOREM 58.

[CONVERSE OF THEOREM 57.]

If two finite straight lines intersect, either both internally or both externally, so that the rectangle contained by the segments of the one is equal to that contained by the segments of the other, the extremities of the lines are concyclic.

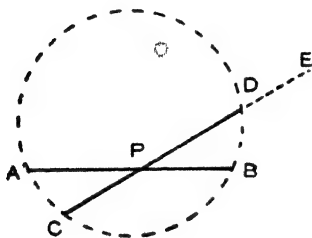


Fig. 1.

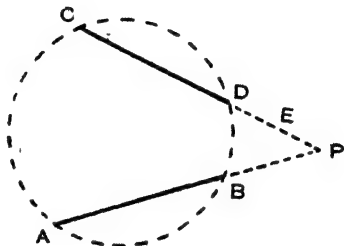


Fig. 2.

Let AB and CD be two str. lines which intersect, internally as in fig. 1, or externally as in fig. 2, at P ; and let $AP \cdot PB = CP \cdot CD$.

It is required to prove that the pts. A, B, C, D are concyclic.

Proof. If not suppose, the circle drawn through A, B, C cuts CD , or CD produced, at E .

Then, $AP \cdot PB = CP \cdot PE$;

Th. 57.

but $AP \cdot PB = CP \cdot PD$

Hyp.

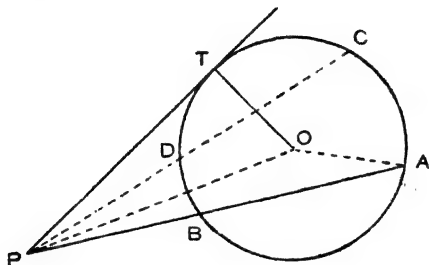
$\therefore CP \cdot PD = CP \cdot PE$

$\therefore PD = PE$, which is impossible unless D and E coincide.

Hence, A, B, C, D lie on the same circle.

THEOREM 59.

If a tangent and a secant be drawn to a circle from a point outside it, the square on the tangent is equal to the rectangle contained by the whole secant and the part of it outside the circle.



Let ABC be a \odot whose centre is O ; from the point P , outside the \odot , let PT be drawn a tangent touching the \odot at T and PBA , a secant cutting the \odot at B and A .

It is required to prove that $PT^2 = PA.PB$.

Join OP, OA, OT .

Proof. $PA.PB = OP^2 - OA^2$
 $= OP^2 - OT^2, \quad \because OA = OT$
 $= PT^2, \quad \because OT \text{ is } \perp \text{ to } PT.$

Th. 57.

Q. E. D.

By the method of Limits.

Let the secant PDC cut the \odot in D and C . Suppose PC to be turned about P so that the pts. C and D continually approach each other.

In every position of the secant PC , we have $PA.PB = PC.PD$; hence, ultimately, when the pts. C and D coincide at T and the secant PDC becomes the tangent PT , we must have $PA.PB = PT^2$.

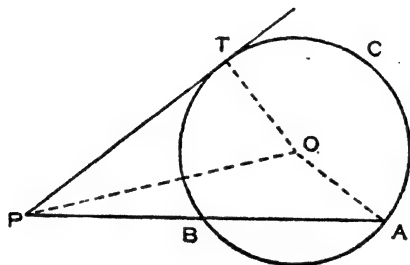
COR. The two tangents drawn, one to each, of two intersecting circles from any point on their common chord produced are equal.

For, if P be any point on the common chord AB produced, and if PS and PT be the two tangents, $PT^2 = PA.PB = PS^2$.
 $\therefore PT = PS.$

THEOREM 60.

[CONVERSE OF THEOREM 59.]

If from a point without a circle, there be drawn a secant to cut, and another line to meet, the circle, and if the rectangle contained by the whole secant and the part of it outside the circle, be equal to the square on the other line, then the latter is a tangent to the circle.



Let ABC be a \odot whose centre is O ; and from a point, P outside the \odot , let PBA be the secant cutting the \odot at B and A, and PT, another str. line meeting the \odot at T, such that $PA \cdot PB = PT^2$.

It is required to prove that PT touches the \odot at T. "

Proof. Join OP, OA, OT.

$$\begin{aligned} PA \cdot PB &= OP^2 - OA^2 && \text{Th. 57.} \\ &= OP^2 - OT^2, && \because OA = OT, \text{ being radii} \\ &&& \text{of the same } \odot. \end{aligned}$$

$$\text{But } PA \cdot PB = PT^2.$$

$$\therefore OP^2 - OT^2 = PT^2,$$

$$\text{or } OP^2 = OT^2 + PT^2.$$

$$\therefore \text{ the } \angle OTP \text{ is a rt. } \angle.$$

Hence, PT touches the \odot at T.

SECOND METHOD.

If PT do not touch the \odot at T , let PT produced cut the \odot again in some other pt. S . Then $PT \cdot PS = PA \cdot PB$; but $PA \cdot PB = PT^2$; $\therefore PT \cdot PS = PT^2$, which is impossible unless S and T coincide.

Hence PT cuts the \odot in two coincident points at T i.e. touches \odot at T .

EXERCISE 4

1. Chords AB and CD of a circle intersect at P . If $AP=6''$, $CP=8''$ and $DP=3''$, find BP .

2. Chords AB and CD of a circle intersect externally at P . If $PA=8''$, $PB=3''$, $PC=6''$, find the length of PD .

3. From a point P , outside a circle, a secant PBA is drawn to cut the circle at B and A . If PT be the tangent to the circle and $PT=6''$, $PB=4''$, find the length of AB .

4. A chord AB passes through a given point P within a circle whose centre is O and radius is $5''$. If $PA=8''$, $PB=2''$, show that the length of the chord bisected at P is $8''$.

5. Show that the tangents, drawn from any point on the common chord produced, to two intersecting circles, are equal.

6. The rectangle under the segments of a chord through a given point within a circle is equal to the square on half the chord bisected at that point.

7. If from the vertex A of a right-angled triangle ABC , right-angled at A , a perpendicular AP be drawn to the base BC , show that (i) $BP \cdot PC = AP^2$, (ii) $BP \cdot BC = BA^2$ and (iii) $CP \cdot CB = CA^2$.

8. ABC is a triangle in which AX , BY , CZ are the perpendiculars from the vertices to the opposite sides. If the perpendiculars meet at O , prove that

$$AO \cdot OX = BO \cdot OY = CO \cdot OZ.$$

9. A, B, C are three points on a straight line. Find the locus of points of contact of tangents drawn from A to the circles passing through B and C .

10. Show that the points from which tangents to two given intersecting circles are equal lie on their common chord.
11. Show how to draw from any point P on a chord AB , a str. line to meet the circumference at R so that $PR^2 = PA \cdot PB$.
12. Prove that each of the common tangents to two intersecting circles is bisected by their common chord produced.

MISCELLANEOUS EXERCISES

1. Draw figures to illustrate the following identities :
- (i) $a(b-c) = ab - ac$;
- (ii) $(a+b+c)^2 = a^2 + b^2 + c^2 + 2ab + 2ac + 2bc$;
- (iii) $(a+b)(x+y) = ax + ay + bx + by$.
2. State and prove the geometrical theorem corresponding to the identity

$$(a+b)^2 - (a-b)^2 = 4ab.$$

3. State and prove the geometrical theorem corresponding to the identity

$$(a+b)^2 + (a-b)^2 = 2(a^2 + b^2).$$

4. If a straight line AB be bisected at C and P be any other point in AB , or AB produced, then $PA^2 + PB^2 = 2PC^2 + 2CA^2$.

5. Four points A, B, C, D are taken in this order on a straight line ; show that

$$AD^2 + BC^2 = AC^2 + BD^2 + 2AB \cdot CD.$$

6. C is the middle point of a straight line AB and D is any point in AB , or in AB produced. If $AD > BD$, prove that

$$AD^2 - BD^2 = 2CD \cdot AB.$$

7. D is the middle point of the side AB of the triangle ABC , and CN is the perpendicular from C to AB . If $AC > BC$, prove that

$$AC^2 - BC^2 = 2AB \cdot DN.$$

8. D is any point on the base BC produced, of a triangle ABC , in which $AB = AC$; prove that

$$AD^2 = AB^2 + BD \cdot CD.$$

9. A straight line AB is divided at C so that $AB \cdot BC = AC^2$. Prove that

$$AB^2 + BC^2 = 3AC^2.$$

10. Divide a given straight line into two parts such that the rectangle contained by them may be the greatest possible.

11. Prove that of all rectangles which have a given perimeter, one of the greatest area is a square.

12. Explain how to find a point Y in AB produced, such that the rect. AY.YB may be equal to a given square one of whose sides is equal to c.

[Bisect AB at C. Draw BD \perp to AB and = c. With centre C and radius CD, draw a \odot to cut AB in Y.]

13. Find a point X in a given straight line AB, or in AB produced, such that the sum of the squares on AX, XB may be equal to a given square whose side is c.

[Draw a str. line BY at B making $\angle ABY = 45^\circ$; with centre A and radius c draw a circle to cut BY in Y and Y'; the foot of the perp. from Y or Y' is X.]

14. Find an expression for the length of the perpendicular drawn from the vertex of a triangle to its base in terms of the lengths of its sides.

15. Find the area of the triangle whose sides are 10'', 17'' and 21''.

16. Calculate the length of the median drawn to the longest side of a triangle whose sides are 7'', 24'' and 25''.

17. Find the length of the base of a triangle whose sides are 7 cm. and 9 cm. and the length of the median bisecting the base is 8 cm.

18. Prove that the sum of the squares on the diagonals of a parallelogram is equal to the sum of the squares on the sides.

19. Show that in any right-angled triangle the sum of the squares on the medians is equal to one and a half times the square on the hypotenuse.

20. If P, Q be the points of trisection of the base BC of a triangle ABC, prove that

$$AB^2 + AC^2 = AP^2 + AQ^2 + 4PQ^2.$$

21. The chord of an arc of a circle, whose diameter is d, is c and the height of the arc is h. Show that $4h(d-h) = c^2$.

[Definition : The height of an arc of a circle is the straight line joining the middle points of the arc to the middle point of the chord on which the arc stands.]

22. In a circle of radius r , the chord of an arc is $2m$ and the height of the arc is h . Show that $r = \frac{m^2 + h^2}{2h}$.

23. In a circle of radius r , the chord of half an arc is m and the height of the arc is h . Show that $r = \frac{1}{2} \frac{m^2}{h}$.

24. If the radius of the circular arch of a bridge be 32 ft. and the height of the bridge be 12 ft., show that the span of the bridge is very nearly 50 ft.

25. A brick 4" thick is placed so as to block a carriage wheel. If the distance of the brick from the point of contact of the wheel and the ground is 10', find the radius of the wheel.

26. If d denotes the shortest distance from an external point to a circle and t the length of the tangent from the same point, show that $d(d+2r) = t^2$.

27. C is the centre of a given circle and PQ is any chord through a fixed point O , within the circle. The tangents at P and Q meet at T . Prove that T lies on a fixed str. line perpendicular to CO . [Draw $TN \perp$ to CO . Join CT meeting PQ at M . Prove that $CO.CN = CT.CM = CP^2$.]

28. If in Ex. 27, CT meets PQ at M and TN be the perpendicular on CP , show that the points O, M, T, N lie on a circle.

29. AB is a chord of a circle whose centre is C and tangents at A, B meet in T . Join CT cutting AB at N . Through N draw any chord PNQ . Prove that the points C, P, T, Q are concyclic.

30. AB is the common chord of two given circles; and through any point in AB , two chords are drawn one in each circle. Prove that the four extremities of these chords all lie on a circle.

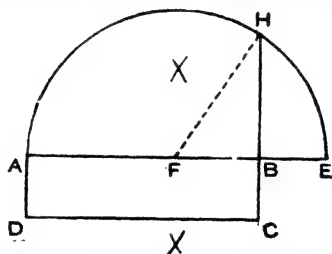
CHAPTER V

PROBLEMS ON AREAS (*Contd.*)

I. On Construction of Squares and Rectangles.

PROBLEM 42.

To construct a square equal in area to a given rectangle.



Let ABCD be the given rectangle, of which the side AB is $>$ the side BC.

It is required to construct a square equal in area to the rectangle AC.

Construction. Produce AB to E, making BE = BC.

Bisect AE at F; with centre F, and radius FA, or FE, describe a semi-circle.

Produce CB to meet the \bigcirc^{re} in H.

Then the sq. described on BH is the required square.

Proof. Join FH.

Now, since the $\angle FBH$ is a rt. \angle .

$$\therefore BH^2 = HF^2 - FB^2 \quad \text{Th. 45.}$$

$$= AF^2 - FB^2$$

$$= (AF + FB)(AF - FB) \quad \text{Th. 52.}$$

$$= (AF + FB)(EF - FB)$$

$$= AB \cdot BE$$

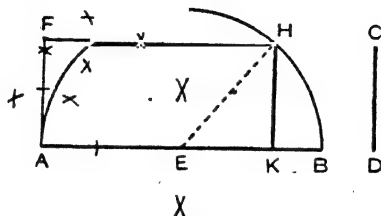
$$= \text{the rect. AC.} \quad (\because BE = BC.) \text{ Q. E. F.}$$

COR. Construct a square equal to a given rectilineal figure.

All that we have to do is (i) to construct a triangle equal in area to the given rectl. figure; and then (ii) to construct a rectangle equal in area to the triangle and finally (iii) to construct a square equal in area to the rectangle.

PROBLEM 43.

Divide a given straight line internally so that the rectangle contained by the two segments may be equal to a given square, a side of the square being less than half the given straight line.



Let AB be the given straight line, and CD a side of the given square.

It is required to find a pt. K in AB so that the rect. $AK \cdot KB$ may be = the sq. on CD .

Construction. Bisect AB at E .

With E as centre and EA as radius, describe a semi-circle

Draw $AF \perp$ to AB , and from it cut off $AF = CD$.

Draw $FH \parallel$ to AB , and let H be one of the points where FH cuts the semi-circle.

Draw $HK \perp$ to AB ; then K is the reqd. pt. .

Proof.

Join EH .

FK is a rectangle; $\therefore HK = FA = CD$.

Now, $AK \cdot KB = AE^2 - EK^2$

Th. 52, Cor. 1.

$= EH^2 - EK^2$

$= HK^2$

$= CD^2$.

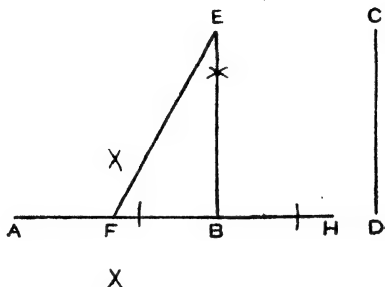
Q. E. F.

NOTE. Hence, given the area of a rectangle and the *sum* of its adjacent sides, we know how to construct the rectangle.

. If the area be given as equal to that of a given *rectangle*, we have first of all to construct a square equal to this rectangle (Problem 42), and then proceed as above.

PROBLEM 44.

Divide a given straight line externally so that the rectangle contained by the two segments may be equal to a given square.



Let AB be the given str. line, and CD a side of the given square.

It is required to find a point H in AB produced so that the rect. $AH.HB$ may be = the sq. on CD .

Construction. Draw $BE \perp$ to AB , and from it cut off $BE = CD$.

Bisect AB at F , and join FE .

Produce FB to H , making $FH = FE$.

Then H is the required pt.

Proof. AB is bisected at F and divided externally at H ;

$$\begin{aligned}\therefore AH.HB &= FH^2 - FB^2 \\ &= FE^2 - FB^2 \\ &= EB^2 \\ &= CD^2.\end{aligned}$$

Q. E. F.

NOTE. Hence, given the area of a rectangle and the difference of its adjacent sides, we know how to construct the rectangle.

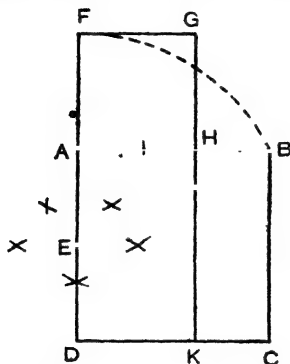
If the area be given as equal to that of a given rectangle, we have first of all to construct a square equal to this rectangle and then proceed as above.

II. Medial Section.

4. Definition: A straight line is divided in **medial section** when the rectangle contained by the whole line and one of the parts is equal to the square on the other part.

PROBLEM 45.

To divide a given straight line *internally* into two segments such that the rectangle contained by the whole line and one of the segments is equal to the square on the other.



Let AB be the given straight line.

It is required to find an internal point H in AB , so that $AB.BH = AH^2$.

Construction. On AB describe the square $ABCD$.

Bisect AD at E , and join EB .

Produce EA to F , making $EF = EB$.

From AB cut off $AH = AF$; then H is the reqd. pt.

Proof. Through H draw $GKH \parallel$ to FD , meeting DC in K ; and draw $FG \parallel$ to AB , meeting KH produced in G .

Now FK is a rectangle, which $= DF.FG$ i.e. $= DF.FA$; and FH is the sq. on AH .

Since DA is bisected at E and divided *externally* at F ,
Cor. 1, Th. 52.

$$\begin{aligned} \therefore DF.FA &= EF^2 - EA^2 = EB^2 - EA^2 \\ &= AB^2 \quad (\because \text{the } \angle EAB \text{ is right}). \end{aligned}$$

Thus, the rect. FK = the rect. AC .

Taking away the common part AK , we have

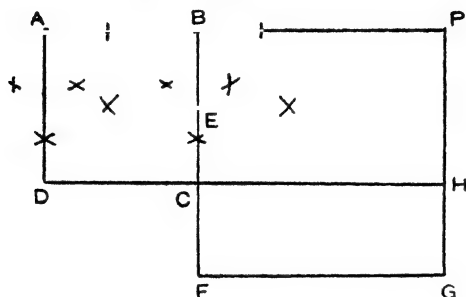
$$\begin{aligned} \text{the sq. } FH &= \text{the rect. } HC \\ &= \text{the rect. } AB, BH \quad (\because CB = AB). \end{aligned}$$

That is, $AH^2 = AB.BH$. Q. E. F.

5. Definition: The point H , so found out, is called the **point of medial section**.

PROBLEM 46.

To divide a given straight line *externally* into two segments so that the rectangle contained by the whole line and one of the segments is equal to the square on the other.



Let AB be the given straight line.

It is required to divide AB externally at P , such that
 $AB \cdot AP = PB^2$.

Construction. On AB , describe a square $ABCD$.

Bisect BC at E and join AE . From BC produced, cut off $EF = EA$. On BF , describe a square $FBPG$.

Then, P is the reqd. pt. of medial section.

$$\begin{aligned} \text{Prqof. } FB \cdot FC &= (FE + EB)(FE - EC) \\ &= (FE + EB)(FE - EB). \quad [\because EB = EC.] \\ &= FE^2 - EB^2 \\ &= EA^2 - EB^2 \\ &= AB^2. \end{aligned}$$

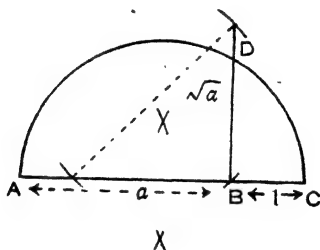
$$\begin{aligned} \text{Now, } PB^2 &= \text{fig. } PF = \text{fig. } PC + \text{fig. } HF \\ &= \text{rect. } PB, BC + \text{rect. } FC, CH \\ &= PB \cdot BC + FC \cdot FB \\ &= PB \cdot BC + AB^2 \\ &= PB \cdot BC + AB \cdot BC \\ &= AP \cdot BC = AP \cdot AB. \end{aligned}$$

Q. E. F.

CHAPTER VI

EASY APPLICATION OF GEOMETRY TO ALGEBRA.

1. *To extract geometrically the square-root of a number.*



Let a be the given number.

It is required to find the value of \sqrt{a} .

Construction. Let AB be a str. line containing a units of length.

Produce AB to C , making $BC = 1$ unit of length.

On AC as diameter, describe a semi-circle to meet the perp., through B , to AB at D .

Then, the number representing the length BD is the reqd. sq. root.

Proof. Evidently, the angle at D , on the semi-circle, subtended by the diameter AC is a right angle ; the $\angle ADC =$ a rt. \angle ; and DB is perp. to the hyp. AC .

$$\therefore BD^2 = AB \cdot BC = a.$$

$$\therefore BD = \sqrt{a}.$$

Obs. Any quadratic equation may be solved with the help of the above two ; for, a quadratic equation can always be reduced to one or other of the forms $a=x(b-x)$ or $a=x(x-b)$; and replacing $b-x$ or, $x-b$ in the above two, by y , the equations reduce to the case of either Art. 2 or Art. 3.

EXERCISE 5

1. Construct a square equal in area to a rectangle whose sides are 8'' and 3''.

2. A rectangle whose length is 5'' is equivalent to a square whose side is 2.5''. Show by geometric construction that its breadth is 1.25''.

3. Show, by geometrical construction, that the numbers, whose sum is 13 and product is 42, are 6 and 7.

4. Solve the equations geometrically (i)
$$\begin{aligned} x+y &= 13 \\ xy &= 36 \end{aligned}$$

(ii)
$$\begin{aligned} x+y &= 13 \\ xy &= 40 \end{aligned}$$

5. Solve the equations geometrically (i)
$$\begin{aligned} x-y &= 6 \\ xy &= 40 \end{aligned}$$

(ii)
$$\begin{aligned} x-y &= 6 \\ xy &= 72 \end{aligned}$$

6. Extract geometrically the square root of the following numbers (i) 7 ; (ii) 8 ; (iii) 9.

7. Solve the following equations geometrically (i) $x^2 - 3x + 2 = 0$;
(ii) $x^2 + 2x - 4 = 0$.

8. Draw a line 2.5'' long and divide it internally so that the rectangle contained by the segments contains 1 sq. inch area.

9. Draw an equilateral triangle on a base 3'' long. Construct an equivalent square and show that its sides are each 1.97'' long.

11. On a given straight line AB construct a rectangle equal to a given square.

12. On a given straight line AB construct a rectangle equal to a given rectangle.

13. Show that if a rectangle be equal to a square, the perimeter of the square is less than that of the rectangle.

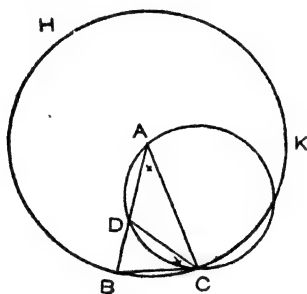
CHAPTER VII.

CONSTRUCTION OF REGULAR PENTAGON

Lemma.

PROBLEM 47.

To construct an isosceles triangle having each of the angles at the base double of the vertical angle.



Construction. Take any str. line AB and divide it at D so that $AB \cdot BD = AD^2$.

With A as centre and AB as radius describe the $\odot HBK$.

In this \odot place the chord $BC = AD$.

Join AC .

Then ABC is the Δ reqd.

Proof. Join CD , and circumscribe a \odot about the ΔADC .

Since $BC^2 = AD^2$, $\therefore BC^2 = AB \cdot BD$.

$\therefore BC$ touches the $\odot ADC$ at C .

Th. 60.

Hence, the $\angle BCD =$ the $\angle DAC$, in the alt. segment.

Hence, the $\angle BDC =$ the $\angle BCA$,
because each of them $=$ the sum of the $\angle^s DAC, ACD$.

But the $\angle ABC =$ the $\angle BCA$; ($\because AC = AB$),
 \therefore the $\angle ABC =$ the $\angle BDC$.

Hence, $DC = BC = DA$;
and \therefore the $\angle DAC =$ the $\angle DCA$.

Hence, DC is the bisector of the $\angle BCA$.

and \therefore the $\angle BCA =$ twice the $\angle BCD$
 $=$ twice the $\angle BAC$. }
Hence the $\angle CBA$ also $=$ twice the $\angle BAC$. }

Thus, ABC is the required Δ .

Q. E. F.

Analysis : Assume ABC to be a Δ such that each of its $\angle^s B$ and C is double the $\angle A$.

Let CD bisect the $\angle C$. Then the $\angle BCD = \frac{1}{2}$ the $\angle BCA =$ the $\angle BAC$. Hence BC must touch the circum- \odot of the ΔADC at C . *Th. 48, Cor.*

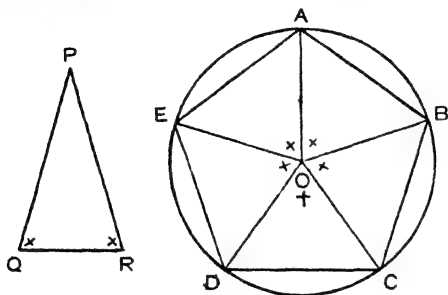
$\therefore BC^2 = AB \cdot BD$. The $\angle DAC =$ the $\angle DCA$, (because each of them is $\frac{1}{2}$ the $\angle BCA$); $\therefore DC = DA$; also since the $\angle DBC =$ the sum of the $\angle^s DAC, DCA =$ twice the $\angle DAC =$ the $\angle ABC$; $\therefore BC = DC$. Hence $BC = DA$, and $\therefore AB \cdot BD = AD^2$; which determines the position of D : Then the position of C also is determined, because the distance of C from $A = AB$, and its distance from $B = DA$.

Obs. Evidently 5 times the $\angle A =$ two rt. \angle s. Hence the $\angle A =$ one-fifth of two rt. \angle s, and \therefore each of the \angle s $ABC, ACB =$ two-fifths of two rt. \angle s $=$ one-fifth of four rt. \angle s.

REGULAR PENTAGON

PROBLEM 48.

To construct a regular figure of five sides (i) in or (ii) about a given circle.



Let the \odot with centre O be the given \odot .

It is required to construct an equilateral and equiangular pentagon (i) in or (ii) about the circle (O).

Construction. Construct an isosceles $\triangle PQR$ having each of the \angle 's at Q and R double of the \angle at P. *Prob. 47.*

Draw any radius OA, and then draw the radius OB making the $\angle AOB =$ the $\angle Q$.

Now, successively draw the radii OC, OD, OE making the \angle 's BOC, COD, DOE each = the $\angle Q$.

(i) Join AB, BC, CD, DE, EA. Then ABCDE is a regular pentagon inscribed in the given \odot .

Proof. Each of the \angle 's at Q, R is one-fifth of four rt. \angle 's. *Prob. 47, Obs.*

Hence each of the \angle 's AOB, BOC, COD, DOE is one-fifth of four rt. \angle 's.

\therefore the $\angle EOA$, which together with these four \angle 's makes up the four rt. \angle 's at O, must also be = one-fifth of four rt. \angle 's.

Thus the five \angle 's at O are equal ;

\therefore the five chords AB, BC, CD, DE, EA are equal.

Hence, the pentagon $ABCDE$ is equilateral.

Again, the arc $AEDC$ = the arc $BAED$;

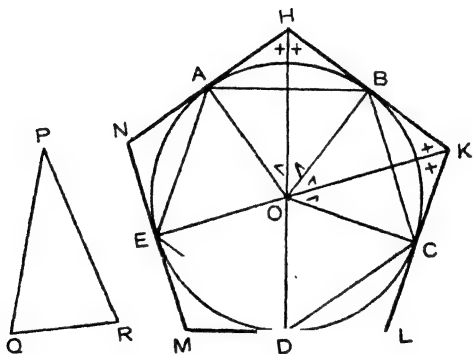
(\because each of them = 3 times the arc AB),

\therefore the $\angle ABC$ = the $\angle BCD$. *Th. 43, Cor. 5.*

Similarly, every two consecutive \angle 's of the pentagon are equal.

Hence the pentagon $ABCDE$ is both equilateral and equiangular, and it is also *inscribed* in the given \odot . **Q. E. F.**

(ii) Draw tangents to the \odot at A, B, C, D, E forming the pentagon $HKLMN$. Then $HKLMN$ is a regular pentagon circumscribed about the \odot .



Proof.

Join OH, OK .

It may be proved, as before, that the five radii OA, OB, OC, OD, OE divide the four rt. \angle 's at O into five equal parts.

Also the \angle 's at A, B, C, D, E are rt. \angle 's. *Th. 45.*

Now, since the tangents AH, BH meet at H,

$$\left. \begin{array}{l} \therefore AH = BH, \\ \text{the } \angle AOH = \text{the } \angle BOH, \\ \text{and the } \angle OHA = \text{the } \angle OHB. \end{array} \right\} \text{Th. 48.}$$

$$\left. \begin{array}{l} \text{Hence, the } \angle BOH = \frac{1}{2} \text{ the } \angle AOB, \\ \text{and the } \angle OHB = \frac{1}{2} \text{ the } \angle AHB. \end{array} \right\}$$

$$\left. \begin{array}{l} \text{Similarly, the } \angle BOK = \frac{1}{2} \text{ the } \angle BOC, \\ \text{and the } \angle OKB = \frac{1}{2} \text{ the } \angle BKC. \end{array} \right\}$$

In the Δ^s OBH, OBK, we have

$$\text{the } \angle OBH = \text{the } \angle OBK, \quad (\text{being rt. } \angle^s);$$

$$\text{the } \angle BOH = \text{the } \angle BOK, \quad (\text{halves of the equal } \angle^s \text{ AOB, BOC})$$

and the side OB common;

\therefore the two Δ^s are congruent.

$$\text{Hence } BH = BK \dots\dots\dots(\alpha)$$

$$\text{and the } \angle OHB = \text{the } \angle OKB \dots\dots\dots(\beta)$$

From (α) , $HK = 2BH$; and in the same way it may be proved that $NH = 2AH$.

$$\therefore NH = HK, (\because AH = BH);$$

$$\text{similarly } HK = KL, KL = LM, LM = MN, \text{ and } MN = NH.$$

Hence the pentagon HKLMN is equilateral.

Again from (β) , \angle^s AHB and BKC are equal. *i. e.* $\angle H = \angle K$.

$$\therefore \text{Similarly, } \angle K = \angle L = \angle M = \angle N.$$

\therefore the pentagon is also equiangular.

Hence, it is regular.

Q. E. F.

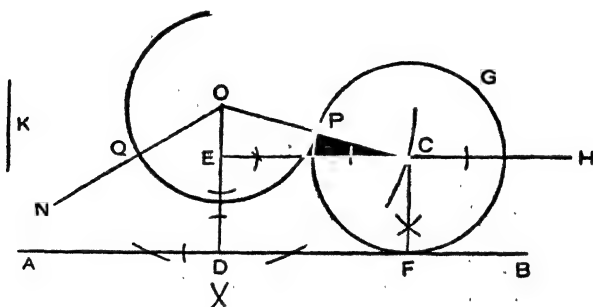
CHAPTER VIII

MISCELLANEOUS CONSTRUCTIONS

I. On Circles.

PROBLEM 49.

1. To construct a circle, with a given radius touching a given circle and a given straight line.



Let the \odot with centre O be the given \odot , AB the given str. line, and K the given radius.

It is required to describe a circle which shall touch the circle (O) as well as the straight line AB , and have a radius $= K$.

Construction. Draw $OD \perp$ to AB , and from DO cut off $DE = K$; through E draw $EH \parallel$ to AB .

Take a radius OQ of the given \odot and produce it to N , making $QN = K$. Then ON is the sum of the radii of the given and the required \odot .

With O as centre and ON as radius describe an arc cutting EH at C .

Join OC cutting the given \odot at P , and draw $CF \perp$ to AB .

Then the \odot described with C as centre and CP as radius will be the reqd. \odot .

Proof. Since $OC=ON$, of which $QP=OQ$.

$$\therefore CP=NQ=K;$$

also, since DC is a rectangle, by construction,

$$\therefore CF=ED=K.$$

Hence $CP=CF$; and \therefore the \odot described with C as centre and CP as radius will also pass through F .

Now, since the two \odot ' meet at P which is a pt. on the line joining the centres.

\therefore the \odot ' touch each other at P . *Th. 47, Note 2.*

Also, since AB is \perp to the radius CF at F .

$\therefore AB$ touches the \odot at F .

Th. 45, Cor. 2.

Thus, the \odot PFG touches each of the given \odot and the given str. line, and has its radius $=K$;

\therefore this is the required \odot .

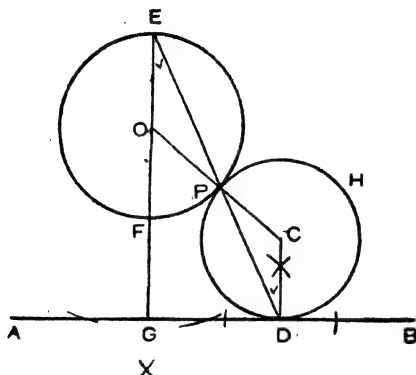
Q. E. F.

NOTE 1. The circle described with O as centre and ON as radius will also cut HE produced at some pt. With that point as centre another \odot may be constructed satisfying the conditions of the problem. This is left as an exercise for the student.

NOTE 2. If the reqd. \odot is *assumed* to be drawn, it is easy to see that the distance of its centre from O is equal to the sum of the radii, and the distance from $AB=K$. Hence follows the construction.

PROBLEM 50.

To construct a circle touching a given circle and also touching a given straight line at a given point.



Let AB be the given str. line and D the given pt. in it, and let the \odot with centre O be the given \odot .

It is required to describe a circle touching the circle (O) and also touching AB at D .

Construction. Draw $OG \perp$ to AB cutting the \odot at F , and produce GO to meet the \odot in E .

(i) Join ED cutting the \odot at P ; join OP .

Through D draw a perpendicular to AB , meeting OP produced in C .

Then the \odot described with C as centre and CP as radius will be the reqd. \odot .

Proof. Since EG and CD are both \perp to AB ,

\therefore they are parallel;

\therefore the $\angle OEP =$ the $\angle CDP$; (*alt. \angle 's*)

also, the $\angle OPE =$ the $\angle CPD$. (*vertically opp. \angle 's*)

But the $\angle OEP =$ the $\angle OPE$; ($\because OP = OE$)

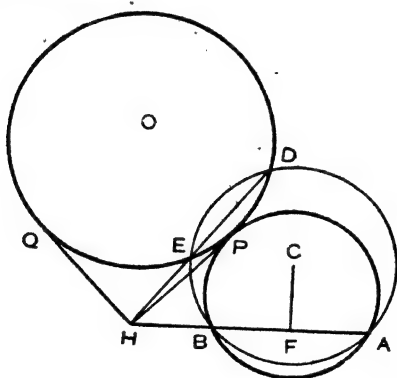
\therefore the $\angle CDP =$ the $\angle CPD$;

and $\therefore CP = CD$.

seen that the $\angle CDP = \angle OFP$; $\therefore OF$ is \parallel to CD , and $\therefore OF$ produced cuts AB at rt. \angle s. We thus find that the pt. of contact of the two \odot s lies on the line DF produced, where OF is that radius of the given \odot which, when produced through F , cuts AB at rt. \angle s. The position of P being known, that of C is found at once, for it lies on PO produced and also on the \perp to AB through D .

PROBLEM 51.

To construct a circle passing through two given points and touching a given circle.



Let A, B be the two given pts. and let the \odot with centre O be the given \odot .

It is required to describe a circle passing through A and B , and also touching the circle (O) .

Join AB and draw FC , the \perp bisector of AB .

Then, FC may pass through O or may not.

(i) Let FC not pass through O .

Construction. With any pt. C , on FC , as centre, and CA or CB as radius, describe a \odot cutting the given \odot at D and E . Join DE and produce it to meet AB produced at H .

Draw HP to touch the given \odot at P .

Problem 32.

Construct a \odot through the pts. A, B, P ; then this will be the reqd. \odot .

Hence, P is a pt. on the line joining the centres of the two \odot 's.

and since the \odot 's meet at P ;

\therefore they touch each other at P .

Th. 47, Note 2.

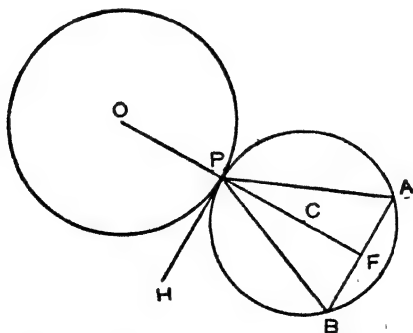
Hence the \odot APB is the reqd. \odot .

Q. E. F.

[If FO be produced to meet the given \odot in Q , it may be proved as above, that the \odot through ABQ is another \odot satisfying the given conditions.]

Analysis : Assume the required \odot to be drawn, touching the given \odot at P . Then the two \odot 's have a common tangent at P ; let this tangent meet AB produced in H . $\therefore HP^2 = HA \cdot HB$, (Th. 59). Through H let any secant be drawn cutting the given \odot in E and D ; then $HD \cdot HE = HP^2$ (Th. 59). Hence $HA \cdot HB = HD \cdot HE$, which shows that the pts. A, B, E, D are concyclic (Th. 58). Hence, if a \odot be constructed passing through A, B and also cutting the given \odot in two pts. D, E , then the pt. in which DE intersects AB is the pt. in which the common tangent to the given and the reqd. \odot 's intersects AB ; whence the construction follows.

If the common tangent at P be \parallel to AB , it will not meet AB produced.

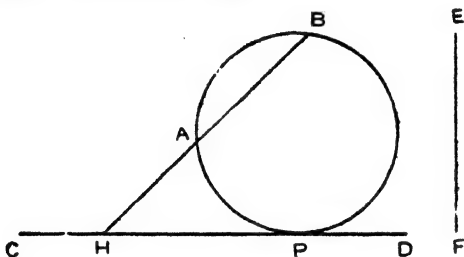


Join PA, PB . Since PH is \parallel to AB , \therefore the $\angle HPB =$ the $\angle PBA$; also the $\angle HPB =$ the $\angle PAB$, in the alt. segment.

Hence the $\angle PBA = \angle PAB$, and $\therefore PA = PB$. Hence P is on the \perp bisector of AB . The centre C of the $\odot APB$ also lies on the \perp bisector of AB . Hence both C and P lie on the \perp bisector of AB , and $\therefore PC$ produced bisects AB at rt. \angle . But CP produced also passes through O . Hence OP produced bisects AB at rt. \angle . In this case therefore the \perp bisector of AB passes through O and cuts the given \odot in the pt. at which the reqd. \odot touches it; whence follows the construction.

PROBLEM 52.

To construct a circle passing through two given points and touching a given straight line which is not parallel to that joining the given points.



Let A, B be the two given points and CD be the given str. line intersecting the str. line AB , when produced, at H .

It is required to draw a circle through A, B and touching the str. line CD .

Construction. Find a str. line EF the square on which is equal in area to the rect. $BH.HA$.

From HD cut off $HP = EF$.

Then the \odot passing through the pts. A, B, P will be the reqd. \odot .

Proof.

Since $HP^2 = HA.HB$,

$\therefore HP$ touches the \odot at P .

Th. 60.

Hence ABP is the reqd. \odot .

Q. E. F.

NOTE. HP may as well be cut off from HC produced. Thus there are two \odot s satisfying the given conditions.

It is required to construct the triangle.

Construction. Draw any str. line $AB=b$. With centre A and radius s , draw the $\odot OPE$; draw a str line LM par' to AB and at a distance p' from it. From B , draw BN perp. on LM and produce it to D , making $ND=BN$. Draw a $\odot DPB$ through B and D and touching the $\odot OPE$. If P be the point of contact, join AP and let it cut LM at C . Then, ACB is the reqd. triangle.

Proof. Because the two $\odot OPE$, DPB touch at P , internally, their centres are collinear with P , the point of contact.

Therefore, the centre of the $\odot DPB$ must lie on AP .

Also, its centre must lie on the perp. bisector, LM , of the chord DB .

\therefore the centre of the $\odot DPB$ is the pt. C , at which LM and AP intersect.

Hence, because $AC+CB=AC+CP=AP=s$, and the perp. distance of C from $AB=p$ (for, C lies on LM), the $\triangle ACB$ is the reqd. triangle.

Obs. It may be easily verified that in the above construction if the given altitude be such that the point D (where $BD=2p$) is outside the $\odot OPE$, the point K will be inside the same \odot ; hence, the $\odot DPB$ which passes through D , B and P (the pt. of contact of the tangent to the $\odot OPE$ from K) cannot be drawn. Hence the construction fails.

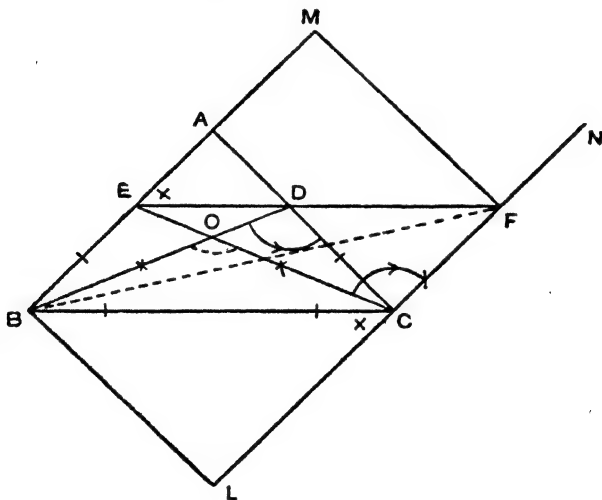
Exercise: Show that there are two \triangle s satisfying the given conditions.

CHAPTER IX

MISCELLANEOUS PROPOSITIONS

I. On Rectilineal Figures and Circles.

1. *If the bisectors of the base angles of a triangle be equal then the triangle is isosceles.* (B. C. S. Exam.)



Let ABC be a triangle and BD , CE be the bisectors of the base $\angle B$ and C .

If $BD = CE$, it is reqd. to prove that the $\triangle ABC$ is isosceles.

At C draw CN , making, the $\angle ECN = \angle BDC$; and cut off from CN , $CF = CD$. From B and F , draw BL , FM perp' on FC and BA (produced if necessary) respectively.

Join EF , BF .

Proof. In the Δ^s BDC, ECF,

$$\therefore BD = CE$$

$$CD = CF$$

and the $\angle BDC = \text{the } \angle ECF$

\therefore the Δ^s are congruent.

\therefore (i) $EF = BC$; (ii) the $\angle DBC = \text{the } \angle FEC$.

Hyp.

Cons.

Cons.

Now, from the ΔBOE ,

the ext. $\angle BOC = \text{the } \angle OBE + \text{the } \angle OEB$

$$= \text{the } \angle OBC + \text{the } \angle OEB$$

[\because BD bisects the $\angle B$]

$$= \text{the } \angle CED + \text{the } \angle OEB, \text{ from (ii) above}$$

$$= \text{the } \angle BED.$$

Again from the ΔODC ,

the ext. $\angle BOC = \text{the } \angle ODC + \text{the } \angle OCD$

$$= \text{the } \angle OCF + \text{the } \angle OCB$$

$$= \text{the } \angle BCF.$$

$$\therefore \text{the } \angle BED = \text{the } \angle BCF.$$

$$\therefore \text{the } \angle FEM = \text{supplement of the } \angle BED$$

$$= \text{supplement of the } \angle BCF = \text{the } \angle BCL.$$

Hence, in the rt. angled Δ^s FEM, BCL

$$\therefore BC = EF, \text{ from (i)}$$

and the $\angle FEM = \text{the } \angle BCL$

\therefore the Δ^s are congruent.

$$\therefore \text{(iii) } EM = CL; \quad \text{(iv) } FM = BL.$$

Again, from the rt. \angle^ed Δ^s BFM, BFL,

$$\therefore FM = BL$$

and the hypotenuse BF is common

\therefore the Δ^s are congruent,

$$\therefore \text{(v) } BM = FL.$$

\therefore from (iii) and (v),

$$BM - EM = FL - CL$$

$$\text{i.e., } BE = CF.$$

But $CF = CD$, by construction.

$$\therefore BE = CD.$$

Hence, in the two Δ 's BEC , BDC

$$\therefore BD = CE$$

$$BE = CD$$

and BC is common ;

\therefore the Δ 's are congruent.

\therefore the $\angle EBC = \angle DCB$

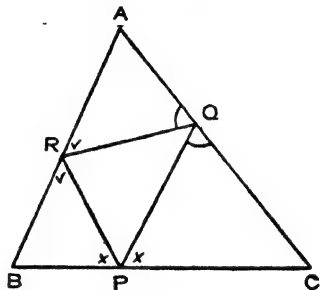
i.e. the $\angle ABC = \angle ACB$.

i.e. the ΔABC is isosceles.

Hyp.

2. *Of all triangles inscribed in a given acute-angled triangle it is the pedal triangle alone which has two of its sides equally inclined to that side of the given triangle on which they meet.*

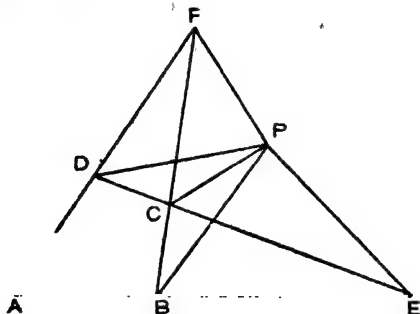
Let the ΔPQR inscribed in the acute-angled ΔABC be such that its sides RP , QP are equally inclined to BC , the sides PQ , QR are equally inclined to CA , and the sides QR , RP are equally inclined to AB , as shown in the accompanying diagram.



It is required to show that the ΔPQR is the pedal triangle of the ΔABC .

Proof. Now, the six \angle 's marked at P , Q , R , together with the \angle 's at A , B , C make up six rt. \angle 's; hence, those six \angle 's are together = 4 rt. \angle 's. Hence the three \angle 's AQR , ARQ and QPC (one being taken from each pair) are together = 2 rt. \angle 's; and \therefore the $\angle QPC = \angle A$, which shows that the quadl. $ABPQ$ is cyclic. Similarly, each of the quadls. $BCQR$ and $CARP$ is cyclic. Hence, if AP , BQ and CR be joined, it is easy to see that the $\angle APQ = \angle ABQ = \angle RCQ = \angle APR$; whence the $\angle APC = \angle APB$; and $\therefore AP$ is \perp to BC . Similarly BQ is \perp to CA and CR is \perp to AB . Hence the ΔPQR is no other than the pedal triangle. Thus, of all the Δ 's that can be inscribed in the ΔABC , it is only the pedal Δ that has the above property. Q. E. D.

3. The circum-circles of the four triangles formed by four given straight lines, of which no two are parallel, have one point common to them all.



Let the four str. lines AB, DC, AD, BC form the four Δ^s ABF, DCF, ADE, BCE. C is clearly one pt. of intersection of the \odot^s DCF, BCE; let their second pt. of intersection be P.

It is required to prove that P is a pt. on the \odot ABF and also on the \odot ADE.

Proof. Join CP, BP, DP.

The quadl. BCPE being cyclic, the $\angle PBE =$ the $\angle PCE$; Th. 37.

and the quadl. DCPF being cyclic, the $\angle PCE =$ the $\angle PFD$. Th. 39, Cor. 1.

Hence, the $\angle PBE =$ the $\angle PFA$,

and \therefore the quadl. ABPF is cyclic, Th. 40, Cor.

Thus, P is a pt. on the \odot ABF.

In the same way, it can be shown that P is a pt. on the \odot ADE.

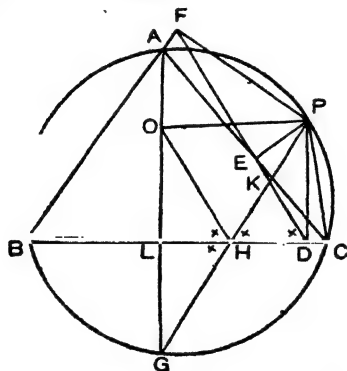
COR. 1. If the four given straight lines are such that the quadl. ABCD is cyclic, then the three pts. F, P, E are collinear.

For, in that case, the $\angle CDA =$ the $\angle CBE$; \therefore the \angle^s FPC and EPC are together $=$ the \angle^s CBE and EPC $=$ two rt. \angle^s . Hence, FP and PE are in the same str. line.

COR. 2. If from P the \perp^s PH, PK, PL, PM be drawn to the lines ABE, DCE, BCF, ADF respectively, then the four pts. H, K, L, M are collinear.

Since P is a pt. on the circum- \odot of the $\triangle BCE$, and PH , PK , PL are the perp' from P on the sides of the triangle, \therefore the three pts. H , K , L lie in one str. line. (Simson's Line Page 236). Similarly, the three pts. K , L , M are in one str. line. Thus, the str. line that passes through K and L also passes through H and M ; which shows that all the four pts. lie in one str. line.

4. The line joining the ortho-centre O of a triangle ABC to any point P on the circum-circle is bisected by the pedal line of P with respect to the triangle.



In the above diagram, let DEF be the pedal line of the pt. P .

It is required to prove that OP is bisected by the line DEF .

Proof. Produce AO to meet BC in L and the circum- \odot in G . Join PG , cutting BC at H , and the pedal line at K .

Join OH , PC . The line AOL is \perp to BC .

Thus, if BO , BG be joined,

the $\angle GBC = \text{the } \angle GAC = \text{the complement of the } \angle ACB$
 $= \text{the } \angle CBO$.

\therefore from the \triangle 's LBO , LBG , in which the $\angle BLO$
 $= \text{the } \angle BLG$, the $\angle GBL = \text{the } \angle LBO$ and BL is
 common, we have, $OL = LG$.

Hence the \triangle 's OLH , GLH are congruent;

and \therefore the $\angle LHG = \text{the } \angle LHO$.

Now, the quadl. PEDC being cyclic,

the $\angle EDH = \text{the } \angle EPC$

$= \text{the complement of the } \angle PCA$

$= \text{the complement of the } \angle PGA$

$= \text{the } \angle LHG$

$= \text{the } \angle LHO$;

$\therefore DF$ is \parallel to HO .

Again, the $\angle KDH = \text{the } \angle LHG$

$= \text{the } \angle KHD$

$\therefore \text{ the } \angle KDP = \text{the } \angle KPD$;

Hence, $KH = KD = KP$.

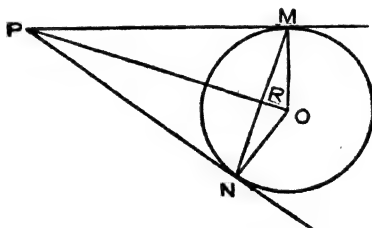
Proved above.

Thus, K is the mid-pt. of the side PH of the $\triangle OPH$, and the line DKF is \parallel to the side HO ;

\therefore the side OP is bisected by the line DEF .

Q. E. D.

5. P is any point outside a circle of which the centre is O ; PM, PN are tangents to the circle, and MN the chord of contact. If OP intersects MN at R , then $OR \cdot OP = OM^2$.



Proof. Since the $\angle^s OMP, ONP$ are supplementary, each of them being a rt. \angle ,

\therefore the quadl. $OMPN$ is cyclic.

Hence, the $\angle OMN = \text{the } \angle OPN$

$= \text{the } \angle OPM$.

Th. 37.

Th. 46, Cor.

Hence, OM touches the \odot circumscribed about the $\triangle PMR$ at M ;

Th. 48, Cor.

$\therefore OR \cdot OP = OM^2$.

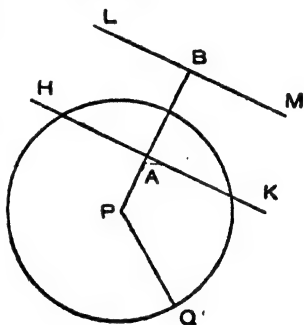
Th. 59.

Obs. $PM = PN$, the \perp bisector of MN passes through P ; for a similar reason, the \perp bisector of MN passes through O . Hence OP is the \perp bisector of MN . Thus, *the chord of contact of tangents drawn to a circle from an external point is bisected perpendicularly by the line joining that point to the centre.*

6. Definition: If two points are so related to a circle that they lie in a straight line passing through the centre, and the rectangle contained by their distances from the centre is equal to the square on the radius, then each of these points is said to be the **inverse** of the other, with respect to the given circle.

Thus, in the preceding diagram, the points R and P are a pair of *inverse points* with respect to the circle whose centre is O and radius $= OM$.

Obs. If A and B are a pair of *inverse points* with respect to a circle whose centre is P and radius $= PQ$ (that is, if P, A, B are collinear and $PA \cdot PB = PQ^2$), and if through A a straight line HK be drawn \perp to the line PAB , then the point B is said to be the **pole** of the line HK , and the line HK , is said to be the **polar** of the point B . Also, if LM be drawn through B perpendicular to the line PAB , then A is the **pole** of the line LM , and the line LM is the **polar** of the point A . Thus, in the preceding diagram, the point P is the **pole** of the line MN and MN is the **polar** of the point P .

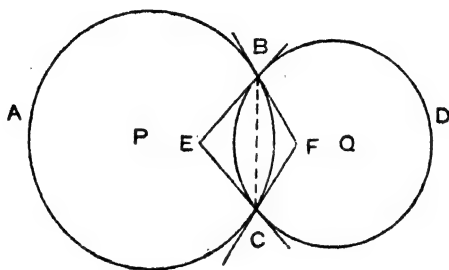


II. Orthogonal Circles.

7. Definition: Two circles are said to be **orthogonal**, or to intersect **orthogonally**, when the two tangents at either point of intersection are perpendicular to each other.

In the diagram of page 305, M is a pt. of intersection of the given \odot and the \odot about the $\triangle PMR$; also MP and MO , which are the tangents at M to those two \odot 's, respectively, are \perp to each other. Hence the given \odot and the \odot about the $\triangle PMR$ intersect *orthogonally*. Similarly, the given \odot and the \odot about the $\triangle PNR$ intersect *orthogonally*.

1. *The angle between the tangents to any two intersecting circles at one of their points of intersection is equal to the angle between the tangents at the other point.*



Let ABC, DBC be any two \odot 's, intersecting each other at B and C ; and let the tangents at B and C to the two \odot 's intersect at E and F respectively, as is shown in the diagram.

It is required to prove that the $\angle EBF = \text{the } \angle ECF$.

Join BC .

Proof. Since the tangents at B and C to the $\odot BDC$ intersect at E ,

$$EB = EC.$$

$$\therefore \text{the } \angle EBC = \text{the } \angle ECB.$$

$$\text{Similarly, } FB = FC.$$

$$\therefore \text{the } \angle FBC = \text{the } \angle FCB$$

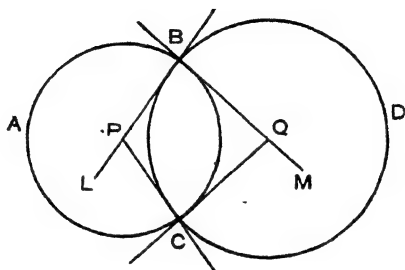
$$\therefore \text{the } \angle EBC + \text{the } \angle FBC = \text{the } \angle ECB + \text{the } \angle FCB$$

$$\text{i.e. the } \angle EBF = \text{the } \angle ECF.$$

COR. 1. EF bisects the angles BEC, BFC .

COR. 2. *If the \odot 's ABC, DBC be orthogonal to each other, the four points E, B, F, C are concyclic.*

2. If two circles intersect orthogonally, the tangents at their points of intersection to either of them pass through the centre of the other.



Let $\odot ABC$, $\odot DCB$ be any two \odot 's, intersecting orthogonally at B , C and let P and Q be their centres, respectively.

It is required to prove that (i) the tangents at B and C to the $\odot DCB$ pass through P ;

and (ii) the tangents at B , C to the $\odot ABC$ pass through Q .

Proof. Because BL is a tangent at B to the $\odot DCB$, and BM is perp. to BL through the pt. of contact,

\therefore BM must pass through the centre Q of the $\odot DCB$.

But BM is a tangent to the $\odot ABC$;

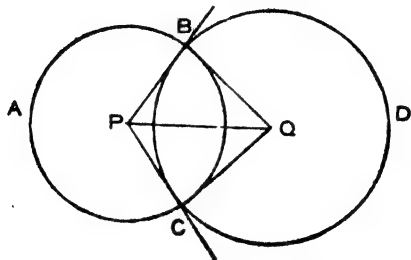
\therefore the tangent at B to the $\odot ABC$ passes through Q , the centre of the $\odot DCB$.

Similarly, the tangent CL to the $\odot DCB$ passes through P , the centre of the $\odot ABC$.

In like manner, it can be shown that the tangents at C to either of the two \odot 's pass through the centre of the other.

COR. The angles subtended by the common chord of any two orthogonal circles at their centres are supplementary.

3. The square on the distance between the centres of any two orthogonal circles is equal to the sum of the squares on their radii.



Let P, Q be the centres of two orthogonal circles ABC, DBC, which intersect at B and C.

It is required to prove that sq. on PQ = sum of the squares on the radii of the two \odot 's.

Join PQ, PB, QB.

Proof. Since the \odot 's intersect orthogonally,

PB, QB are tangents to the two \odot 's, one to each; and they include a rt. \angle between them. Prop. 2, p. 308.

\therefore the $\triangle PBQ$ is a rt. \angle^{ed} Δ , of which PQ is the hypotenuse.

$$\therefore PQ^2 = PB^2 + QB^2 \quad \text{Pythagoras' Theorem.}$$

= sum of the squares on the radii of the two \odot 's,

because, PB and QB are the radii of the two \odot 's.

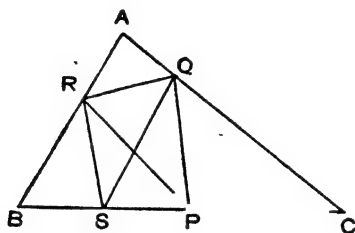
Obs. If d be the distance between P and Q, and r_1, r_2 be the radii of the two circles, the above relation is :—

$$\begin{aligned} d^2 &= r_1^2 + r_2^2; \\ \text{or, } 2d^2 &= 2(r_1^2 + r_2^2) \\ &= (r_1 + r_2)^2 + (r_1 - r_2)^2 \\ \text{i.e. } &> (r_1 + r_2)^2; \\ \text{whence, } r_1 + r_2 &< \sqrt{2}d, \end{aligned}$$

i.e. the sum of the radii of two orthogonal \odot 's is less than $\sqrt{2}$ -times the distance between their centres.

III. Maxima-Minima.

1. *Of all triangles that can be inscribed in an acute-angled triangle, the pedal triangle is that which has the least perimeter.*

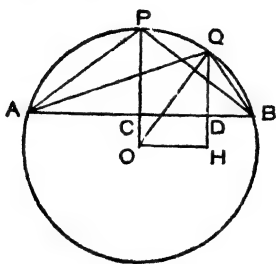


Let ABC be an acute-angled Δ .

It is required to show that the pedal triangle of the ΔABC has the least perimeter.

Proof. Now, of all the Δ' that can be inscribed in the ΔABC , either the pedal Δ , or some one of the others, must have the least perimeter. Let PQR be any of the inscribed Δ' other than the pedal Δ , as in the above diagram. Since PQR is not the pedal Δ , it must have at least one pair of sides that are not equally inclined to that side of the ΔABC on which they meet; let RP, PQ be that pair. Suppose then that S is the pt. in BC such that RS, SQ are equally inclined to it; then $RS + SQ$ is $< RP + PQ$, and \therefore the perimeter of the ΔRSQ is $<$ that of the ΔRPQ . The ΔPQR is \therefore not one having the least perimeter. Hence, the Δ of minimum perimeter is clearly no other than the pedal Δ ; or, which is the same as, it is the pedal Δ that has the minimum perimeter.'

2. Of all triangles standing on the same base and having the same vertical angle, the isosceles is that which has the greatest area and the greatest perimeter.



Let the isos. $\triangle APB$ stand on the base AB ; and let AQB be any other \triangle on the same base, having the vertical $\angle AQB =$ the $\angle APB$.

(i) It is required to prove that the area of the $\triangle APB$ is greater than the area of the $\triangle AQB$.

Proof, Since the $\angle APB =$ the $\angle AQB$,

\therefore the four pts. A, P, Q, B are concyclic.

Th. 38.

Let O be the centre of the \odot passing through these four points, and draw $OC, QD \perp$ to AB .

Then OC is the \perp bisector of AB ;

Th. 33.

and since $PA = PB$, $\therefore OC$ produced must pass through P .

Draw $OH \perp$ to QD produced; join OQ .

Now, in the rt. $\angle^d \triangle OQH$, the hypotenuse $OQ > QH$.

Hence $OP > QH$,
and, CH being a rectangle, $CO = DH$; }
 $\therefore PC > QD$.

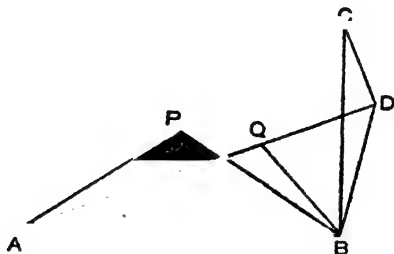
Now, the area of the $\triangle APB = \frac{1}{2}$ the rect. $AB \cdot PC$;

and that of the $\triangle AQB = \frac{1}{2}$ the rect. $AB \cdot QD$.

Hence the area of the $\triangle APB >$ the area of the $\triangle AQB$.

Q. Ee

(ii) It is required to prove that the perimeter of the $\triangle APB$ is greater than the perimeter of the $\triangle AQB$.



Proof. Produce AP to C making $PC = PB$, and AQ to D making $QD = QB$.

Join CB, DB, CD.

Since $AP = PB = PC$, \therefore the \odot described on AC as diameter will pass through B;

\therefore the $\angle ABC$ is a rt \angle .

Now, since $PC = PB$, \therefore the $\angle PBC =$ the $\angle PCB$,
and \therefore the $\angle APB =$ double the $\angle ACB$; }
similarly, the $\angle AQB =$ double the $\angle ADB$. }

Hence, the $\angle ACB =$ the $\angle ADB$;
and \therefore the quadl. ACDB is cyclic.

Th. 38.

Hence, the $\angle ADC =$ the $\angle ABC$

$=$ a rt. \angle .

Th. 41.

Now, in the rt. \angle^d $\triangle ADC$,

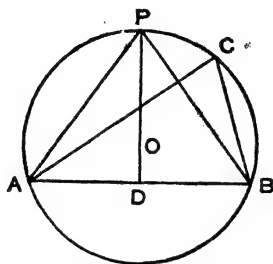
the hypotenuse AC > the side AD;

$\therefore AP + PB > AQ + QB$.

Hence the perimeter of the $\triangle APB$ is > the perimeter of the $\triangle AQB$.

Q. E. D.

3. *Of all triangles that can be inscribed in a given circle, that which has the greatest area, or the greatest perimeter, is equilateral.*



Let $\triangle ABC$ be the given \odot of which the centre is O .

(i) *It is required to prove that of all \triangle 's that can be inscribed in the $\odot ABC$, that which has the greatest area is equilateral.*

Proof. The \triangle which has the greatest area must be either equilateral or non-equilateral.

Let $\triangle ABC$ be any non-equilateral \triangle inscribed in the given \odot .

It must then have at least one pair of unequal sides; let AC , CB be that pair.

Draw $OD \perp$ to AB , and produce DO to meet the \odot in P .

Join PA , PB .

Now, PD is the \perp bisector of AB .

$\therefore PA = PB$.

Hence, of the two \triangle 's $\triangle APB$, $\triangle ACB$, which stand on the same base AB and have equal vertical angles, the $\triangle APB$ is isosceles.

Hence the area of the $\triangle APB$ is greater than that of the $\triangle ACB$.

Thus, so long as the $\triangle ACB$ has got a pair of unequal sides, another triangle of greater area can always be found.

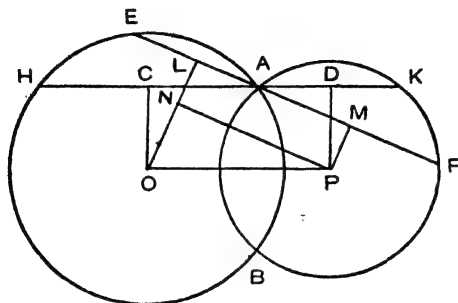
Hence, the \triangle of maximum area inscribed in the \odot cannot be non-equilateral;

\therefore it must be equilateral.

(ii) *To prove that of all \triangle 's that can be inscribed in the $\odot ABC$, that which has the greatest perimeter is equilateral.*

[The proof is similar to the above and is left as an exercise for the student.]

4. Two circles whose centres are O and P cut each other at the points A and B ; of all the lines drawn through A or B and terminated by the two circumferences, the greatest is that which is parallel to OP .



Let HK be the line through $A \parallel$ to OP , and let EF be *any* other line through A , as in the above diagram.

It is required to prove that HK is $> EF$.

Proof. Draw $OC, PD \perp$ to HK ; $OL, PM \perp$ to EF , and $PN \perp$ to OL .

Since OC is \perp to HA .

$$\therefore HA = 2AC.$$

Th. 33.

Similarly, $AK = 2AD$;

$$\therefore HK = 2CD.$$

In the same way, $EF = 2LM$.

Now CP and NM are evidently rectangles;

$$\therefore \begin{cases} CD = OP, \\ \text{and } LM = NP. \end{cases}$$

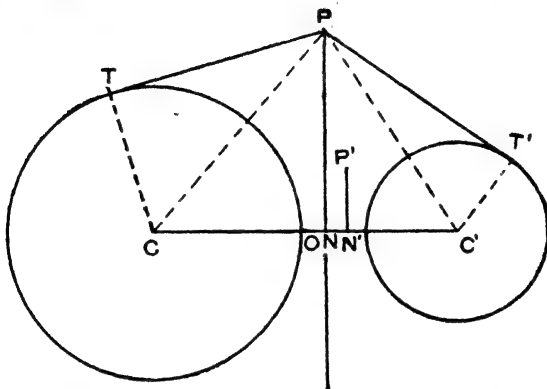
But, in the rt. $\angle^d \triangle OPN$,
the hypotenuse $OP >$ the side NP ;

$$\therefore CD > LM, \text{ and } \therefore HK > EF.$$

Q. E. D.

IV. Radical Axis.

1. Find the locus of points from which tangents to two given non-intersecting circles are equal.



Let there be two non-intersecting circles whose centres are C and C' , and whose radii are r and r' , respectively, as shown in the diagram.

Suppose P to be such a point that the tangents PT , PT' drawn from P to the circles, are equal.

It is required to find the locus of P .

From P , draw $PN \perp$ to CC' . Join CT , CP , $C'T'$, $C'P$.

Bisect CC' at O .

Proof. Because the $\angle^s CTP$, CNP are rt. \angle^s ,
 $\therefore PT^2 = CP^2 - CT^2 = (CN^2 + PN^2) - r^2$.

Again, \therefore the $\angle^s C'T'P$, $C'NP$ are rt. \angle^s ,
 $\therefore PT'^2 = C'P^2 - C'T'^2 = (C'N^2 + PN^2) - r'^2$,
 $\therefore CN^2 + PN^2 - r^2 = C'N^2 + PN^2 - r'^2$,

[$\because PT = PT'$.]

i.e. $CN^2 - C'N^2 = r^2 - r'^2$, taking away PN^2 from both sides.

$$\therefore (CN + C'N)(CN - C'N) = r^2 - r'^2 \dots \dots \dots (1)$$

But $CN + C'N = CC'$; and $CN - C'N = (CO + ON) - (C'O - ON)$
 $= 2.ON$, $\therefore CO = C'O$.

$$\therefore (1) \text{ becomes } 2CC'.ON = r^2 - r'^2 \dots \dots \dots (2)$$

Similarly, if P' be another point such that tangents to the two \odot 's from P' are equal and if $P'N'$ be the perp. to CC' , it may be shown that

$$2CC' \cdot ON' = r^2 - r'^2 \dots \dots \dots (3)$$

\therefore from (2) and (3), $ON = ON'$, which is impossible, unless N and N' coincide.

Thus, PN , PN' are both perp. to CC' through the same point, N , which is impossible, unless PN , $P'N$ coincide *entirely*.

$\therefore P'$ must lie on PN .

Hence, all points from which tangents to the two \odot 's are equal, lie on the same str. line *viz.* the perp. through N to CC' , the line of centres of the two \odot 's.

Hence, the required locus is a str. line perp. to the line of centres of the two circles.

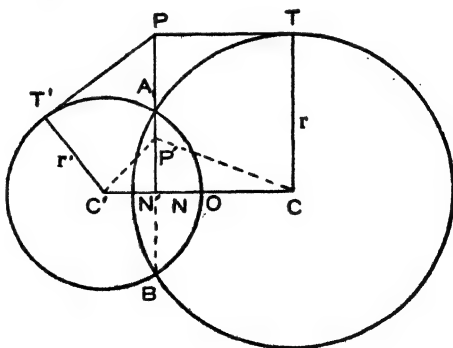
8. Definition : The locus of points from which tangents to two given circles are equal is called the **radical axis** of the two circles.

It is clear from what has been shown in the last proposition that *the radical axis of two given circles is at right angles to the line of their centres.*

2. *The radical axis of two given intersecting circles is the same as their common chord.*

Let there be two intersecting circles whose common chord is AB ; and of which the centres are C, C' and radii are r, r' respectively.

It is required to show that the radical axis of the circles will coincide with AB .



Proof. Let P be any point outside the two given \odot 's such that the tangents PT, PT' , drawn from P to the two \odot 's are equal. If PN be the perp. from P to CC' , then, by the last proposition, $2CC'.ON = r^2 - r'^2$, where O is the mid-pt. of CC' .

Let the common chord AB meet CC' at N' , so that AN' is \perp to CC' . Suppose P' to be any point in AB . Join $CP', C'P'$.

$$\text{Now, } CP'^2 - CA^2 = AP'.P'B = C'P'^2 - C'A^2.$$

$$\therefore CP'^2 - C'P'^2 = CA^2 - C'A^2 = r^2 - r'^2 \dots \dots \dots (1)$$

$$\text{But } CP'^2 = CN'^2 + P'N'^2, \text{ and } C'P'^2 = C'N'^2 + P'N'^2$$

$$\therefore (1) \text{ becomes } CN'^2 - C'N'^2 = r^2 - r'^2;$$

$$\text{or, } (CN' + C'N')(CN' - C'N') = r^2 - r'^2$$

$$\text{or, } 2CC'.ON' = r^2 - r'^2.$$

$$\text{Hence, } 2CC'.ON = 2CC'.ON', \text{ (each} = r^2 - r'^2 \text{)}.$$

$\therefore ON = ON'$, which is impossible, unless N and N' coincide.

\therefore the perp. drawn to CC' from the point P meets CC' at the same point where the common chord meets it.

Also, since the common chord, also, is perp. to CC' , P must be a point on the common chord, AB , *produced*.

Similarly, all points from which tangents to the two circles are equal lie on the common chord *produced*.

Hence, the radical axis of two given circles is the same as their common chord.

Obs. Although no tangent can be drawn to any two intersecting circles from any point on their common chord, and as such it does not satisfy the condition of being a radical axis, the entire straight line obtained by producing the common chord bothways is still called the radical axis of the two circles.

3. *The radical axes of any three non-intersecting circles, taken in pairs, either meet in a point or are all parallel.*

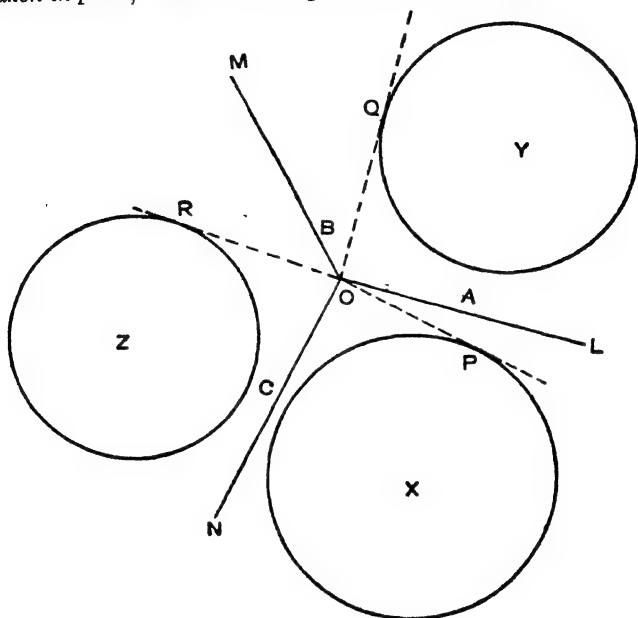


Fig. 1.

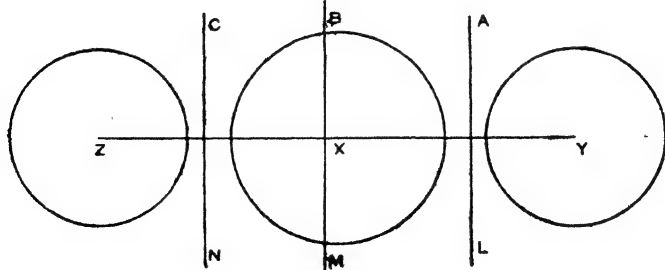


Fig. 2.

Let X, Y, Z be the centres of three non-intersecting circles ;

and let the radical axis of the circles X, Y be AL , that of Y, Z be BM and that of Z, X be CN .

It is required to prove that (i) if two of the radical axes, say AL, BM , meet at a point O , then the third one, CN , must pass through O ;

or, (ii) if AL, BM be parallel, CN is also par^l to them.

Proof. (i) First suppose AL, BM meet at O . Draw OP, OQ, OR tangents to the circles X, Y, Z respectively.

Then, $\because O$ is a pt. on AL , $\therefore OP = OQ$;

also, $\because O$ is a pt. on BM , $\therefore OQ = OR$.

$\therefore OP = OR$; and these being tangents to the circles X, Z , O is a point on the radical axis of the circles X, Z .

i.e. O is a point on CN .

$\therefore AL, BM, CN$ all pass through O .

(ii) Secondly, suppose AL, BM are par^l.

Since the radical axis of any two circles is at right angles to the line of their centres,

AL is \perp to XY ; and BM is \perp to YZ .

Hence, since AL, BM are par^l, the str. lines XY, YZ , both of which have the pt. Y common, are in one and the same str. line.

$\therefore X, Y, Z$ lie on the same str. line.

Again, since the radical axis, CN , of the $\odot^s X, Z$ is \perp to XZ ,

$\therefore AL, BM, CN$ are all parallel because they are perp^d to the same str. line.

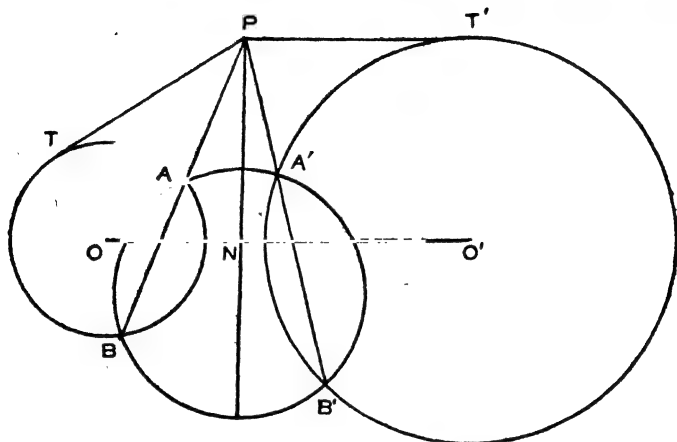
Obs. If the circles be such that only one of them intersects the other two, which are themselves non-intersecting, the truth of the above theorem may be established in a similar manner.

But if the circles intersect *each other*, two by two, the above theorem reduces to one which proves that the common chords of three circles, which intersect each other in pairs, are concurrent.

9. Definition : The point at which the radical axes of any three circles, taken in pairs, meet (if at all), is called their **radical centre**.

The pt. O in fig. 1 is the radical centre of the $\odot^s X, Y, Z$.

4. To construct the radical axis of two given circles, which do not intersect.



Let $\odot TAB$, $\odot T'A'B'$ be the given circles, which do not intersect ; and let their centres be O and O' respectively.

It is required to construct their radical axis.

Construction. Draw any other $\odot BAB'$ to cut the given \odot 's at A, B and A', B' . Join AB , $A'B'$; and produce them to meet at P .

Then the str. line through P at right angles to OO' is the reqd. radical axis.

Proof. Let PT and PT' be the tangents from P to the given \odot 's.

$$\text{Then } PT^2 = PA \cdot PB ; \text{ and } PT'^2 = PA' \cdot PB'.$$

But, BA and $B'A'$ are chords of the $\odot BAB'$ and are produced to meet at P ;

$$\therefore PA \cdot PB = PA' \cdot PB'.$$

$$\therefore PT^2 = PT'^2$$

$$\therefore PT = PT',$$

i.e. P is a pt. on the radical axis.

10. Definition : If there be a system of circles such that the radical axis of *any two* of them is the same for any other pair, the circles are said to be **co-axial**.

MISCELLANEOUS EXERCISES

1. Show that the middle points of the chords of a circle which pass through a given point all lie on the circumference of another circle.

2. If a quadrilateral be circumscribed about a given circle, prove that the sum of any pair of opposite sides is equal to the sum of the other pair. Hence prove that any parallelogram circumscribed about a circle is a rhombus.

3. Prove that the triangle formed by joining the three points in which the in-circle of a triangle meets the sides, is acute-angled.

4. The diagonals AC, BD of a parallelogram ABCD intersect at O. Show that the circum-circles of the triangles AOB, COD touch each other at O.

5. Show that the greatest quadrilateral that can be inscribed in a circle is a square.

6. On the sides BC, CA, AB of a given triangle ABC, any three points D, E, F respectively are taken. Prove that the circum-circles of the triangles EAF, FBD, DCE meet in a point.

7. If the in-circle of a triangle ABC touches the sides BC, CA, AB at D, E, F respectively, prove that $BC + AF = CA + BD = AB + CE =$ the semi-perimeter of the triangle ABC.

8. With the vertices A, B, C of a triangle as centres, construct three circles each of which shall touch the other two.

9. Prove that the sum of any three alternate angles of a hexagon inscribed in a circle is equal to four right angles.

10. AB is the common chord of two circles, and P is any point on the circumference of one of them so that the straight lines PAQ, PBR meet the circumference of the other in Q and R. Prove that the arc QR is of the same magnitude for different positions of P.

11. The opposite sides of a cyclic quadrilateral are produced to meet in P and Q, and about the triangles so formed without the quadrilateral circles are described, which meet in R. Prove that the points P, R, Q are collinear.

12. ABC is a triangle; BCA' , CAB' , ABC' are equilateral triangles so that the points (A, A'), (B, B') (C, C') are on opposite sides of BC, CA, AB respectively. Prove that the circum-circles of the three equilateral triangles meet at a point which is also the point of concurrence of the lines AA' , BB' , CC' .

13. If an equilateral triangle be inscribed in a circle, and the adjacent arcs cut off by two of its sides be bisected, prove that the line joining the points of bisection is trisected by the sides.

14. P is any point on the circum-circle of a given triangle ABC ; PA' , PB' , PC' are chords of the circle perpendicular respectively to BC , CA , AB . Show that the triangles ABC , $A'B'C$ are congruent.

15. If S be the circum-centre of a triangle ABC , and if the perpendicular from S on BC meets the circum-circle in K and L , L being on the same side of BC as A , prove that AK and AL bisect the interior and exterior angles at A . Also, if I be the in-centre, prove that K is the circum-centre of the triangle BIC .

16. ABC is a triangle; C is the point of intersection of the perpendiculars AD , BE , CF upon the sides of the triangle; G , H , K are the middle points of the sides, and L , M , N the middle points of the lines OA , OB , OC . Prove that each of the angles LHG , LKG , is a right angle; and hence prove that the circle passing through the points, G , H , K also passes through the six points (L, D) , (M, E) , (N, F) .

17. Given one angle, of a triangle, the side opposite to it, and the sum of the other two sides, construct the triangle.

18. ABC is any triangle, inscribed in a circle, and AP , BQ are chords of the circle parallel to BC , CA respectively. Prove that PQ is parallel to the tangent at C .

19. AB is the diameter of a semi-circle, D and E are any two points on its circumference. AE , BD intersect at M ; and AD , BE produced intersect at L . Prove that LM produced cuts AB at right angles.

20. BC is a given arc of a circle whose centre is O ; A is any point in BC . AD , AE are drawn perpendiculars to OB , OC . Prove that the line DE is of constant length.

21. Prove that an equiangular polygon inscribed in a circle has its alternate sides equal. Hence show that an equiangular pentagon inscribed in a circle is also equilateral.

22. If any number of triangles be on the same base, on the same side of it, and have equal vertical angles, prove that the bisectors of the vertical angles are concurrent.

23. If two circles intersect and if one of them passes through the centre of other, prove that the tangents to the latter at the points of intersection will meet on the former.

24. If P be any point on the circle circumscribed about a given equilateral triangle ABC , prove that one of the lines PA , PB , PC is equal to the sum of the other two.

25. O is the circum-centre of a triangle ABC , and D , E , F are the feet of the perpendiculars from A , B , C on the opposite sides. Show that OA , OB , OC are respectively perpendiculars to EF , FD , DE .

26. Right-angled triangles are described on the same hypotenuse. Show that the locus of the centres of the in-circles is a quarter of the circumference of a circle of which the common hypotenuse is a chord.

27. Construct a triangle, having given one side and the radii of the in-circle and circum-circle.

28. $ABCDE$ is a regular pentagon inscribed in a circle, and AC , BD intersect at O . Prove that $AO = DO$, and that $BC^2 = AC \cdot CO$.

29. $ACDB$ is a semi-circle. AB being the diameter, and the two chords AD , BC intersect at E . If a circle be circumscribed about the triangle CDE , prove that it will cut the former at right angles.

30. If I be the in-centre, and I_1 , I_2 , I_3 , the ex-centres of a given triangle, prove that I is the ortho-centre of the triangle $I_1 I_2 I_3$. Hence show that the circum-circles of the four triangles $II_2 I_3$, $II_3 I_1$, $II_1 I_2$ and $I_1 I_2 I_3$ are equal to one another.

31. The diagonals of a given quadrilateral $ABCD$ intersect at O . Show that the centres of the circles circumscribed about the triangles OAB , OBC , OCD , ODA are at the angular points of a parallelogram.

32. If a line BC of constant length have its extremities on two fixed str. lines AX , AY , prove that the circum-radius of the $\triangle ABC$ is of the same length for all positions of BC . Hence prove that, as BC changes its position, the circum-centre of the $\triangle ABC$ moves on the \odot^{ce} of a \odot .

33. In the preceding example, show that the distance of the circum-centre from the line BC is the same for all positions of BC . Hence prove that, as BC changes its position, the ortho-centre of the triangle ABC moves on the circumference of a circle.

34. ABC is an equilateral triangle inscribed in a circle whose centre is O , and BO is produced to meet the circumference in D . Prove that the arc AD is one-sixth of the whole circumference. Hence prove that $AD = AO$, and that $AB^2 = 3OA^2$.

35. PM , PN are tangents to a circle, of which the centre is O , and MN the chord of contact. PEF is any straight line cutting the circle at E , F . OS is drawn perpendicular to EF and produced to meet MN

produced in Q . Prove that $OS \cdot OQ = (\text{radius})^2$, and hence prove that QE, QF are tangents to the circle.

36. Through a given point without a given circle draw a straight line so that the part intercepted by the circumference may be equal to a given straight line not greater than the diameter.

37. The internal and external bisectors of the angle A of a triangle meet the base BC in E, E' and the circum-circle in D and D' . Prove that D is the ortho-centre of the triangle $EE'D'$.

38. From S , the circum-centre of the triangle ABC , perpendiculars SA', SB', SC' are drawn to the sides, and these perpendiculars are produced to P, Q, R respectively so that $SA' = A'P, SB' = B'Q$ and $SC' = C'R$. Prove that S is the ortho-centre of the triangle PQR , and hence show that $\triangle ABC, PQR$ have the same nine-point circle.

39. Construct a triangle, having given the ortho-centre, the circum-centre and one angular point.

40. AB and AC are two given str. lines in which B and C are two given pts. BD is drawn \perp to AC , and $DE \perp$ to AB ; in like manner CF is drawn \perp to AB , and FG to AC . Prove that EG is \parallel to BC .

41. If the centres of two circles which touch each other externally be fixed, prove that the external common tangents of the two circles will also touch the circle of which the straight line joining the fixed centres is the diameter.

42. AB, AC are the equal sides of an isosceles triangle ABC . P is a point on AB , and Q a point on AC produced such that $BP = CQ$. Prove that, for all positions of PQ , the circum-circle of the triangle APQ passes through a fixed point on the bisector of the angle BAC .

43. ABC is a triangle, and BE, CF are the perpendiculars from B and C upon the opposite sides. If K be the mid-pt. of BC , prove that $KF = KE$, and that each of the $\angle KFE, KEF$ is equal to the $\angle A$.

44. If two circles touch each other internally, prove that any chord of the greater circle which touches the smaller is divided at the point of contact into segments which subtend equal angles at the point of contact of the two circles.

45. PA, PB, PC are any three chords of a circle. Prove that the circles described on these chords as diameters will intersect again in three points which are collinear.

46. A series of circles touch a fixed straight line at a fixed point. Show that the tangents at the points where they cut a parallel fixed straight line all touch a fixed circle.

47. AD , BE , CF are the perpendiculars of the triangle ABC . Prove that the feet of the \perp^s from D on AB , AC , BE , CF are collinear.

48. O is the ortho-centre of a $\triangle ABC$, and P , Q , R the circum-centres of the $\triangle^s BOC$, COA , AOB respectively. Prove that O is the circum-centre of the $\triangle PQR$. Prove also that each of the quadrls. $OPCQ$, and $OQAR$ $ORBP$ is a rhombus, and that the $\triangle^s ABC$, POR are congruent.

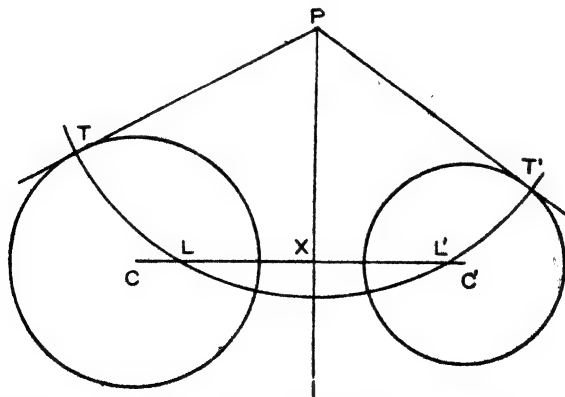
49. Having given the base and the vertical angle of a triangle, prove that the nine-point circle touches a fixed circle whose radius is equal to that of the circum-circle.

50. A man standing on the deck of a ship in the middle of a calm ocean looks around with a telescope. Show that the distance from him of the farthest object he can see on the surface of the ocean is very nearly $\sqrt{\frac{1}{2}}$ mile, where 1 inch is the height of the observe's eye above the water, assuming the radius of the earth to be 4000 miles.

51. If from a point P on the radical axis of two given circles a tangent PT be drawn to one of them, prove that the circle whose centre is P and radius is PT cuts the two given circles orthogonally.

52. Any circle which cuts two given non-intersecting circles orthogonally, pass through two fixed points. [a \odot whose centre is C and radius is r is sometimes denoted by (C, r) .]

[Let P be the centre a \odot cutting the given $\odot^s (C, r)$, (C', r')



orthogonally ; and let it cut CC' , the line of centres at L , L' .

Since PT, PT' touch the given \odot 's and $PT=PT'$, $\therefore P$ is on the radical axis PX . Since, CT touches the $\odot TLL'$, $\therefore CLCL'=CT^2=r^2$. Now X bisects LL' ,

$$\therefore XC^2 - XL^2 = CLCL' = r^2$$

$$\therefore XL^2 = XC^2 - r^2.$$

$$\therefore L, L' \text{ are fixed points.}$$

53. In the diagram of Ex. 52, show that $C'L, C'L' = r'^2$.

54. If two circles touch, show that their radical axis is the tangent at their point of contact.

55. Show that the radical axis of two circles bisects their common tangents.

56. Find a point, by geometric construction so that the tangents drawn from it to three given non-intersecting circles are equal. What is the case of failure?

57. If PT, PT' are tangents from any point P to two circles (C, r) , (C', r') and PM is the perpendicular from P to the radical axis of the circles, then

$$PT^2 - PT'^2 = 2CC' \cdot PM,$$

it being assumed that $PT > PT'$.

Proof. Let the radical axis meet CC' at X . Draw PN perpendicular to CC' .

Because $\angle^s PTC, PNC$ are right angles,

$$\therefore PT^2 + CT^2 = CP^2 \\ = CN^2 + PN^2,$$

$$\therefore PT^2 + r^2 = CN^2 + PN^2.$$

Similarly,

$$PT'^2 + r'^2 = C'N^2 + PN^2;$$

$$\therefore PT^2 - PT'^2 + r^2 + r'^2 = CN^2 - C'N^2.$$

Also, since MX is the radical axis,

$$r^2 - r'^2 = CX^2 - C'X^2 = 2OX \cdot CC';$$

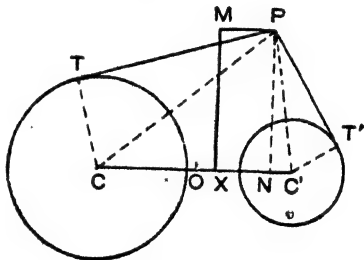
$$\text{and } CN^2 - C'N^2 = (CN - C'N)(CN + C'N) = 2ON \cdot CC';$$

$$\therefore PT^2 - PT'^2 + 2OX \cdot CC' = 2ON \cdot CC';$$

$$\therefore PT^2 - PT'^2 = 2XN \cdot CC' = 2CC' \cdot PM.$$

58. As a particular case of (57) let P be any point on the circle (C', r') . In this case PT' vanishes, and we have

$$PT^2 = 2CC' \cdot PM.$$



UNIVERSITY MATRICULATION PAPERS

CALCUTTA

COMPULSORY PAPER

1925

1. (i) Prove that the sum of any two sides of a triangle is greater than the third side.

(ii) Two sides of a triangle are 2 and 3; show that the third side is less than 5 but greater than 1.

2. (i) Prove that any pair of opposite angles of a cyclic quadrilateral are supplementary.

(ii) Show that the internal bisectors of the angles of any quadrilateral form a cyclic quadrilateral.

3. *Either*, (i) If two chords of a circle intersect outside the circle, show that the rectangle contained by the parts of the one is equal to the rectangle contained by the parts of the other.

(ii) Deduce from this that the two tangents to a circle which can be drawn from an external point are equal.

1926

1. *Either*, (i) If the sides of a triangle are equal, prove that the angles opposite to them are also equal.

(ii) Prove that the angles at the base of an isosceles triangle are acute.

Or, (i) Prove that the diagonals of a parallelogram bisect each other.

(ii) If the diagonal AC of a parallelogram ABCD bisects the angle A, show that it bisects the angle C and the parallelogram is a rhombus.

2. *Either*, (i) Prove that the sum of the angles of a triangle is two right angles.

(ii) The sum of the base angles of a triangle is 108° and their difference is 12° . Find all the angles of the triangle.

Or, (i) Prove that equal chords of a circle are equidistant from the centre.

(ii) AB and AC are two equal chords of a circle; show that the bisector of the angle BAC passes through the centre.

3. *Either*, (i) Prove that the two tangents drawn to a circle from an external point are equal and subtend equal angles at the centre of the circle.

(ii) Show that the centre of any circle touching two intersecting straight lines lies on the bisectors of the angles between them.

Or, Bisect a given arc of a circle (statement, as well as justification, of construction is required.)

1927

1. *Either*, (i) Prove that any two sides of a triangle are together greater than the third side.

(ii) Prove that the sum of the distances of any point from the three angular points of a triangle is greater than half its perimeter.

Or, (i) Prove that the opposite sides and angles of a parallelogram are equal to one another.

(ii) One angle of a parallelogram is a right angle. Prove that it is a rectangle.

2. (i) Prove that the angle in a semi-circle is a right angle.

(ii) A circle is described on the hypotenuse of a right-angled triangle as diameter. Prove that the circle passes through the opposite angular point.

3. Bisect a given arc of a circle. [Only the traces of construction are required.]

1928

1. *Either*, (i) If one angle of a triangle be greater than another, prove that the side opposite to the greater angle shall be greater than the side opposite to the less.

(ii) Hence deduce that the hypotenuse is the greatest side in a triangle.

Or, (i) Prove that the three interior angles of a triangle are together equal to two right angles.

(ii) If one angle of a triangle is equal to the sum of the other two, the triangle is right-angled.

2. (i) In equal circles, prove that the arcs which subtend equal angles whether at the centres or circumferences shall be equal.

(ii) Two equal circles intersect at A and B ; and through A any straight line PAQ is drawn terminated by the circumferences. Show that $BP=BQ$.

3. Prove that the angle at the centre of a circle is double the angle at the circumference standing on the same arc.

1929

1. Either, (i) Prove that if two straight lines intersect, the vertically opposite angles are equal.

(ii) Two straight lines AB and CD intersect at E. If the bisector of the angle AEC be produced, prove that it will bisect the angle BED.

Or, (i) Prove that two triangles are equal in every respect, if two angles and the adjacent side of one triangle are respectively equal to two angles and the adjacent side of the other.

(ii) • The triangle ABC has the angles at B and C equal. Show that the bisectors of these equal angles terminated by the opposite sides are equal.

2. (i) Prove that if two tangents are drawn to a circle from an external point they are equal.

(ii) If the circumference of a circle is divided into three equal arcs, the tangents drawn to the circle at the points of section form an equilateral triangle.

3. Draw a tangent to a given circle from an external point. (Traces of construction must be given, but no justification is required.)

1930

1. *Either*, (i) Prove that the three angles of a triangle are together equal to two right angles.

(ii) Find in *degrees* each angle of a polygon of five sides. Give reasons for your answer.

Or, (i) Prove that the area of a triangle is half the area of a parallelogram on the same base and of the same altitude.

(ii) ABCD is any parallelogram and O is any point within it. Show that the sum of the areas of the triangles AOB and COD is equal to half the area of the parallelogram.

2. *Either*, (i) Establish geometrically the algebraically formula $a^2 - b^2 = (a+b)(a-b)$.

(ii) In a triangle ABC, AD is the perpendicular drawn to the base BC and O is the middle point of BC. Prove that the difference $AB^2 - AC^2 = 2BC \cdot OD$.

Or, (i) Prove that the tangent at any point of a circle is at right angles to the radius drawn through the point.

(ii) The radius of a given circle is 1.5 inches. Prove that all points from which the tangents drawn to the circle are of constant length 2 inches lie on a circle. Draw a diagram as accurately as you can.

3. Construct a triangle whose base will be 6 centimetres and the other two sides 3 and 5 centimetres respectively. Measure as accurately as possible the altitude of the triangle.

[*Traces and statement of construction are required.*]

1931

1. *Either*, (i) If two angles of one triangle are respectively equal to two angles of another, and the side adjacent to the angles in one equal to the side adjacent to the equal angles in the other, prove that the two triangles are equal in all respects.

(ii) A diagonal of a parallelogram is bisected, and through the point of bisection a straight line is drawn to be terminated by one pair of opposite sides. Show that the straight line is bisected at the point.

Or, (i) Prove that any two sides of a triangle are together greater than the third side.

(ii) Prove that the difference of any two sides of a triangle is less than the third side.

2. *Either*, (i) Prove the geometrical proposition corresponding to the algebraical formula $(a+b)^2 = a^2 + b^2 + 2ab$.

(ii) Prove that the square on a straight line is equal to four times the square on half the line.

Or, (i) Draw two tangents to a circle from an external point.

(ii) A quadrilateral is described touching a circle. Prove that the sum of any pair of opposite sides is equal to the sum of the other pair.

3. Construct a triangle, given the base, one side, and the area.

1932

1. *Either*, (i) If one side of a triangle is produced prove that the exterior angle is greater than either of the interior opposite angles.

(ii) Show that it is impossible to draw three equal straight lines from a given point to a given straight line.

Or, (i) Prove that, if a straight line cuts two parallel straight lines, the corresponding angles are equal.

(ii) Prove that, if the three sides of one triangle are parallel to the three sides of another triangle, the corresponding angles are equal.

2. *Either*, (i) If a straight line drawn through the centre of a circle bisects a chord which does not pass through the centre, prove that it cuts the chord at right angles.

(ii) Show how to construct a circle of given radius to pass through two given points. When is this construction impossible?

Or, (i) Prove that the tangent at any point of a circle and the radius through the point are perpendicular to one another.

(ii) Show how to draw a tangent to a given circle parallel to a given straight line. How many such tangents are possible?

3. (i) Construct a square on a given finite straight line. (Give only the traces of *all* your constructions, using a hard pencil, a straight ruler, and a pencil compass only).

(ii) Divide the area of a given square into parts from which two equal squares can be made up.

1933

1. *Either*, (i) Show that in a right-angled triangle the square on the hypotenuse is equal to the sum of the squares on the other two sides.

(ii) Prove that in an equilateral triangle four times the square on the perpendicular drawn from a vertex on the opposite side is equal to three times the square on any side.

Or, (i) Show that in an obtuse-angled triangle the square on the side subtending the obtuse angle is greater than the sum of the squares on the other two sides by twice the rectangle contained by one of those sides and the projection of the other side upon it.

(ii) Prove that a triangle whose sides are 2, 3, and 4 inches is an obtuse-angled triangle.

2. *Either*, (i) Show that equal chords of a circle are equidistant from the centre.

(ii) Find the locus of the mid-points of chords of constant length in a circle.

Or, (i) Show that there is only one circle which passes through three given points not in a straight line.

(ii) Prove that two different circles cannot cut each other at more than two points.

3. (i) Describe a parallelogram equal in area to a given triangle and having one of its angles equal to a given angle. (Traces only are required.)

(ii) Construct a rhombus equal in area to a given rectangle and having a side equal to a side of the rectangle. (Traces only are required.)

DACCA

1932

1. *Either*, (i) Any two sides of a triangle are together greater than the third side.

(ii) Show that any two sides of a triangle are together greater than twice the median bisecting the third side.

Or, (i) The three angles of a triangle are together equal to two right angles.

(ii) ABC is an isosceles triangle of which the side AB is equal to the side AC . BA is produced to D so that AD is equal to AB . Prove that BCD is a right angle.

2. *Either*, (i) In any triangle, the square on the side subtending an acute angle is equal to the sum of the squares on the sides containing that angle diminished by twice the rectangle contained by one of those sides and the projection of the other side upon it.

(ii) The sum of the squares on the sides of a parallelogram is equal to the sum of the squares on the diagonals.

Or, (i) The angles which a tangent to a circle makes with a chord drawn from the point of contact are respectively equal to the angles in the alternate segments of the circle.

(ii) A tangent is drawn parallel to a chord; show that the intercepted arc is bisected at the point of contact.

3. Take a straight line AB 2.5" long. At A make an angle BAC equal to 60° , and at B draw BC perpendicular to BA , meeting AC in C . Bisect AC at D . Measure BD .

[No proof is required but traces of construction must be left on the paper. Only ruler and compass are to be used.]

1933

1. *Either*, (i) If two angles of a triangle are equal, the sides opposite to these angles are also equal.

(ii) Prove that the hypotenuse of a right-angled triangle is double the median which bisects the hypotenuse.

Or, (i) Equal triangles standing on the same base and on the same side of it are between the same parallels.

(ii) Prove that the line joining the middle points of any two sides of a triangle is parallel to the third side.

2. (i) Enunciate and prove the geometrical theorem corresponding to the algebraical identity

$$a^2 - b^2 = (a+b)(a-b).$$

(ii) If a straight line is bisected and also divided into two unequal segments, the rectangle contained by these segments is equal to the difference of the squares on half the line and on the line between the points of section.

3. Either, (i) The tangent at any point of a circle is perpendicular to the radius through the point.

(ii) Find the locus of a point which moves in such a manner that tangents from it to a fixed circle are of the same constant length.

Or, Bisect a quadrilateral by a straight line drawn through an angular point.

[Traces of construction as also proof are necessary.]

ALLAHABAD

1931

1. (i) If there are three or more parallel straight lines, and the intercepts made by them on any transversal are equal, then the corresponding intercepts on any other transversal are also equal.

(ii) In a triangle ABC, if a set of lines Pp, Qq, Rr.....drawn parallel to the base, divide one side AB into equal parts, they also divide the other side AC into equal parts.

2. (i) Prove that if opposite angles of a quadrilateral are supplementary, its vertices are concyclic.

(ii) ABC is an isosceles triangle, and XY is drawn parallel to the base BC cutting the sides in X and Y, show that the four points B, C, X, Y lie on a circle.

3. (i) Show that in any triangle the sum of the squares on two sides is equal to twice the squares on half the base together with twice the square on the median which bisects the base.

(ii) In any triangle the difference of the squares on two sides is equal to twice the rectangle contained by the base and the intercept between the middle point of the base and the foot of the perpendicular drawn from the vertical angle to the base.

4. (i) Prove that the distance of each vertex of a triangle from the orthocentre is double of the perpendicular drawn from the centre of the circle circumscribed round the triangle to the opposite side.

Or, (ii) Construct a triangle, having given a vertex, the orthocentre, and the centre of the circle circumscribed round the triangle.

1932

1. Prove that two tangents can be drawn to a circle from an external point. Further prove that these two tangents are equal and subtend equal angles at the centre.

2. (i) In a right-angled triangle, prove that the square on the hypotenuse is equal to the sum of the squares on the other two sides.

(ii) ABC is a right-angled triangle, A being the right angle; and the sides AB, AC are intersected by a straight line PQ at P and Q respectively, and BQ, PC are joined. Prove that $BQ^2 + PC^2 = BC^2 + PQ^2$.

3. (i) If two chords of a circle are equal they are equidistant from the centre; conversely, two chords which are equidistant from the centre are equal.

(ii) If a chord of a circle subtends a constant angle at the centre, show that the locus of its middle point is a concentric circle.

4. Prove the concurrence of—

Either, (i) the perpendiculars drawn from the vertices of a triangle to the opposite sides;

Or, (ii) the perpendiculars drawn to the sides of a triangle from their middle points.

PATNA

1932

1. *Either*, (i) Prove that the sum of the angles of a triangle is equal to two right angles.

(ii) Show that the angle contained by the bisectors of the adjacent angles A and D of the quadrilateral ABCD is half the sum of the remaining angles.

Or, (i) If two triangles have three sides of the one equal to three sides of the other, each to each, then the triangles are equal in all respects

(ii) ABC is an isosceles triangle in which $AB=AC$; if the bisectors of the angles B and C meet in O, show that AO bisects the angle A.

2. *Either*, (i) Enunciate and prove the theorem which corresponds to the formula

$$(a+b)(a-b)=a^2-b^2.$$

(ii) The straight line AB is bisected at C and produced to D. Prove that $AD^2 - DB^2 = 4AC \cdot CD$.

Or, (i) Prove that the tangents drawn to a circle from an external point are equal and subtend equal angles at the centre.

(ii) Find the locus of points from which pairs of equal tangents can be drawn to two intersecting circles.

3. Draw a parallelogram ABCD in which the two adjacent sides $AB=5.5$ cm., $AD=7.7$ cm., and $\angle A=60^\circ$. From the angles A and B draw perpendiculars to DC and AD to meet them (produced if necessary) at E and F respectively. Bisect AB at G. Measure the lengths EG and FG.

[Traces of construction only are required.]

1933

1. A straight line intersects two parallel straight lines. Describe experiments to establish any relation that exists between (1) the alternate angles, (2) the corresponding angles, (3) the interior angles on the same side of the intersecting lines.

State the general truths you may deduce from these experiments.

2. Construct a triangle whose base is 6.5 cm. and one of the angles at the base is 60° and the sum of the other two sides is 10 cm. Measure the lengths of these two sides separately.

[Traces of constructions only are required.]

3. (i) A chord is drawn from the point of contact of a tangent to a circle. Prove that the angle between the tangent and the chord is equal to the angle in the alternate segment of the circle.

(ii) Two circles touch internally at A. PQ, a chord of the outer, touches the inner at R. Prove that AR bisects the angle PAQ.

Or, (i) Prove that, in an obtuse-angled triangle, the square on the side opposite to the obtuse angle is greater than the sum of the squares on the other two sides by twice the rectangle contained by one of the two sides and the projection on it of the other.

(ii) D is a point in the base BC of an isosceles triangle ABC. Prove that $AB^2 = AD^2 + BD \cdot CD$.

4. Explain what is meant by 'the locus of a point'.

Find the locus of a point which moves so that its distances from two fixed points are always equal.

BOMBAY

1932

1. (a) Prove that if two right-angled triangles have their hypotenuses equal, and one side of the one equal to one side of the other, the triangles are congruent. (Name the triangles LMN and FGH.)

(b) ABCD is a rhombus whose diagonals intersect at O. On AB draw a semi-circle AEB, remote from the side on which ABCD stands. If a chord AE equal to BO is placed in the semi-circle AEB, prove that BE is equal and parallel to AO.

2. (a) Prove that in any triangle the sum of the three angles is equal to two right angles. (Do not take it for granted without actually proving that the exterior angle is equal to the sum of the two interior and opposite angles.)

(b) $\triangle ABC$ is a triangle in which AB is equal to AC . $\angle B$ is bisected by BD cutting AC in D . BD is equal to AD . Prove that $\angle A = 36^\circ$ and $AD = BC$.

3. (a) Construct a parallelogram $ABCD$ such that its diagonal $AC = 4$ cm. and side $AB = 4.5$ cm., and its area is 12 sq. cm.

(b) Construct a triangle ABC such that $BC = 4$ cm., $\angle A = 60^\circ$ and $AC + AB = 6$ cm. Measure AB and AC .

4. (a) Two equal triangles are on equal bases in the same straight line and on the same side of it. Prove that they stand between the same parallels.

(b) R is the mid-point of the side AB of a triangle ABC . P is any point on AC . BP is produced to a point S such that the triangle RPS is equal to the triangle RCP . Prove that CS is parallel to AB .

5. (a) Prove that in any triangle the sum of the squares on any two sides is equal to twice the square on half the third side together with twice the square on the median bisecting the third side.

(b) P and Q are the mid-points of the diagonals of a quadrilateral. Prove that the sum of the squares on the four sides of the quadrilateral exceeds the sum of the squares on the diagonals by $4PQ^2$.

6. (a) If a straight line joining two points subtends equal angles at two other points on the same side of it, prove that the four points lie on a circle.

(b) AD , BE and CF are the altitudes of an acute-angled triangle ABC . Prove that $\angle AFE = \angle BFD$ and prove hence or otherwise that $\angle DFE$ is the supplement of twice the angle $\angle C$.

7. (a) If a straight line touch a circle and if from the point of contact a chord of the circle be drawn, prove that the angles between the tangent and the chord are equal to the angles in the alternate segments.

(b) Two circles touch each other internally at A . P is any point on the common tangent at A . The other tangent from P to the inner circle touches it at Q and cuts the outer circle in R and S . Prove that AQ bisects the angle RAS .

8. (a) Construct a triangle whose perimeter is 11 cm., and whose three sides are in the ratios of $2:3:4$. State briefly the main steps of your construction.

(b) Describe a circle with a radius of 3 cm. and construct tangents to it from a point 5 cm. apart from the centre of the circle. Calculate the length of each tangent and measure the angle included between the tangents.

1933

1. (a) If two sides of a triangle are equal, prove that the angles opposite to these sides are equal. State the converse of the theorem.

(b) ABCD is a trapezium in which AB is parallel to DC and AD is equal to BC. Prove that the angle ADC is equal to the angle BCD.

2. (a) If two triangles have two sides of the one equal to two sides of the other, each to each, and also the contained angle of the one equal to the contained angle of the other, prove that the triangles are congruent. Name the triangles CDE and FGH.

(b) If the bisector of the vertical angle of a triangle bisects the base, prove that the triangle is isosceles.

3. (a) Prove that the locus of a point which is equidistant from two intersecting straight lines consists of the pair of straight lines which bisect the angles between the two given lines.

(b) Construct a quadrilateral ABCD such that $\angle D = 60^\circ$, $\angle A = \angle C = 90^\circ$ and $BA = BC = 3$ cm. Measure BD. State your construction.

4. (a) Illustrate geometrically $a^2 - b^2 = (a+b)(a-b)$.

(b) ABC is a triangle right-angled at B. BD is drawn perpendicular to AC meeting AC in D. BE is drawn to meet the hypotenuse in E so that $\angle EBC = \angle ECB$. Prove that $BC^2 - AB^2 = 2DE \cdot AC$.

5. (a) Prove that the perpendiculars of a triangle meet in a point. (Ortho-centre.)

(b) Prove that these perpendiculars bisect the angles of the triangle formed by joining the feet of these perpendiculars.

6. (a) Prove that the angle which an arc of a circle subtends at the centre is double that which it subtends at any point on the remaining part of the circumference. Hence deduce that angles in the same segment of a circle are equal.

(b) Inscribe in a circle of radius 3 cm. a triangle whose angles are 40° , 60° and 80° . Measure the side opposite to the angle of 60° . State your construction.

7. (a) If two circles touch, prove that the point of contact lies on the straight line through the centres of the circles.

(b) Two circles touch externally at C. Through C lines ACD and BCE are drawn making equal angles with the line joining the centres, so that A and B lie on one circle and E and D on the other circle. Prove that $AD=BE$ and AB is parallel to ED.

8. Two circles of radii 3 cm. and 4 cm. have their centres P and Q respectively 5 cm. apart from each other, and intersect each other at C and D. If CD intersects PQ in X, prove without measuring that (i) $\angle PCQ$ and $\angle PDQ$ are right angles, (ii) $XQ = \frac{1}{5}$ cm., $PX = \frac{3}{5}$ cm., (iii) $CD = \frac{24}{5}$ cm., (iv) the length of the tangent to either circle from a point on CD distant $\frac{1}{5}$ cm. from C or D is $\frac{1}{5}$ cm.

MADRAS

1931

1. (i) Show that the sum of any two sides of a triangle is greater than the third side.

(ii) If D is the middle point of the side BC of the triangle ABC, show that $AB+AC > 2AD$.

2. (i) Prove that the diagonals of a parallelogram bisect each other.

(ii) Prove that any straight line drawn through the middle point of a diagonal of a parallelogram bisects the area of the parallelogram.

3. (i) Enunciate and prove the geometrical theorem corresponding to the algebraical identity $a^2 - b^2 = (a+b)(a-b)$.

(ii) AD is the perpendicular on the side BC of a triangle ABC and E is the middle point of BC. Show that $AB^2 + AC^2 = 2BC \cdot ED$.

4. The sides of a quadrilateral taken in order are 3.4, 1.5, 2.3, and 2.6 inches. The angle between the first two sides is 73° . Draw

the quadrilateral. Construct a square equal in area to the quadrilateral and measure its side.

5. (i) If the opposite angles of a quadrilateral are supplementary, prove that it can be inscribed in a circle.

(ii) ABCD is a rectangle in which $AB=3''$, $BC=2''$. E and F are points on BC, CD such that $CE=1''$ and $CF=2''$. Prove that ABEF is cyclic.

6. (i) AB and CD are two chords of a circle intersecting at O. Prove that the rectangles OA.OB and OC.OD are equal.

(ii) If two circles are concentric, show that the difference of the squares on the tangents from an external point to the two circles is equal to the square of the tangent from any point on the outer circle to the inner.

7. A circle of radius $2''$ is described with the centre at the origin. Describe another circle of radius $1''$ to touch the former externally and the x -axis.

PUNJAB

1932

PART I.

1. Draw a triangle whose sides are respectively 3.1, 4.2 and 5.3 inches. Describe the inscribed and circumscribed circles, and measure the distance between their centres.

2. The transverse common tangents of two circles of radii 1 inch and $\frac{1}{2}$ inch respectively are at right angles to each other. Construct the circles, explaining clearly the steps of construction.

3. (a) If the sides of a convex polygon are produced in order, prove that the sum of the angles so formed is equal to four right angles.

(b) If each angle of a rectilineal figure is equal to seven-eighths of two right angles, find the number of its sides.

4. (a) Prove that, in any triangle, the sum of the squares on two sides is equal to twice the square on half the base together with twice the square on the median which bisects the base.

(b) Show that three times the sum of the squares on the sides of a triangle is equal to four times the sum of the squares on the medians of the triangle.

5. (a) Prove that the locus of a point which is equidistant from two intersecting straight lines consists of a pair of straight lines.

(b) A chord of a circle is of constant length, but its position changes. A point is taken on it at a fixed distance from one of its ends. Prove that this point always lies on a fixed circle.

PART II.

6. Inscribe an equilateral triangle in a circle of radius 2.6 cm. and construct a square equal in area to the triangle. Measure the side of the square.

7. (a) Prove that the opposite angles of a cyclic quadrilateral are supplementary.

(b) If a side DC of a cyclic quadrilateral ABCD be produced to T, show that the exterior angle BCT is equal to the opposite interior angle BAD. What does this proposition become in the limit when D coincides with C?

8. (a) Prove that if two chords of a circle intersect inside the circle, the rectangle contained by the parts of the one is equal to the rectangle contained by the parts of the other.

(b) Show that if two chords of a circle bisect one another they must be diameters.

9. (a) If two triangles have one angle of the one equal to one angle of the other and the sides about these equal angles proportional, show that the triangles are equiangular.

(b) Hence, prove that if from a point O outside a circle two straight lines OAB and OT be drawn to meet the circle in A, B and T such that $OT^2 = OA \cdot OB$, then OT will be a tangent to the circle.

10. (a) Two circles touch internally at A, and a chord APQ is drawn cutting them in P and Q. If the tangent at P meet the outer circle in H and K, prove that $HQ = KQ$.

(b) If L, M, N be the feet of the perpendiculars from the vertices A, B, C respectively of an acute-angled triangle ABC to the opposite sides, prove that AL bisect the angle MLN.

1933

PART I

1. The sides AB, BC of a triangle ABC are 2.8 and 2.1 inches respectively and the angle BAC is 30 degrees. Construct two *different* triangles with the given data. Measure the length of the perpendicular from B to the opposite side and verify.

2. (a) Prove that in a right-angled triangle the square described on the hypotenuse is equal to the sum of the squares described on the other two sides.

(b) If ABC be an equilateral triangle, and AL the perpendicular from A to BC, show that $AL^2 = 3BL^2$.

3. (a) Show that if two angles of a triangle are unequal, the greater angle has the greater side opposite to it.

(b) Hence, prove that the sum of two sides of a triangle is greater than the third.

(c) If AD be the median, bisecting the base BC of a triangle ABC, show that the sum of the sides AB and AC is greater than twice AD.

4. (a) Prove that the perpendiculars from the vertices of a triangle to the opposite sides meet in a point (called the ortho-centre).

Also prove that the distance of each vertex from the ortho-centre is twice the perpendicular distance of the circum-centre from the side opposite to that vertex.

Or, (b) Prove that an angle in a semi-circle is a right angle.

If AL, BM, CN be the perpendiculars from the vertices of a triangle ABC to the opposite sides meeting in O, prove that

$$OA \cdot OL = OB \cdot OM = OC \cdot ON.$$

[Hint : Prove ABLM concyclic, etc.]

PART II.

5. (a) Draw two circles of radii 3 cm. and 4.5 cm., whose centres are 5.7 cm. apart. Draw their common chord and a common tangent. Measure the length of the common chord.

(b) Bisect a given triangle by drawing a straight line parallel to the base.

6. (a) If two triangles are equiangular, prove that the side opposite to the corresponding angles are proportional.

(b) ABCD is a parallelogram. Through C a straight line MN is drawn outside the parallelogram, and AL, BM, DN are drawn perpendiculars to MN. Show that $BM + DN = AL$.

[Hint : Through B draw a straight line parallel to MN, etc.]

7. (a) If a straight line touch a circle, and from the point of contact a chord be drawn, prove that the angles which this chord makes with the tangent are equal to the angles in the alternate segment.

(b) Two circles touch internally at P, and a straight line ABCD meets the outer circle in A and D and the inner circle in B and C. Prove that $\angle APB = \angle CPD$.

8. (a) Show that the angle which an arc of a circle subtends at the centre is double that which it subtends at any point on the remaining part of the circumference.

If any number of angles be inscribed in the same segment of a circle, prove that their bisectors pass through a common point.

Or, (b) Prove that the interior angles of a triangle are together equal to two right angles.

If two straight lines are perpendicular to two other straight lines, each to each, show that the acute angle between the first pair is equal to the acute angle between the second pair.

ANSWERS

TO

NUMERICAL EXERCISES

BOOK I

EXERCISE 2. [Pages 19—20.]

1. (i) 150° ; (ii) 135° ; (iii) 113° ; (iv) 60° ;
(v) $\frac{2}{3}$ of a rt. \angle ; (vi) $64^\circ 37'$; (vii) $154^\circ 9' 25''$;
(viii) $44^\circ 28' 13''$; (ix) $\frac{1}{2}$ of a str. \angle . 2. (i) 60° ;
(ii) 45° ; (iii) 30° ; (iv) $\frac{2}{3}$ of a rt. \angle ; (v) $\frac{1}{2}$ of a rt. \angle ;
(vi) $\frac{1}{3}$ of a rt. \angle ; (vii) $54^\circ 10'$; (viii) $28^\circ 27' 45''$;
(ix) $8^\circ 42' 13''$. 3. (i) 135° ; (ii) 120° ; (iii) $94^\circ 25'$.
4. (i) 60° ; (ii) 75° ; (iii) 45° . 5. (i) 30° ; (ii) 45° ;
(iii) 60° . 6. 180° ; 90° . 10. 60° .

EXERCISE 3. [Page 21.]

1. $\angle AOC = 30^\circ$; $\angle BOC = \angle DOA = 150^\circ$.
2. $\angle AOC = 60^\circ = \angle BOD$; $\angle DOA = 120^\circ$.
3. $\angle AOC = \angle BOD = 45^\circ$; $\angle COB = \angle DOA = 135^\circ$.
4. $\angle BOC = \angle BOD = 90^\circ$.

EXERCISE 11. [Page 48.]

5. $\angle BQP = 60^\circ = \angle AQR$; $\angle BQR = \angle AQP = 120^\circ$; $\angle CRQ = 120^\circ$;
 $\angle DRQ = 60^\circ$; $\angle CRS = 60^\circ$; $\angle DRS = 120^\circ$; $\angle ESR = 120^\circ$;
 $\angle FSR = 60^\circ$; $\angle EST = 60^\circ$; $\angle FST = 120^\circ$.

EXERCISE 13. [Page 58.]

2. $45^\circ, 45^\circ, 90^\circ$. 4. 90° . 6. yes.

EXERCISE 14. [Pages 60—63.]

1. 54° each. 2. 36° . 3. 60° . 4. 120° . 5. $20^\circ, 40^\circ, 120^\circ$.
6. (i) 95° ; (ii) 77° ; (iii) 49° . 9. $51^\circ, 74^\circ, 55^\circ$.

EXERCISE 15. [Page 67.]

1. (i) 6 rt. $\angle s$; (ii) 14 rt. $\angle s$; (iii) 12 rt. $\angle s$; (iv) 18 rt. $\angle s$; (v) 26 rt. $\angle s$. 2. (i) 3; (ii) 4; (iii) 5; (iv) 6; (v) 12.
 3. (i) 40° ; (ii) 30° ; (iii) 24° ; (iv) $(25\frac{1}{4})^\circ$. 4. (i) 18; (ii) 10; (iii) 9; (iv) 4; (v) 3. 5. (i) 3; (ii) 4; (iii) 5; (iv) 10; (v) 12. 6. The least $\angle = 60^\circ$; the other four $\angle s$ are each $= 120^\circ$. 7. 3. 8. 4.

EXERCISE 18. [Pages 89—90.]

1. (i) $60^\circ, 120^\circ, 120^\circ$; (ii) $135^\circ, 45^\circ, 45^\circ$; (iii) $150^\circ, 30^\circ, 30^\circ$.
 2. $\angle BAD = 75^\circ$; $\angle BCD = 75^\circ$; $\angle ADC = \angle ABC = 105^\circ$.

MISCELLANEOUS EXERCISES [Pages 113—116.]

17. $80^\circ, 60^\circ, 40^\circ$. 18. $60^\circ, 30^\circ, 90^\circ$. 19. 40. 20. 14. 21. 21.

BOOK II

EXERCISE 1. [Page 121.]

3. 10 sq. cms.

EXERCISE 2. [Pages 129—131.]

1. 42 sq. cms. 2. 12'. 3. 5". 4. 22.5 sq. ft. 5. 5 cms.
 6. 135 sq. ft. *i.e.*, 15 sq. yds. 7. (i) 70 sq. cms.; (ii) 68 sq. ft.; (iii) 10 sq. yds. 8. (i) 70 sq. cms.; (ii) 115 sq. ft.; (iii) 702 sq. ft. 9. (i) 25 sq. inches; (ii) 49 sq. cms.; (iii) 9 sq. yds. 10. (i) 24.5 sq. ft.; (ii) 72 sq. cms.; (iii) 84.5 sq. yds. 11. $4\frac{2}{3}$ ft.
 12. (i) 80 sq. ft.; (ii) 96 sq. ft.; (iii) 45 sq. cms.

EXERCISE 4. [Pages 148—150.]

1. (i) 5; (ii) 13; (iii) 17; (iv) 26; (v) 25;
 (vi) $\sqrt{410}$ *i.e.*, 20.248, nearly. 2. (i) 24
 (iii) 24; (iv) 7; (v) 8.3, nearly. 4. 13 r

5. 35 ft. 6. 25 ft. 7. 60 ft. 8. One foot.
 9. (i) 5.657 feet nearly. (ii) $32\sqrt{2}$ cms. (iii) $15\sqrt{2}$ yds.;
 (iv) $a\sqrt{2}$ ft. 10. (i) 13 ft.; (ii) 17 cms.
 (iii) $\sqrt{a^2+b^2}$ cms. 11. 240 sq. ft. 12. 37.5 cm.
 13. 5.1 cm., each. 14. 7.2 ft.; 15.12 sq. ft.
 15. 12.99 ft., nearly; 97.425 sq. ft.

MISCELLANEOUS EXERCISES. [Pages 155—157.]

30. (i) $\sqrt{a^2+b^2}$; (ii) $\frac{1}{2}ab$; (iii) $ab\sqrt{a^2+b^2}$; (iv) $\frac{1}{2}\sqrt{a^2+b^2}$.
 39. (i) 84 sq. cm.; (ii) 30 sq. ft.; (iii) 48.59 sq. cm.;
 (iv) $1\frac{1}{4}\sqrt{39}$ sq. ft. 40. 84 sq. ft.; 6.72 ft. 41. $32\frac{1}{2}$ sq. ft.

BOOK III

EXERCISE 2. [Page 167.]

4. 2.5 inches.

EXERCISE 3. [Page 170.]

2. 8 inches.

EXERCISE 11. [Page 214.]

2. Two solutions. 6. Four solutions. 10. Four solutions.

EXERCISE 12. [Page 219.]

3. The reqd. distances are each = 4.87 cms. nearly. 10. Two solutions.
 18. There is only one transversal common tangent (*viz.* the one at their pt. of contact because the two \odot s in this case touch externally)

EXERCISE 14. [Page 227.]

2. 2.5". 4. 1.73", nearly.

EXERCISE 15A. [Page 231.]

Circumscribed regular hexagon = $\frac{4}{3}$ \times inscribed regular hexagon.

BOOK IV

EXERCISE 1. [Page 255.]

2. 3750 sq. ft., each.

EXERCISE 4. [Pages 273—274.]

1. 4". 2. 4". 3. 5".

MISCELLANEOUS EXERCISES. [Pages 274—276.]

10. When the two parts are equal. 14. $\frac{2}{a}\sqrt{s(s-a)(s-b)(s-c)}$,
where a, b, c denote the sides of the Δ , s its semi-perimeter (a being the base).
15. 84 sq. inches. 16. 12.5". 17. 2". 25. 14.5".

EXERCISE 5. [Page 284.]

4. (i) 7, 6 ; 6, 7. (ii) 8, 5 ; 5, 8. 5. (i) $x=10, y=4$;
 $(x=-4, y=-10)$; (ii) $x=12, y=6$; $(x=-6, y=-12)$.
6. (i) 2.64, nearly ; (ii) 2.82, nearly ; (iii) 3. 7. (i) 1, 2 ;
(ii) 1.236, or (-3.236) , nearly.
- — —

